

CASCADE-PC User Manual

for Clients of Clearstream Banking AG

CASCADE-PC User Manual

Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt

January 2024

Information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt (referred to hereinafter as Clearstream Banking Frankfurt or CBF), or any other entity belonging to Clearstream International société anonyme, Luxembourg. No part of this manual may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording, for any purpose without the express written consent of Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt.

Unless otherwise stated, all times are given in Central European Time (CET).

© Copyright Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt (2024). All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	3
1 General information	9
1.1 Purpose of the system	9
1.2 Structure of the manual	9
1.2.1 Conventions	9
2 How to use the system	10
2.1 Working with the CASCADE-PC graphic user interface (GUI)	10
2.2 The user interface	10
2.2.1 Working with the mouse	10
2.2.2 Using the screens	10
2.2.3 The dialogue window	11
2.3 Settings	15
2.4 Help functions and user manual	16
2.5 Error and advice messages	16
3 Settlement cycles	17
3.1 Cash settlement	18
3.1.1 Euro payments via T2S	18
3.1.2 Payments in foreign currency via commercial bank money (Creation platform)	18
3.1.3 CHF payments via the Swiss national bank.....	18
3.2 Important phases during the CASCADE and T2S business days	19
3.3 Priorities	27
3.4 Holiday schedule	27
3.4.1 General	27
3.4.2 Schedule for cross-border business	27
3.4.3 T2S and T2 holidays	27
4 Settlement of OTC and Stock Exchange instructions	28
4.1 Entry of instructions	28
4.1.1 Delivery instruction	29
4.1.2 Receipt instruction.....	40
4.1.3 TEFRA D release	51
4.1.4 Position transfer	57
4.1.5 Account transfer	61
4.1.6 Conversion (exchange)	66
4.1.7 Re-conversion (re-exchange).....	68
4.1.8 Split of warrants.....	70
4.1.9 Merger of warrants	72
4.1.10 Instruction templates	74
4.2 Modification/deletion/information of unverified instructions	76

CASCADE-PC User Manual

4.3	Verification of OTC instructions	78
4.3.1	Verification: full display	79
4.3.2	Verification: list display	80
4.4	Modification/deletion/information on pending instructions	81
	Pending instructions	86
4.5	Display instruction history	89
4.6	Blocking/release of instructions	90
4.7	Match service	92
4.7.1	Additional criteria for matching	94
4.7.2	Counterparty instructions against payment.....	94
4.8	Link service	97
5	T2S auto-collateralisation and client-collateralisation	100
5.1	General information	100
5.2	Account setup	101
5.3	Eligible securities	101
5.4	Collateral provision on the providing account	102
5.5	Auto-collateralisation and client-collateralisation process	102
6	Cash	106
6.1	Cash management for T2S	106
6.2	Information cash monitoring RTS	106
6.2.1	Commercial bank money.....	106
7	Book-entry information	112
7.1	Movements display	112
7.1.1	Booked movements	112
7.1.2	Movements statistics	118
7.1.3	Booked movements custody and CBF cash clearing	120
7.1.4	Internal cash movements	122
7.2	Positions display	125
8	Custody services	131
8.1	Income payments, redemptions, provisions and compensations	133
8.1.1	Income payments and redemptions	133
8.1.2	Provisions	135
8.1.3	Compensations	136
8.1.4	Total income	137
8.1.5	All compensations by transaction type	139
8.1.6	Amount to be paid	140
8.1.7	Tax credit	141
8.2	Non income corporate actions	142
8.2.1	Non income corporate actions: credit, debit, exchange	142
8.2.2	Non Income Corporate Actions: Other	144

Table of Contents

8.2.3	All mandatory non income corporate actions	146
8.2.4	Voluntary offers.....	148
8.2.5	Event type data.....	151
9	Message monitoring message journal	153
9.1	General information	153
9.2	Status information	156
9.2.1	Status for inbound messages.....	156
9.2.2	Changes of status for inbound messages	158
9.2.3	Changes of status for outbound messages	159
9.3	List screen - technical overview	160
9.4	Detailed screen “technical overview”	162
9.5	List screen - instruction overview	163
9.6	Detailed screen “instruction overview”	165
9.7	List screen - rejected messages	166
9.8	Detailed screen “rejected messages”	167
10	Registration/re-registration of registered shares	168
10.1	Entry of re-registration and/or registration data	169
10.1.1	Re-registration data	174
10.1.2	Registration data.....	177
10.2	Verification of re-registration/registration	180
10.3	Modification/deletion at registration/re-registration	182
10.4	Modification of shareholder data	184
10.4.1	Selection.....	184
10.4.2	Personal data	185
10.4.3	Address data	185
10.4.4	Status.....	186
10.5	Structure of customer reference	186
10.6	RS positions query	186
11	Vaults	189
11.1	Instruction entry	191
11.1.1	Directive 2014/91/EU	191
11.1.2	Entry New Admission/Mark up (deposit)	191
11.1.3	Entry of instructions for physical withdrawal or revaluation/partial reduction of issues (withdrawal).....	199
11.1.4	Validations in mark-up/mark-down instructions [AA16 / AA18] related to T2S	218
11.1.5	Instruction templates	220
11.2	TEFRA D bonds	220
11.2.1	Depositing the certificates.....	220
11.2.2	Reallocation after the end of the TEFRA D period	220
11.3	Change/deletion (EB)	220
11.3.1	Modification menu	221

CASCADE-PC User Manual

11.3.2	Modification – editing instructions via the instruction number	222
11.3.3	Deleting an instruction via the instruction number	227
11.4	Information (EI)	232
11.4.1	Information menu	233
11.4.2	Information	233
11.5	Verification	238
11.5.1	Verification menu	239
11.5.2	Verification	240
11.5.3	Automatic deletion of deposit instructions in the entry status	248
11.6	Information (AI)	249
11.6.1	Compact display of instructions based on the selection criteria	249
11.6.2	Detailed display of an instruction with comprehensive status display for processing and disposal	253
11.6.3	Historical instructions (HA)	255
11.6.4	Information on the detailed display	255
11.7	Mark for editing/deletion (change/deletion)	260
11.7.1	Mark for editing	260
11.7.2	Mark for deletion	264
11.8	Instruction history	269
11.8.1	Deposit history (HE)	270
11.8.2	Withdrawal history (HA)	275
11.8.3	New admission without Certificate (HO)	277
11.8.4	Instruction history KPHI	280
11.9	Certificate positions	284
11.9.1	Authorisation checks	287
11.9.2	Information on certificates	287
11.9.3	Information certificate number search KCKI IS	315
11.10	Movements/Positions	323
11.10.1	Final positions	327
11.11	Electronical securities	332
12	Information	333
12.1	Online user information	333
12.2	Bank Info	334
12.2.1	Bank search	334
12.2.2	Processing / accounting information	336
13	Configuration of user profiles and access rights	337
13.1	User profile	338
13.1.1	Creation of new users	338
13.1.2	Changes to user profile	340
13.1.3	Deletion of user profile	340
13.1.4	User information	341

Table of Contents

13.1.5	User member directory	342
13.1.6	User logon validations	343
13.2	Authorisations	345
	Modify/delete/display authorisations – overview	347
13.2.1	CASCADE-PC user profiles	348
13.2.2	Modify/ delete/ display authorisations – detail	354
13.2.3	Copy authorisations	357
13.2.4	Verify authorisations – overview	358
13.2.5	Verify authorisations detail.....	361
13.2.6	Delete all authorisations	362
13.2.7	Copy Administrator entitlements.....	362
13.3	Newsletter	363
14	Evaluations	366
14.1	Unverified instructions	366
14.1.1	List of non-released instructions.....	367
14.1.2	List of deleted instructions.....	368
14.1.3	List of validly placed instructions	370
14.2	Pending instructions	371
14.2.1	Pending instructions deleted at Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt	372
14.2.2	List of receipt and delivery instructions entered by counterpart.....	373
14.2.3	List of instructions with first warning.....	374
14.2.4	List of instructions with second warning.....	375
14.2.5	List of instructions deleted after 40 Days.....	376
14.2.6	List of historical instructions	377
14.2.7	Further evaluations	379
14.3	Stock exchange trades	384
14.3.1	Lists of pending stock exchange transactions	385
14.3.2	List of orders	387
14.3.3	List of cancellations	388
14.3.4	Valid modifications/reversed deletions	389
14.3.5	List of instructions marked for deletion	390
14.3.6	List of instructions rejected before settlement processing	392
14.4	Cash instructions	393
14.4.1	Lists of valid/generated cash instructions for cash clearing	393
14.4.2	Daily cash statement (“Geldtagesauszug”)	394
15	Online print	395
16	Appendix	398
16.1	General field descriptions and formal verifications	398
16.2	General field entry rules	404
16.3	Generally Applicable Field Descriptions and Formal Checks	405
16.4	Specific Field Descriptions and Formal Checks	420

CASCADE-PC User Manual

16.4.1	The Certificate Numbers	420
16.4.2	The Customer Reference	425
16.5	Tables (index of codes)	428
16.6	Transactions/functions	432
16.7	Certificate positions field description	433
16.8	Code table specifications	440
16.8.1	CARAD code tables	440
16.8.2	D/W code tables	446
16.8.3	WSS code tables.....	454
16.9	CASCADE backend transaction security codes	458
16.9.1	CASCADE-PC → CASCADE backend transaction security codes	458
16.9.2	CASCADE backend transaction security codes → CASCADE-PC	463

1 General information

1.1 Purpose of the system

CBF has outsourced the securities settlement in central bank money of transactions in German and international securities to the T2S platform provided by the Eurosystem. Within the securities settlement, T2S takes over the entry and the processing of instructions, the validation, the matching and the settlement of the transmitted instructions, the administration of positions as well as the reporting of transactions and of positions for the securities accounts on the T2S platform (SAC - Security Accounts). Thereby, the settlement, that is, the regulation of the security and cash side, takes place directly on the T2S platform. For the cash side there are dedicated cash accounts (DCA) available. The CBF CASCADE system covers the administration of positions in collective safe custody and the related services as for example corporate actions, dividend payments or services related to general meetings. In addition, a reconciliation of the T2S positions takes place.

For securities and events migrated to OneClearstream, the related services for corporate actions and income payments are processed by OneCAS¹.

The CASCADE-PC interface is an instrument whereby Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt (CBF), participants can simplify their entry of OTC transactions and accelerate their processing of stock exchange transactions via CASCADE to T2S.

1.2 Structure of the manual

1.2.1 Conventions

This manual uses visual examples to illustrate information and descriptions which are important in the interaction with the system. The graphics of these aids are described below.

Typeface	Meaning
INSTRUCTION NUMBER	Specifies that input is mandatory, that is, the instruction cannot be processed without it.
CURRENCY	These fields must be filled in if certain conditions apply.
Process	Buttons which have to be clicked on with the mouse are shown in "bold".
NOMINAL	Field descriptions and displays are shown in upper-case italics as they are in the screens.

¹ The following securities are excluded from the processing under OneCAS:

- Securities being a fund;
- Securities being individual certificates;
- Securities not being T2S-eligible.

2 How to use the system

The access rights of each user are defined in the security function. Each user must have an internal Security Administrator, who is able to grant access rights and setup user profiles (see chapter [13](#). Configuration of user profiles and access rights).

2.1 Working with the CASCADE-PC graphic user interface (GUI)

Upon successful installation of the CASCADE-PC software, the logon window is displayed by double-clicking on the desktop icon. After entering the User-ID and password, the main menu is displayed. The User-ID is then saved and will be displayed automatically at the next logon.

At the initial logon, all access rights for the user are already defined and in use.

Generally, a password change can be made at any time. In the following cases the password-change-service automatically requests a new password:

- To change the initial input password
The password selected by the bank security officer password must be changed for the first time login
- At the end of the password validity period
The validity period of a password is three months; it must be changed every three months.

You can log out of this application either by leaving the main CASCADE-PC menu via "close" in the "OTC" drop-down list, or by double-clicking with the mouse on the icon in the left-hand corner of the main menu screen or by clicking on the icon (open door) in the first window.

2.2 The user interface

2.2.1 Working with the mouse

To make it as convenient as possible for the user to work with the CASCADE-PC GUI, almost all functions and processing steps can be called up and executed with the mouse. The use of CASCADE-PC with the mouse is similar to other GUI applications. Here are some general rules:

- "With a mouse click" means one single click on the left-hand mouse button,
- "Double-click with the mouse" means a double-click on the left-hand mouse button,
- All other options are described in detail in the relevant chapter.

N.B.: Left-handers should note that the mouse function (right and left mouse button) is reversed.

2.2.2 Using the screens

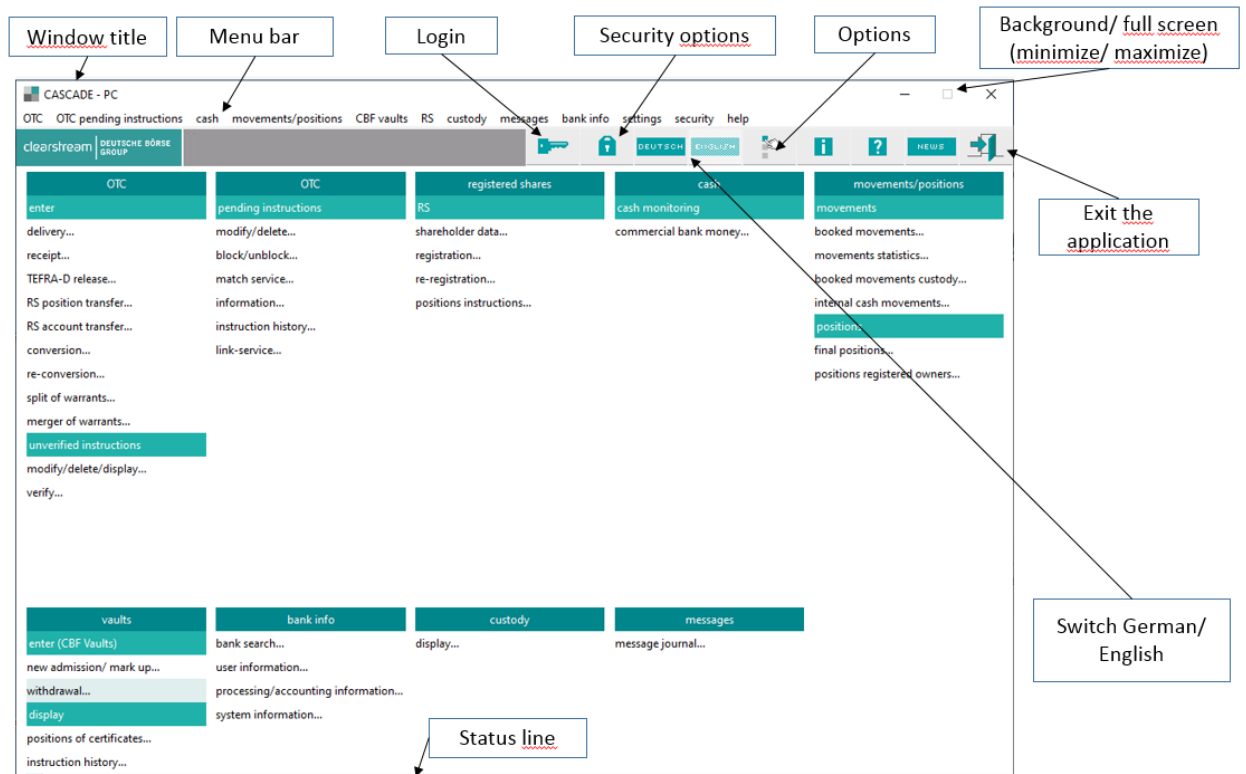
A GUI enables the user to position the various screens as desired on the screen. The screens can be shifted by holding down the left-hand mouse button and dragging the screen at the same time.

All functions can also be activated on the keyboard in line with the operating system used.

2.2.3 The dialogue window

One mouse click can initiate individual processing steps. Below, the construction of the GUI is described.

Construction of Main Menu



Window title

All screens have a window title with a different colour. This window title contains information about the current screen. If several screens are visible at the same time on screen, the screen currently active is the one shown by a window title with another colour. By clicking on a screen, the screen becomes active, that is the screen is in the foreground and entries can be made or instructions executed.

Menu bar

The menu bar is located beneath the window title. Each of the menus conceals a drop-down list that is visible by means of a mouse click on the relevant option. If a menu option has an arrow \square this indicates further sub-menus. If menu options have ... next to them, clicking on them opens a new window.

With a keyboard combination (short-cut/accelerator key) the user can get straight from the main menu into the entry window. These combinations are called up with the key: STRG / ALT and the underlined letter of the alphabet in the menu option.

Background/full screen

The function buttons in the upper right-hand corners of the various screens can be used to alter the screen display.

By clicking on the left-hand one, the screen is minimised. It becomes invisible and can be re-activated/restored by clicking on the menu option "window" in the entry windows.

By clicking on the right function button, the user can maximise the screen. The same can be achieved by double-clicking on the window title.

Icon

The icon is at the top on the left next to the title bar. In the main menu, double-clicking on this icon ends the application. In all other menu windows, double-clicking activates a return to the original window.

Exiting the application

You can exit the application through the menu "OTC/Exit", by double-clicking with the mouse on the icon in the left-hand corner of the main menu screen or by clicking on the icon (open door).

Login

By clicking on this button, the login window opens.

Options

You can modify the options when you click on this button.

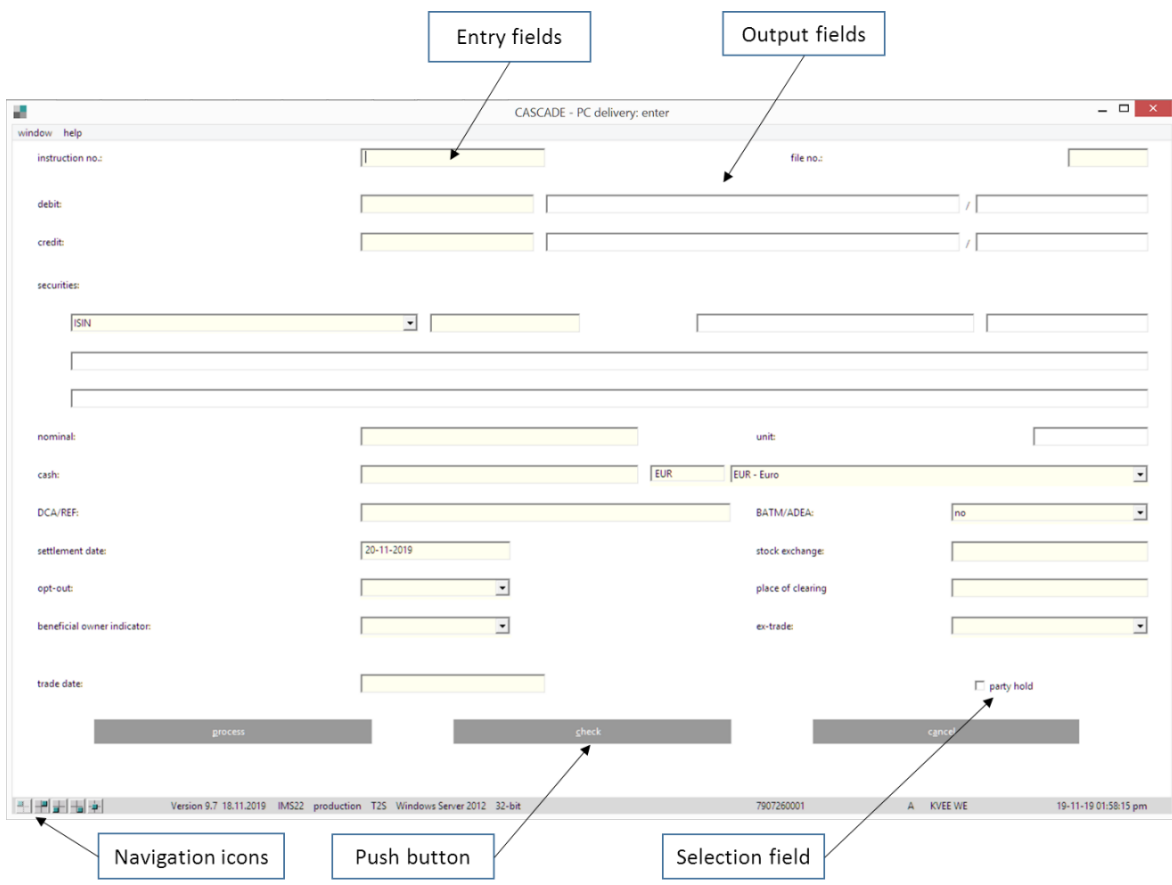
Switch German/English

The user can switch between German and English language.

Security

The new menu option enables the Security Administrator to configure user profiles and access rights online.

Construction of entry window



fields

Entry

The entry fields are white in colour.

The user arrives at the entry fields of a screen either by clicking or with the tab key. The active field is signalled by the cursor.

Entries are not case-sensitive.

Output fields

The output fields are automatically supplemented by the system post-processing or post-verification. They are grey in colour and cannot be overwritten.

Checkboxes

The user can activate or de-activate items in the checkbox by clicking. The box is activated/de-activated with a mouse-click.

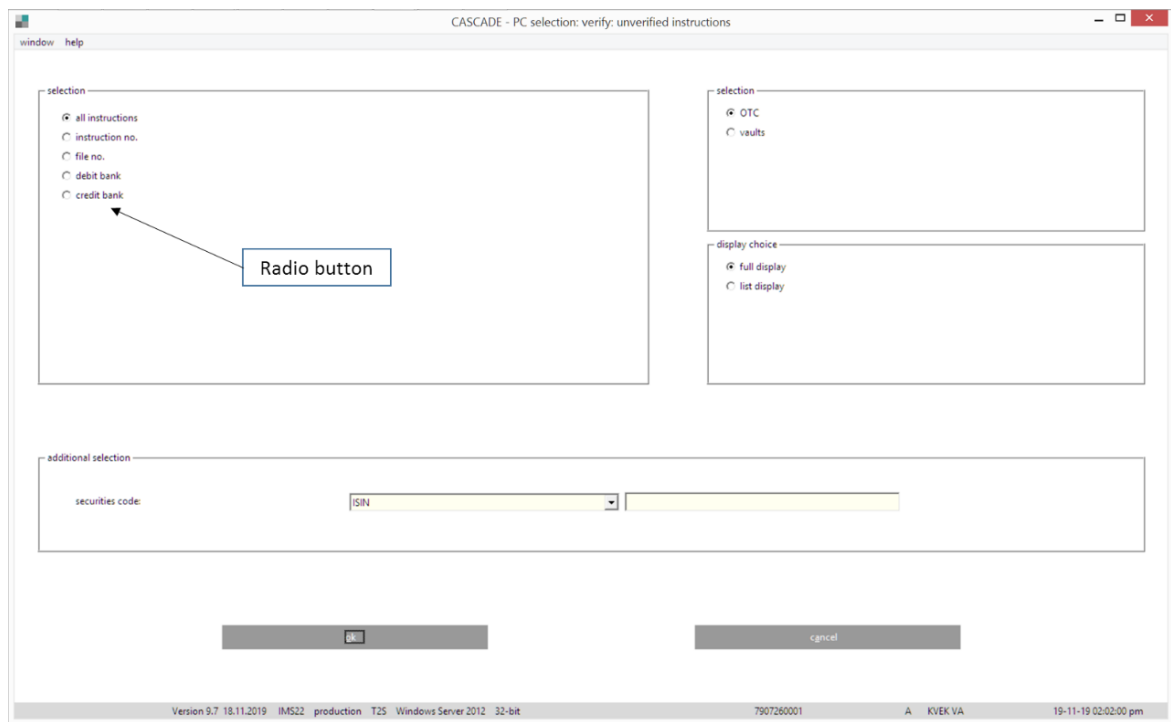
Drop-down list

Some entry fields contain various options, for example a securities code number. To simplify entry, drop-down lists are given in certain entry fields for selection. Clicking on the desired option enters it into the entry field.

Push button

The push buttons, such as "OK" or "Cancel" are printed in bold in the description of functions. The execution of instructions occurs by clicking on the desired button.

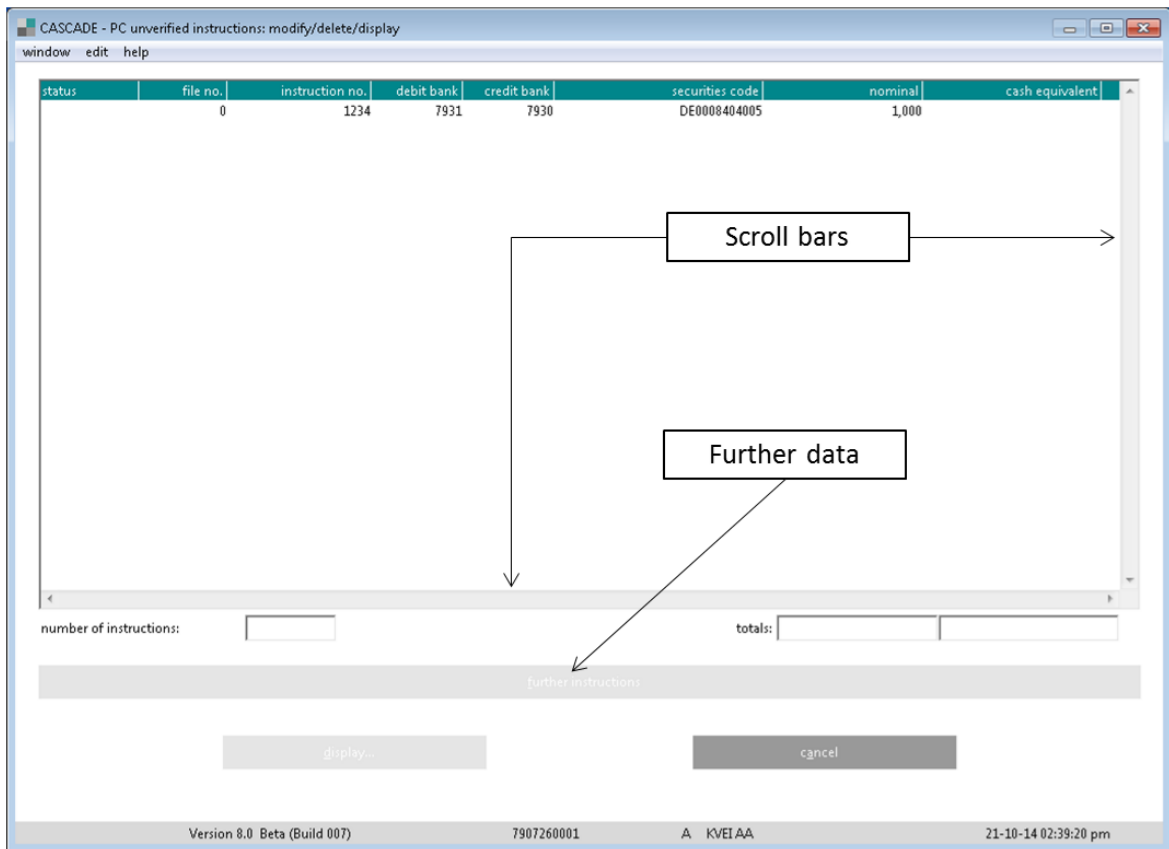
Construction of Selection menu



Radio button

The radio button influences the output of the display window. At verification, a radio button is used to determine whether the instruction is displayed full-screen or in tabular form.

Construction of tabular display



The user has the option of selecting one or several instructions. You can select several successive instructions by clicking on Shift and on the last instruction to be processed. If individual instructions are to be selected, this is done by clicking on the ALT/CTRL key and clicking on the instructions.

Scroll bars

Scroll bars are located at the bottom and right-hand sides of each screen. They can shift the tabular display right to left or up and down. Alternatively, one can scroll through the display by clicking on the cursor keys.

Further instructions

The number of pages in the tabular display follows the specification laid down in the user's parameter setting.

Clicking on the menu option "Settings" allows the number of tabular display pages to be defined. If there are other instructions, these can be displayed by clicking on "Further Instructions".

After opening the detailed display, the user comes back to the tabular display by clicking on "OK".

If the user goes from the tabular display to the detailed display of an instruction, makes any changes and goes back to the tabular display, a new list will be generated and the corresponding button will appear. Click on "New List" to view new data records which shows the latest changes.

2.3 Settings

The user can define settings for CASCADE-PC by clicking on "Settings" in the main menu.

The user selects "settings/options" to arrive at the following entry window:

The screenshot shows the "CASCADE - PC options" dialog box. It contains the following settings:

- logon data:** ID code: 7907230001, appl ID: IMS22
- emulation:** session ID: A, timeout (sec.): 20, delay (1/2 Sec.): 0
- language selection:** German (unselected), English (selected)
- turn page:** no. of pages: 3
- print settings:** printer: OneNote (Desktop), winspool, nul; font: -microsoft-system-bold-r-normal-sans serif-89-110-600-600-p-390-iso8
- list report:** in text shape (selected), in table shape (unselected). Note: Select landscape as printer setting when using table shape!
- program layout:** 1024 x 768, 1280 x 800, 1366 x 768, 1440 x 900, 1920 x 1080, 1152 x 864, 1280 x 1024, 1400 x 1050, 1680 x 1050. new layout (checked), width: 1057, height: 768, variable program position (unchecked), x-origin: 1, y-origin: 1
- INI-file:** P:\winprog\Cascade\cpcsys.ini

Buttons at the bottom: ok, save..., load..., defaults, cancel.

In "User Profile", the user can enter the user ID which at logon is given as the default value.

Under "Emulation", you can see the host session, which CASCADE-PC is accessing and the time-out to be expected before the host answers.

The VTAM link is set by default to IMS1 and must not be overwritten.

When turning the page, the number of pages which are to be set for all tabular displays, is indicated.

The user can choose between German and English displays.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

In the print option, it is possible to select a printer which is installed in the Windows setup. The desired font can also be selected for the print out.

The lists can be printed in table or text format. To achieve the best print results in table format, the "landscape" print style should be used.

In the program layout, the traditional or new more MS Windows oriented layout can be chosen. There are also several pre-set options offered for the resolution of the screen display. The user can also enter width and height for individual screen resolutions.

NB: No alterations should be made except for the options: User Profile, Page Down/Up and Language.

If the entry is ended by "Save", the entries are stored in an initialisation file, which is automatically accessed next time the system is started.

If the user ends with "OK" only, the settings will apply to that particular session and will not be saved.

2.4 Help functions and user manual

For information about the Help function, please refer to the CASCADE User Manual, which is available on our website www.clearstream.com under Key Documents / CSD / Connectivity Manuals / CASCADE Online.

For the installation of the new CASCADE-PC client, the CASCADE-PC Installation Guide and the CASCADE-PC Installation Files are available under the same location. On demand, the Installation Files will be sent to the client on a CD.

2.5 Error and advice messages

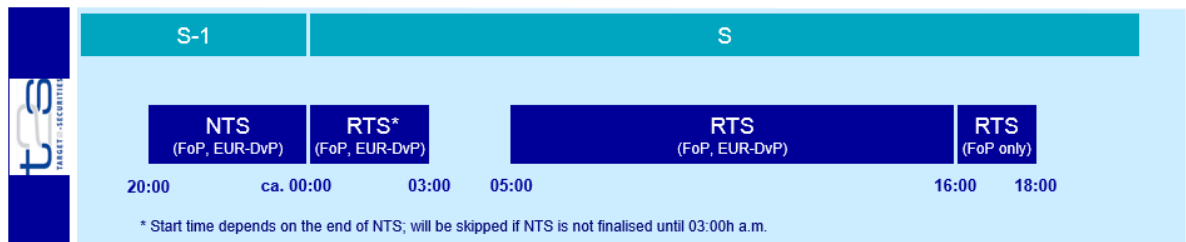
All error and advice messages are displayed either as separate pop-up screens or as an item in the status bar at the bottom of the screen.

The pop-up screens cannot be ignored and must be addressed by clicking on "OK", "YES" or "NO" to continue further.

3 Settlement cycles

Deliveries received in CASCADE are processed in T2S in different settlement cycles. T2S offers for the administration of securities and cash a sequential night-time settlement (NTS) with two cycles and up to two real-time settlement (RTS) cycles.

The following illustration reflects the timescale of the settlement cycles supported by T2S and CASCADE. The timing of the settlement cycles in T2S follows business days; the change to the next business day takes place at 18:45 of the calendar day on which the T2S business day ended. The settlement in T2S starts with the NTS at 20:00 and ends with the RTS at 18:00 of the next T2S business day. The individual settlement cycles are described in the CBF Client Handbook.



A detailed overview of the CBF business day with T2S is provided in section 0.

3.1 Cash settlement

The settlement of cash out of security transactions, corporate events, fees and expenses takes place outside of the CASCADE platform. CBF relies on central bank and correspondent bank (cash agent) facilities and/or cash management systems where CBF clients have their related cash accounts.

3.1.1 Euro payments via T2S

All EUR payments resulting from the settlement of transactions with CSC securities, interest and redemption payments, distributions and dividends for securities where CBF acts as issuer CSD (country of depository), cross-border market and reverse claims for FCSC securities as well as fees and expense payments² out of CASCADE are settled via T2S. The settlement takes place real-time during the settlement cycles.

3.1.2 Payments in foreign currency via commercial bank money (Creation platform)

Payments in foreign currency resulting from CSC-eligible securities transactions as well as payments out of corporate events in CSC-eligible securities are settled through the Creation platform.

3.1.3 CHF payments via the Swiss national bank

Payments in CHF exclusively result from cross-border transactions against account 7215. These are DvP transactions in CSC-eligible Swiss securities against CHF between a Swiss participant and a CBF participant. For this, both counterparties need to have established a direct or indirect account relationship at the Swiss national bank.

Note: For DvP transactions in CSC-eligible Swiss securities against CHF between two CBF participants (CBF internal transactions), CHF are settled as foreign currency payment through the Creation platform (6-series accounts of the CBF participants).

For more information, please refer to the CBF Client Handbook.

² The billing of fees and expenses is carried out in Euro on a monthly basis through the client's T2S DCA.

3.2 Important phases during the CASCADE and T2S business days

In order to meet certain deadlines and to keep the own systems aligned, it is necessary to have an overview about the day-to-day processes. The important points in time as provided in the following are particularly to be considered during the business day routine. The mentioned deadlines for settlement are only valid if the client instructions are eligible for automated processing (Straight Through Processing).

Note: In line with CBF's internal compliance procedures, all incoming client instructions are automatically scanned before entering the transaction processes. If instructions are internally marked for further manual investigation, they are set in a status "open". This status is immediately reported to the client through their chosen communication channel(s), until such time the instruction has been manually released or rejected. In order to guarantee manual investigations and to meet the provided deadlines, clients are recommended to submit instructions no later than 15 minutes before the respective deadline.

For T2S-relevant instructions it is recommendable to submit them to CBF no later than 25 minutes prior to the T2S start and end times. This is, as delays can occur during the processing and transmission of the instructions to T2S. 25 minutes is the sum of the maximum expected time for the internal compliance procedure (15 minutes) and the maximum expected processing and transmission time for handing the instructions over to T2S (10 minutes). A settlement guarantee in T2S will not be given at any time.

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
18:45	T2S – Start Start of Day (SOD) processing	SODP
19:00	CASCADE– Start STD settlement of non-T2S instructions	
ca. 19:00	CBF Print Report: Regulierungsliste (settlement list)	
19:30	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
20:00	T2S – End Start of Day (SOD) processing	
20:00	T2S – Start Night-time Settlement (NTS), Start First NTS Cycle	FNTC
20:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT535 – Statement of Holdings	
21:00	CASCADE-RS – 4. Allocation run	
21:00	CASCADE– End STD settlement of non-T2S instructions	
21:15	KADI Reporting ³ : MT566 – Confirmation	
21:30	CASCADE-RS – Automated re-registration	
ca. from 22:00	Non-CCP SE Trades are received on trade date and forwarded to T2S	
ca. 22:20	T2S – End First NTS Cycle ⁴	
ca. 22:20	T2S – Start Last NTS Cycle ⁴	LNTC
22:30	CASCADE-RS – Transfer of RS instructions to share register from 4. Allocation run and automated re-registration	
23:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	

³ Timing refers to the KADI cycle; reporting is started up to 15 minutes later.

⁴ Timing depends on settlement volumes in the First T2S NTS Cycle.

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
23:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending SE Transactions	
23:00	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
23:45	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending SE Transactions	
ca. 00:00	T2S – End Last NTS Cycle, End Night-time Settlement (NTS) ⁵	LNTC
ca. 00:00	T2S – Start optional Real-time Settlement (RTS) ⁶	RTMS
02:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
03:00	T2S – End optional Real-time Settlement (RTS)	
03:00	T2S – Start Maintenance Window	
03:00	CASCADE – End CASCADE Online	MNTW
03:00	CBF – Start Maintenance Window	
ca. 03:00	CBF Print Report: Lieferliste (list of pending stock exchange trades)	
ca. 05:00	CBF – End Maintenance Window	
05:00	T2S – End Maintenance Window	
05:00	T2S – Start Real-time Settlement (RTS)	RTMS
05:00	CASCADE – Start CASCADE Online	

⁵ Timing depends on settlement volumes in the First and Last T2S NTS Cycle; latest 03:00.

⁶ Timing depends on settlement volumes in the T2S NTS; will be skipped if the end of the T2S NTS is not reached before 03:00.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
05:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
05:00	KADI – Instruction of market claims on settled underlyings out of NTS	
06:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
06:00	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
06:00	CBF Print Report: Tageslisten (CASCADE reports) – report JQ263000	
07:00	Xemac® – Start Xemac® Online	
07:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
08:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	RTMS
09:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
10:00	CASCADE– Start SDS1 settlement of non-T2S instructions	
10:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions	
10:00	T2S – Start Partial Settlement Window 1	
10:15	T2S – End Partial Settlement Window 1	
10:30	CASCADE-RS – 1. Allocation run	

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
10:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
10:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending SE Transactions	
10:30	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
10:30	KADI – Instruction of market claims on underlyings settled by 10:30	
10:40	CASCADE– End SDS1 settlement of non-T2S instructions	
11:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions	
11:15	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
11:30	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
12:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
12:00	T2S – Start Partial Settlement Window 2	
12:15	T2S – End Partial Settlement Window 2	RTMS
12:45	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
13:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions	
13:15	CASCADE – Start SDS2 settlement	
13:30	CASCADE-RS – 2. Allocation run	

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
13:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
13:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending SE Transactions	
13:30	KADI – Instruction of market claims on underlyings settled by 13:30	
13:30	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
13:45	CASCADE – End SDS2 settlement (only processing of feedback from SDS1)	
14:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions	
14:00	T2S – Start Partial Settlement Window 3	
14:15	T2S – End Partial Settlement Window 3	
15:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions	
15:00	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
15:30	CASCADE Reporting: MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
15:45	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
15:45	T2S – Start Partial Settlement Window 4	
16:00	T2S – End Partial Settlement Window 4	

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
16:00	T2S – Deadline for acceptance of Against Payment instructions in EUR (except with BATM flag) ⁷	RTMC
16:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
16:15	KADI Reporting: MT564 – Notification MT566 – Confirmation MT568 – Narrative	
16:30	T2S – Automatic reimbursement of Auto-coll transactions still outstanding	
17:00	CASCADE-RS – 3. Allocation run	
17:00	CASCADE Reporting: MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
17:30	Deadline for acceptance of against payment instructions in foreign currencies	
17:40	T2S – Deadline for acceptance of Against Payment instructions in EUR with BATM flag ⁷	
17:40	Xemac® – End Xemac® Online	
18:00	CASCADE – Deadline for acceptance of non-T2S Free of Payment instructions	
18:00	T2S – Deadline for acceptance of Free of Payment instructions ^{7,8}	EODP
18:00	T2S – End Real-time Settlement (RTS)	
18:00	T2S – Start End of Day (EOD) processing	
ca. 18:00	Cash Reporting ⁹ : MT942 – Interim Transaction Report MT950 – Statement Message	

⁷ Due to processing and transmission times it is suggested to send instructions 10 minutes prior to the T2S deadline to CBF.

⁸ For TEFRA D securities, the effective T2S deadline on the 40th day of the TEFRA D period is 17:45, see also CBF Customer Handbook for more details regarding TEFRA D processing.

⁹ Timing depends on the T2S Business Event EODP.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

Time	Event / Process	T2S Status (camt.019)
ca. 18:00	CASCADE Reporting ⁹ : MT536 – Statement of Transactions MT537 – Statement of Pending OTC Transactions MT586 – Statement of Allegements	
ca. 18:00	CBF Print Report: Tageslisten (CASCADE reports) – report JQ262000 Geldtagesauszug (daily cash statement)	
18:30	CASCADE-RS – Transfer of RS instructions to share register from 1. - 3. Allocation run	
18:45	T2S – End End of Day (EOD) processing	

3.3 Priorities

Clients have the possibility to mark an instruction with a priority "3" (High) or "4" (Normal, default for OTC transactions). The priorities "1" (Reserved) and "2" (Top, default for stock exchange transactions) are only available for CSDs, NCBs, CCPs and trading platforms.

Priorities are only considered by T2S during night-time settlement (NTS) prior to every settlement attempt and in real-time settlement (RTS) only during the optimisation cycles and recycling.

3.4 Holiday schedule

3.4.1 General

Towards the end of the year, CBF regularly publishes an announcement (www.clearstream.com) to advise clients of the holiday regulation of the following year.

3.4.2 Schedule for cross-border business

For the settlement of cross-border transactions, the holiday calendar of T2S (for securities transactions between CBF and a T2S In-CSD) or the holiday calendar of T2S and the other CSD (for securities transactions between CBF and a T2S Out-CSD) is decisive. If CBF and/or the T2S In-CSD/Out-CSD have a holiday, settlement cannot take place or only free of payment.

3.4.3 T2S and T2 holidays

The opening days and times of CASCADE are fully aligned with the ones of the T2S platform. Consequently, CASCADE is also available for clients on the public holidays Good Friday, Easter Monday, 1 May and on 24 December and 31 December. There is no stock exchange business on these days. On Good Friday, Easter Monday and on 1 May only settlement of instructions free of payment is possible in T2S as T2 is closed on these days.

4 Settlement of OTC and Stock Exchange instructions

CASCADE-PC is a comprehensive administration system whereby participants can simplify their entry of OTC transactions for processing via CASCADE to T2S for settlement. The real-time interface between CBF and T2S ensures the exchange of settlement information as well as the consistency of the instructions in CBF and T2S.

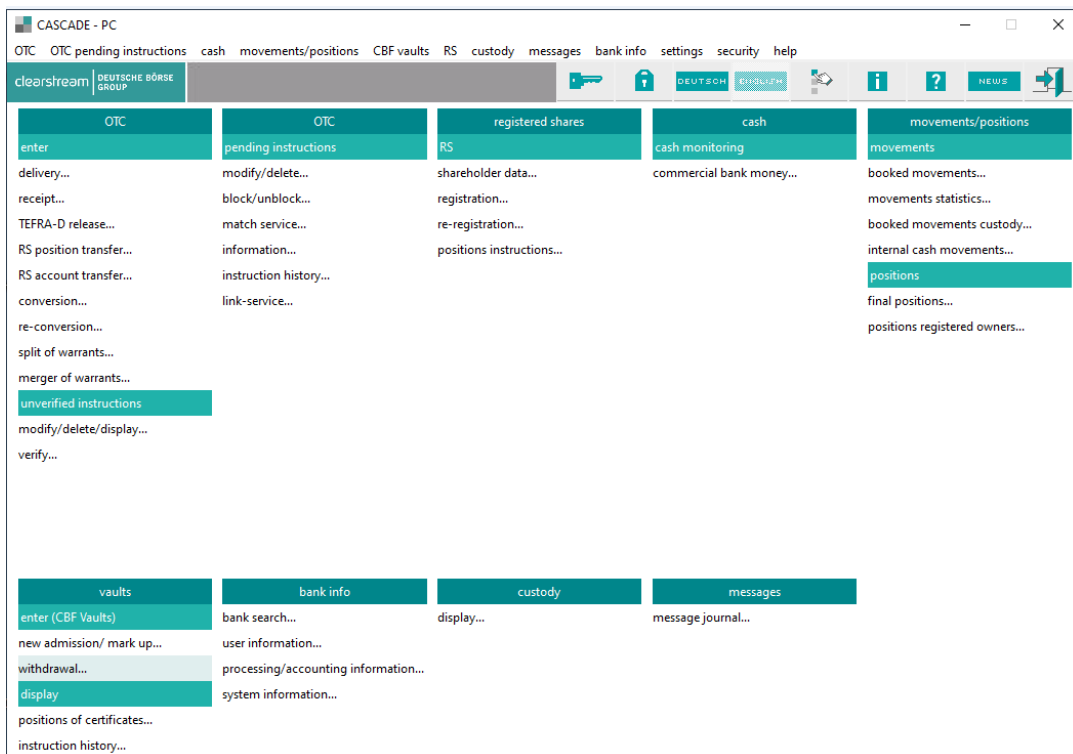
With the introduction of SET-GO, also Stock Exchange Trades in CSC (Collective Safe Custody) securities are processed in an OTC-like-mode via the OTC functionality of CASCADE-PC. Stock exchange instructions are automatically forwarded to T2S for settlement via the SETI Interface. Any security that is used in a stock exchange instruction has to be recognised by CASCADE and any security in collective safe custody must also be recognised in T2S. It is important to note that the security must have already been issued by the time the stock exchange instruction reaches CASCADE.

Instructions and lifecycle management for non-cleared stock exchange trades in securities with custody type NCSC (non-collective safe custody) are executed and reported via Creation. For these instructions, the automated Clearstream Xact connectivity channels (ISO 15022) and Xact Web Portal (GUI) are used.

Instruction modification follows the same processes as modifications of OTC instructions and are triggered and reported via the same connectivity channels.

4.1 Entry of instructions

After the application has been started and entry of personal security data is complete, the main menu is displayed as follows:



In the OTC menu, deliveries (with cash clearing and free of payment, settlement of partial and full rights), receipts, position transfers and account transfers can be entered, verified, modified and deleted. Also Stock Exchange trades for CSC eligible securities are processed via this menu.

4.1.1 Delivery instruction

This OTC instruction has to be entered by the seller/debit account owner.

The following deliveries are possible:

- Delivery free of payment;
- Delivery versus payment;
- Delivery with payment (same as delivery versus payment, but with a negative sign for the cash amount).

If the user selects "OTC/enter/delivery", the following dialog box is displayed.

The screenshot shows a desktop application window titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: enter". The window contains a form with the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:** Text input field.
- file no.:** Text input field.
- debit:** Text input field with a slash separator.
- credit:** Text input field with a slash separator.
- securities:** A section with an "ISIN" dropdown menu and several text input fields.
- nominal:** Text input field.
- unit:** Text input field.
- cash:** Text input field, followed by a currency dropdown set to "EUR" and a unit dropdown set to "EUR - Euro".
- DCA/REF:** Text input field.
- BATM/ADEA:** Dropdown menu set to "no".
- settlement date:** Text input field containing "04-01-2021".
- stock exchange:** Text input field.
- opt-out:** Dropdown menu.
- place of clearing:** Text input field.
- beneficial owner indicator:** Dropdown menu.
- ex-trade:** Dropdown menu.
- partial buy-in indicator:** Dropdown menu.
- trade date:** Text input field.
- party hold:** Dropdown menu with an open list showing options: "both legs", "counterpart leg", "none", and "own leg".

At the bottom of the form, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The user calls up the next entry screen(s) by clicking on the corresponding button at the bottom left-hand side of the screen.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: enter: further data". It contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: [text input]
- file no.: [text input]
- custody type: [dropdown menu, value: CBF International]
- cash posting text: [text input]
- ref. no.: [text input]
- issue start:
- price: [text input]
- return transfer:
- priority: [dropdown menu]
- partial settlement indicator: [dropdown menu]
- ext. settlement date: [text input]
- partial rights: [dropdown menu]
- already matched: [dropdown menu]
- instruction ref.: [text input]
- coupon information/record date: [text input]
- ISO transaction code: [text input]
- transfer reason: [dropdown menu]
- ca-option-number: [text input]
- ca-option-key: [text input]
- KADI cycle-number: [text input]
- KADI event type: [text input]
- rights sec. code: [dropdown menu, value: ISIN]
- ex date/start: [text input]
- corp. act. date: [text input]
- blocked for staff:
- blocking date: [text input]
- text: [text input]

Buttons: ok, cancel

If additional settlement party information is to be entered, the user clicks on the navigation icon to display the input dialog box.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: enter: settlement party". It contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: [text input]
- file no.: [text input]
- settlement party - seller:
 - P1: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P2: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P3: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P4: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P5: [dropdown menu] [text input]
- settlement party - buyer:
 - P1: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P2: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P3: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P4: [dropdown menu] [text input]
 - P5: [dropdown menu] [text input]

Buttons: ok, cancel

Status bar: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907123409 A KVEE WE 07-12-17 11:28:53 am

All fields for delivery can be filled in according to the general field descriptions and formal verification procedures (see chapter [16](#) Appendix). However, there are particular rules applying to the P1 fields:

- The first P1 field shows the static data (BIC) of the delivering party, if provided in the CBF systems. The field is read-only, that is, it cannot be modified by the user.
- For cross-border transactions, the party of the foreign CSD must be entered by the user in the second P1 field.

The linkage functionality offers the possibility to link several instructions in order that they are either settled together (All-or-none) or in a specific order. If linkage information is to be entered, the user clicks on the navigation icon to display the input dialog box.

The screenshot shows a Windows application window titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: enter: linkage". The window contains a form with the following fields:

- instruction no.:
- file no.:
- pool-ref:
- sequence number:
- pool enumerator:
- pool owner BIC:

Below the form is a table with the following columns: position, indicator, link reference, link owner BIC. The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907123409 A KVEE WE 07-12-17 11:28:53 am".

For new instructions, a linkage can be set up in two ways:

- Via pool-reference:
A pool-reference is a common reference, whereby a number of instructions (max. 999) can be linked with each other for simultaneous settlement (all-or-none principle). Next to the pool-reference and the pool-owner, the total number of instructions in the pool (pool-counter) needs to be determined, as well as a sequence-number for each instruction to be indicated. All instructions in the pool will be pulled together for simultaneous settlement, once the number of instructions with the same pool-reference matches with the corresponding pool-counter. If one or multiple instructions of the pool are cancelled or rejected by T2S, the pool cannot be settled. An adjustment of the pool [is necessary](#).
- Via linkage-types: "AFTE", "BEFO", "WITH" and "INFO" (for field descriptions please see also chapter [16](#) Appendix)

A combination of the two ways of linkage is possible, that is, a pool can be linked with a single instruction and instructions of another pool and vice-versa.

Note: DvP transactions in foreign currency as well as transactions involving an Out-CSD counterparty must generally not be linked with any other transaction, as this can cause processing issues. For such cases, CBF reserves the right to manually interfere in order to ensure proper settlement of the concerned transactions.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The registration details can be entered via the following screen. The screen offers to define the party level for which beneficial owner data can be entered as well as the registration details as such.

The format to provide registration data, for example for French Registered Securities is given in the example below:

/HTYP 03/NAME Smith/FNAM John/ICER 13090/

The screenshot shows a Windows application window titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: enter: registration settlement party". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar are two input fields: "instruction no.:" and "file no.:". The main area is divided into two sections: "registration details - deliverer" and "registration details - receiver". Each section contains a "party level:" dropdown menu and a "registration:" label followed by five horizontal text input fields. At the bottom of the window are two buttons labeled "ok" and "cancel". The Windows taskbar at the bottom shows the system tray with icons for network, volume, and power, and the system clock displaying "23-05-19 11:44:56 am". The taskbar also shows the application version: "Version 9.6 Beta (Build 005) IM523 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit" and the user name "A KVEE WE".

A delivery instruction must contain entries in the following fields:

Screen field	Explanation	
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.	
DEBIT	Debit account (bank number of the bank entering the data) is unalterable, as the first four digits are fixed. The sub-account can however be entered.	
CREDIT	Account number of the recipient bank. The sub-account can be entered.	
SECURITIES	German securities code (WKN), ISIN, stock exchange code etc.	
NOMINAL	Input of the nominal value	
SETTLEMENT DATE	This field contains the next business day and is alterable. Entry is possible up to and including 40 business days in advance	
TRADE DATE	The trade date must not be later than the settlement date	
There are also fields which only have to be filled in under certain conditions:		
CASH	The cash field has to be filled in only in the case of deliveries with cash settlement.	
CURRENCY	A drop-down list shows all available currencies.	
PARTY HOLD	The following entries are possible:	
	both legs	Hold both legs of transaction
	counterpart leg	Hold only counterparty's leg of transaction
	none	No hold, release (default value)
own leg	Hold only CBF's leg of transaction	
PARTIAL SETTLEMENT	NPAR:	Partial settlement not allowed. The instruction will not be taken into account for partial settlement.
	PART:	Partial settlement is allowed. The instruction will be taken into account for partial settlement.
	PARQ:	Partial settlement is allowed but must satisfy a minimum quantity of securities. The instruction can only be included in partial settlement if the minimum settlement threshold stated in the T2S securities master data is exceeded. The threshold is checked by T2S.
	PARC:	Partial settlement is permitted, but must meet a minimum cash countervalue. The instruction can only be included in partial settlement if the value defined in the T2S master data is exceeded. The value depends on the ISIN and the currency of the cash countervalue. The threshold is checked by T2S.
ISO TRANSACTION CODE	BSBK:	Buy sell back transaction
	CNCB ¹⁰ :	Collateral delivery/receipt to a national central bank for central bank credit operations
	COLI:	Collateral transaction, from the point of view of the collateral taker or its agent

¹⁰ For national central banks, only

Screen field	Explanation
COLO:	Collateral transaction, from the point of view of the collateral giver or its agent
ETFT:	ETF creation or redemption
FCTA:	Factor update
INSP:	Movement of shares into or out of a pooled account
MKDW:	Decrease of positions held by an International Central Securities Depository (ICSD) at the common depository due to custody operations (repurchase, pre-release, proceed of corp. event realigned)
MKUP:	Increase of positions held by an International Central Securities Depository (ICSD) at the common depository due to custody operations (repurchase, pre-release, proceed of corporate event realigned)
NETT:	Netting of settlement instructions
NSYN:	Relates to the issue of medium and short term paper (CP, CD, MTN, notes etc.) under a program and without syndication arrangement.
OWNE:	Account transfer involving more than one instructing party (messages sender) and/or account servicer (messages receiver)
OWNI:	Account transfer involving one instructing party (messages sender) at one account servicer (messages receiver)
PAIR:	Pair-off: The transaction is paired off and netted against one or more previous transactions.
PLAC:	Placement/new issue of a financial instrument
REDM:	Redemption of funds (funds industry only)
RELE:	Release (into/from local) of depository receipt operation
REPU:	Repurchase agreement transaction
RODE:	Return of financial instruments resulting from a rejected delivery without matching operation
RVPO:	Reverse repurchase agreement transaction
SBBK:	Sell buy back transaction
SECB:	Securities borrowing operation
SECL:	Securities lending operation
SUBS:	Subscription to funds (funds industry only)
SYND:	Issue of financial instruments through a syndicate of underwriters and a lead manager
TBAC:	To Be Announced (TBA) closing trade
TRAD:	Settlement of a trade
TRPO:	Tri-party repurchase agreement
TRVO:	Tri-party reverse repurchase agreement
TURN:	Turnaround: The same security is bought and sold to settle the same day, to or from different brokers.
OPT-OUT	The following entries are possible:

Screen field	Explanation	
	J:	Transaction excluded from market claim / reverse claim process
	(blank):	Transaction not excluded
EX-TRADE	<p>The following entries are possible:</p> <p>(blank): Cum coupon (default)</p> <p>CCPN: Cum coupon. Only applicable for cross-border instructions with T2S In-CSDs</p> <p>XCPN: Ex coupon. Only applicable for cross-border instructions with T2S In-CSDs</p> <p>T2S In-CSD markets:</p> <p>If both counterparties enter "XCPN" the transaction will be executed as ex coupon. If both counterparties enter "CCPN" or leave the field blank, the transaction will be executed cum coupon. Please note that in these markets the instructions will only match if both counterparties both enter the same value or both leave the field blank</p>	
SETTLEMENT PARTY - SELLER: P1 – P5	<p><u>Seller is a domestic participant:</u> The entry is optional. Depending on the level of information provided, clients must follow entry scheme 1 (see below).</p> <p><u>Buyer is a participant of a foreign (I)CSD:</u> If CREDIT was filled with the account number of a CSD or ICSD (Kontengruppe 15; Lagerstelle Ausland), some of the additional fields P1-P5 have to be filled according to the CASCADE Link Guide in combination with entry scheme 2 (see below).</p> <p>For realignments of Spanish securities from CBL to CBF or Euroclear Bank to CBF the following information is mandatory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CBL to CBF → "Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)" = CEDELULLXXX • Euroclear Bank to CBF → "Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)" = MGTCBEBEXX <p>For P2-P5 KTO, ACC, BIC and BLZ are allowed. If a BIC is entered, it must exist in the SWIFT BIC Directory. For unknown accounts "MSC-NONREF" has to be entered with the ID type KTO or ACC. Fields must be filled in descending order, no fields can be skipped. Empty fields after the last filled field can be used to provide free text with the ID-Type TXT (for example, name and address).</p>	
SETTLEMENT PARTY - BUYER: P1 – P5	<p><u>Buyer is a domestic participant:</u> For DvP instructions, the entry is optional. Depending on the level of information provided, clients must follow entry scheme 3 (see below). For FoP instructions, "Account Beneficiary (BUYR)" is always mandatory.</p> <p><u>Buyer is a participant of a foreign (I)CSD:</u> If DEBIT was filled with the account number of a CSD or ICSD (Kontengruppe 15; Lagerstelle Ausland), some of the additional fields P1-P5 have to be filled according to the CASCADE Link Guide in combination with entry scheme 4 (see below).</p> <p>For realignments of Spanish securities from CBF to CBL or CBF to Euroclear Bank the following information is mandatory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CBF to CBL → "Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)" = CEDELULLXXX • CBF to Euroclear Bank → "Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)" = MGTCBEBEXX <p>For P2-P5 KTO, ACC, BIC and BLZ are allowed. If a BIC is entered, it must exist in the SWIFT BIC Directory. For unknown accounts "MSC-NONREF" has to be entered with the ID type KTO or ACC. Fields must be filled in descending order, no</p>	

Screen field	Explanation
	fields can be skipped. Empty fields after the last filled field can be used to provide free text with the ID type TXT (for example, name and address).
POOL REF	A collective reference identifying a set of instructions which shall be settled all-or-none
SEQUENCE NUMBER	Message number/message sequence of the message referenced in the linkage sequence
POOL ENUMERATOR	Total count of linked trades
POOL OWNER BIC	The BIC of the pool owner
POSITION	The link position indicates the link type
INDICATOR	Indicator to identify the linked reference entered is MITI reference or T2S actor reference
LINK REF	A link reference indicates a specific trade reference to settle according to the link position mentioned
LINK OWNER BIC	The BIC of link reference owner

Dependency verifications (delivery, participant reference, further data)

PARTIAL/FULL RIGHTS/CREDIT/SECURITIES

If a re-accounting “partial rights in full rights” was selected, the *credit* is automatically derived by the system. For the re-accounting “full rights in partial rights”, the debit account is automatically derived by the system. A booking can only occur in the defined conversion deadline of the securities master data. If the “partial rights” field has been filled in, no cash can be entered.

(1) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – SELLER (domestic)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1	Credit Account* (DEAG)				
P2	Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DE11)	Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DE11)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)	
P3	Deliverer's Intermediate 2 (DE12)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)		
P4	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)			
P5	Account Instructor (SELL)				

* Will be prefilled based on DEBIT, if there is already a SAC stored in CASCADE.

(2) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – SELLER (foreign CSD)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1 BIC*	BIC Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	BIC Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	BIC Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	BIC Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	BIC Account Instructor (SELL)
P1 KTO*	KTO Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	KTO Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	KTO Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	KTO Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	KTO Account Instructor (SELL)
P2	Deliverer's Intermediate 2 (DEI2)	Deliverer's Intermediary 2 (DEI2)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)	
P3	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)		
P4	(:70E::DECL//DLP4)	Account Instructor (SELL)			
P5	Account Instructor (SELL)				

* Only one of the two fields should be filled.

(3) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – BUYER (domestic)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1	Debit Account* (REAG)				
P2	Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	Receiver's Intermediary 1 (REI1)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)	
P3	Receiver's Intermediate 2 (REI2)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)		
P4	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)			
P5	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)				

* Will be prefilled based on DEBIT, if there is already a SAC stored in CASCADE.

(4) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – BUYER (foreign CSD)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1 BIC*	BIC Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	BIC Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	BIC Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	BIC Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	BIC Account Beneficiary (BUYR)
P1 KTO*	KTO Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	KTO Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	KTO Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	KTO Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	KTO Account Beneficiary (BUYR)
P2	Receiver's Intermediate 2 (REI2)	Receiver's Intermediate 2 (REI2)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)	
P3	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)		
P4	{:70E::DECL/// RCP4}	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)			
P5	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)				

* Only one of the two fields should be filled.

Processing of complete instruction

The “check” button on the entry screen: receipt instruction enables the user to have the data entered verified by the system. No data processing occurs yet.

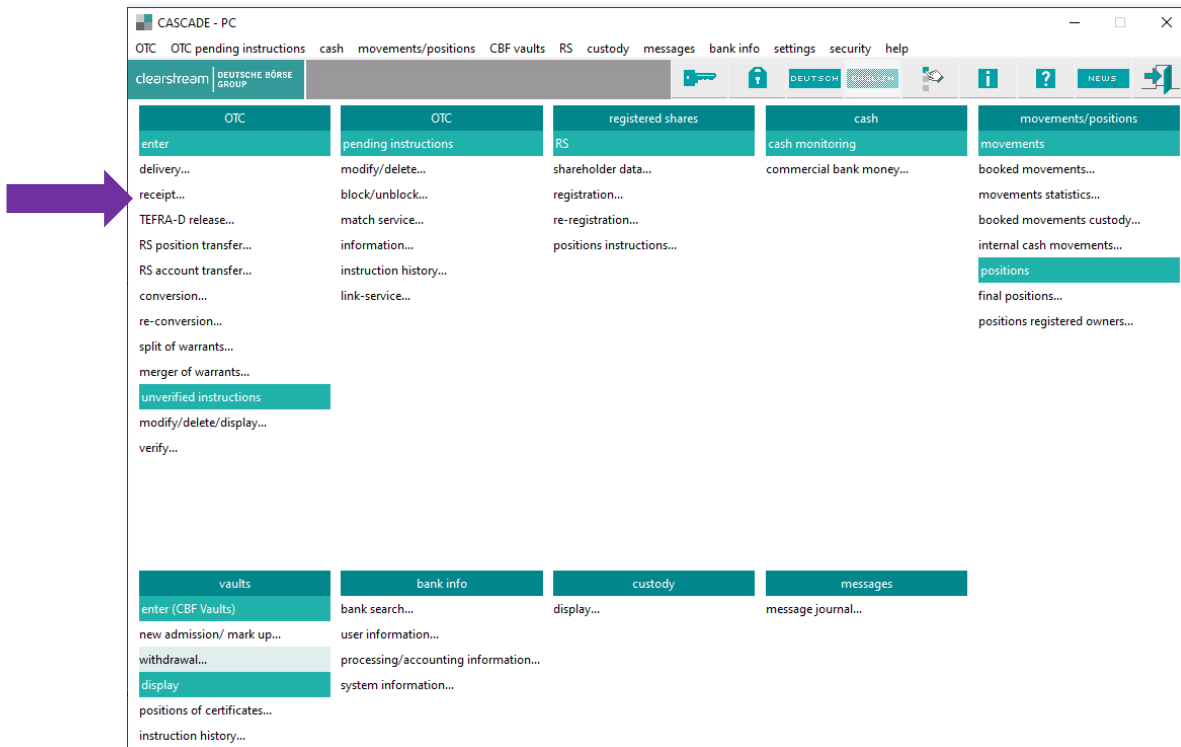
By clicking on “process”, the whole instruction is completed.

The data entered can remain on display on the screen, so that the user can modify it for another instruction.

“cancel” takes the user back to the main menu.

4.1.2 Receipt instruction

This option is designed to enter an OTC securities instruction with cash settlement by the purchaser/credit account.



The user calls up the screen by selecting **OTC / enter / receipt**.

VAD Cascade PC - Desktop Viewer

CASCADE - PC receipt: enter

window help

instruction no.: file no.:

debit: /

credit: /

securities:

ISIN

nominal: unit:

cash: EUR EUR - Euro

DCA/REF: BATM/ADEA: no

settlement date: 04-01-2021 stock exchange:

opt-out: place of clearing:

beneficial owner indicator: ex-trade:

partial buy-in indicator:

trade date: party hold: none

process check cancel

both legs
counterpart leg
none
own leg

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The user calls up the next entry screen(s) by clicking on the corresponding button at the bottom left-hand side of the screen.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC receipt: enter: further data". The window contains a form with the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: text input field
- file no.: text input field
- cash posting text: text input field
- custody type: dropdown menu (highlighted in blue)
- issue start: checkbox
- ref. no.: text input field
- price: text input field, a small text input field, and a dropdown menu
- ca-option-number: text input field
- ca-option-key: text input field
- KADI cycle-number: text input field
- KADI event type: text input field
- already matched: dropdown menu
- partial settlement indicator: dropdown menu
- ISO transaction code: dropdown menu
- instruction ref.: text input field
- priority: dropdown menu
- transfer reason: dropdown menu
- text: text input field

At the bottom of the form, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

If additional information is to be entered, the user clicks on the navigation icon to display the following input screen:

The screenshot displays a software window titled "CASCADE - PC receipt: enter: settlement party". At the top, there are two input fields: "instruction no.:" and "file no.:". Below these are two main sections for entering settlement party information. The first section is labeled "settlement party - seller" and contains five rows of input fields, each labeled P1 through P5. Each row has a dropdown menu followed by a text input field. The second section is labeled "settlement party - buyer" and also contains five rows of input fields, each labeled P1 through P5, with the same dropdown and text input field structure. At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907123409 A KYEE MI 08-12-17 02:12:44 pm".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The linkage functionality offers the possibility to link several instructions in order that they are either settled together (all-or-none) or in a specific order.

The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC receipt: enter: linkage". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". It contains six input fields arranged in two columns:

- instruction no.:
- file no.:
- pool-ref:
- sequence number:
- pool enumerator:
- pool owner BIC:

Below the input fields is a table with the following columns: position, indicator, link reference, and link owner BIC. The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The Windows taskbar at the bottom of the screen displays the following information: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907123409 A KVEE MI 08-12-17 02:12:44 pm

The registration details can be entered via the following screen. The screen offers to define the party level for which beneficial owner data can be entered as well as the registration details as such.

The format to provide registration data, for example for French Registered Securities is given in the example below:

/HTYP 03/NAME Smith/FNAM John/ICER 13090/

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC receipt: enter: registration settlement party". At the top, there are "window" and "help" menus. Below the menus are two input fields: "instruction no.:" and "file no.:". The main content area is divided into two sections: "registration details - deliverer" and "registration details - receiver". Each section contains a "party level:" dropdown menu and a "registration:" label followed by five horizontal text input fields. At the bottom of the window are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the very bottom displays system information: "Version 9.6 Beta (Build 005) IMS23 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVEE MI 23-05-19 11:46:28 am".

All fields related to the receipt instruction that are not described here owing to their peculiarities can be entered in accordance with the generally valid field descriptions and formal verifications (please see chapter [16](#) Appendix).

When entering a receipt instruction, the following fields must be entered:

Screen field	Explanation	
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.	
DEBIT	Account of the delivering bank	
CREDIT	The first four places of the credit account (bank number of the entering bank) are fixed and are not alterable. The sub-account can be entered.	
SECURITIES	German securities code, ISIN, stock exchange reference etc.	
NOMINAL	Input of the nominal value	
SETTLEMENT DATE	Is pre-set to the next business day and can be altered. Entry is possible up to 40 days in advance.	
TRADE DATE	The trade date must not be later than the settlement date	
In addition, there are fields that only have to be entered under certain conditions:		
CASH	The cash field has to be filled in only in the case of deliveries with cash settlement.	
CURRENCY	A drop-down list shows all available currencies.	
PARTY HOLD	The following entries are possible:	
	both legs	Hold both legs of transaction
	counterpart leg	Hold only counterparty's leg of transaction
	none	No hold, release (default value)
own leg	Hold only CBF's leg of transaction	
PARTIAL SETTLEMENT	NPAP:	Partial settlement not allowed. The instruction will not be taken into account for partial settlement.
	PART:	Partial settlement is allowed. The instruction will be taken into account for partial settlement.
	PARQ:	Partial settlement is allowed but must satisfy a minimum quantity of securities. The instruction can only be included in partial settlement if the minimum settlement threshold stated in the T2S securities master data is exceeded. The threshold is checked by T2S
	PARC:	Partial settlement is permitted, but must meet a minimum cash countervalue. The instruction can only be included in partial settlement if the value defined in the T2S master data is exceeded. The value depends on the ISIN and the currency of the cash countervalue. The threshold is checked by T2S.
ISO TRANSACTION CODE	BSBK:	Buy sell back transaction
	CNCB ¹¹ :	Collateral delivery/receipt to a national central bank for central bank credit operations
	COLI:	Collateral transaction, from the point of view of the collateral taker or its agent
	COLO:	Collateral transaction, from the point of view of the collateral giver or its agent

¹¹ For national central banks, only

Screen field	Explanation	
	ETFT:	ETF creation or redemption
	FCTA:	Factor update
	INSP:	Movement of shares into or out of a pooled account
	MKDW:	Decrease of positions held by an International Central Securities Depository (ICSD) at the common depository due to custody operations (repurchase, pre-release, proceed of corp. event realigned)
	MKUP:	Increase of positions held by an International Central Securities Depository (ICSD) at the common depository due to custody operations (repurchase, pre-release, proceed of corporate event realigned)
	NETT:	Netting of settlement instructions
	NSYN:	Relates to the issue of medium and short term paper (CP, CD, MTN, notes etc.) under a program and without syndication arrangement.
	OWNE:	Account transfer involving more than one instructing party (messages sender) and/or account servicer (messages receiver)
	OWNI:	Account transfer involving one instructing party (messages sender) at one account servicer (messages receiver)
	PAIR:	Pair-off: The transaction is paired off and netted against one or more previous transactions.
	PLAC:	Placement/new issue of a financial instrument
	REDM:	Redemption of funds (funds industry only)
	RELE:	Release (into/from local) of depository receipt operation
	REPU:	Repurchase agreement transaction
	RODE:	Return of financial instruments resulting from a rejected delivery without matching operation
	RVPO:	Reverse repurchase agreement transaction
	SBBK:	Sell buy back transaction
	SECB:	Securities borrowing operation
	SECL:	Securities lending operation
	SUBS:	Subscription to funds (funds industry only)
	SYND:	Issue of financial instruments through a syndicate of underwriters and a lead manager
	TBAC:	To Be Announced (TBA) closing trade
	TRAD:	Settlement of a trade
	TRPO:	Tri-party repurchase agreement
	TRVO:	Tri-party reverse repurchase agreement
	TURN:	Turnaround: The same security is bought and sold to settle the same day, to or from different brokers.
OPT-OUT	The following entries are possible:	
	J:	Transaction excluded from market claim / reverse claim process
	(blank):	Transaction not excluded

Screen field	Explanation
SETTLEMENT PARTY - SELLER: P1 – P5	<p><u>Seller is a domestic participant</u>: The entry is optional. Depending on the level of information provided, clients must follow entry scheme 1 (see below).</p> <p><u>Buyer is a participant of a foreign (I)CSD</u>: If CREDIT was filled with the account number of a CSD or ICSD (Kontengruppe 15; Lagerstelle Ausland), some of the additional fields P1-P5 have to be filled according to the CASCADE Link Guide in combination with entry scheme 2 (see below).</p> <p>For realignments of Spanish securities from CBL to CBF or Euroclear Bank to CBF the following information is mandatory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CBL to CBF → “Deliverer’s Intermediate 1 (DEI1)” = CEDELULLXXX • Euroclear Bank to CBF → “Deliverer’s Intermediate 1 (DEI1)” = MGTCBEBEXX <p>For P2-P5 KTO, ACC, BIC and BLZ are allowed. If a BIC is entered, it must exist in the SWIFT BIC Directory. For unknown accounts “MSC-NONREF” has to be entered with the ID type KTO or ACC. Fields must be filled in descending order, no fields can be skipped. Empty fields after the last filled field can be used to provide free text with the ID type TXT (for example name and address).</p>
SETTLEMENT PARTY - BUYER: P1 – P5	<p><u>Buyer is a domestic participant</u>: The entry is optional. Depending on the level of information provided, clients must follow entry scheme 3 (see below).</p> <p><u>Buyer is a participant of a foreign (I)CSD</u>: If DEBIT was filled with the account number of a CSD or ICSD (Kontengruppe 15; Lagerstelle Ausland), some of the additional fields P1-P5 have to be filled according to the CASCADE Link Guide in combination with entry scheme 4 (see below).</p> <p>For realignments of Spanish securities from CBF to CBL or CBF to Euroclear Bank the following information is mandatory:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CBF to CBL → “Receiver’s Intermediate 1 (REI1)” = CEDELULLXXX • CBF to Euroclear Bank → “Receiver’s Intermediate 1 (REI1)” = MGTCBEBEXX <p>For P2-P5 KTO, ACC, BIC and BLZ are allowed. If a BIC is entered, it must exist in the SWIFT BIC Directory. For unknown accounts “MSC-NONREF” has to be entered with the ID type KTO or ACC. Fields must be filled in descending order, no fields can be skipped. Empty fields after the last filled field can be used to provide free text with the ID type TXT (for example, name and address).</p>
ISSUE START (please refer to screen: further data)	If the security is a registered share, the check box ISSUE START is used as additional criterion for the receipt instruction.
POOL REF	A collective reference identifying a set of instructions which shall be settled all-or-none
SEQUENCE NUMBER	Message number/message sequence of the message referenced in the linkage sequence
POOL ENUMERATOR	Total count of linked trades
POOL OWNER BIC	The BIC of the pool owner
POSITION	The link position indicates the link type

Screen field	Explanation
INDICATOR	Indicator to identify the linked reference entered is MITI reference or T2S actor reference
LINK REF	A link reference indicates a specific trade reference to settle according to the link position mentioned
LINK OWNER BIC	The BIC of link reference owner

Dependency/verifications

Saving

By clicking on "OK", the entry for "further" data is concluded and the user returns to the initial screen for receipt instruction. If the data of the entry window is not to be saved, the user can prevent the save by clicking on "cancel".

(1) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – SELLER (domestic)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1	Credit Account* (DEAG)				
P2	Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)	
P3	Deliverer's Intermediate 2 (DEI2)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)		
P4	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)			
P5	Account Instructor (SELL)				

*will be prefilled based on CREDIT, if there is already a SAC associated

(2) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – SELLER (foreign CSD)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1 BIC*	BIC Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	BIC Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	BIC Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	BIC Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	BIC Account Instructor (SELL)
P1 KTO*	KTO Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	KTO Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	KTO Deliverer's Intermediate 1 (DEI1)	KTO Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	KTO Account Instructor (SELL)
P2	Deliverer's Intermediate 2 (DEI2)	Deliverer's Intermediary 2 (DEI2)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)	
P3	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Deliverer's Custodian (DECU)	Account Instructor (SELL)		
P4	(:70E::DECL//DLP4)	Account Instructor (SELL)			
P5	Account Instructor (SELL)				

*Only one of the two fields should be filled.

(3) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – BUYER (domestic)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1	Debit Account* (REAG)				
P2	Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	Receiver's Intermediary 1 (REI1)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)	
P3	Receiver's Intermediate 2 (REI2)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)		
P4	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)			
P5	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)				

*will be prefilled based on DEBIT, if there is already a SAC associated

(4) Entry scheme: SETTLEMENT PARTY – BUYER (foreign CSD)					
	5 Levels	4 Levels	3 Levels	2 Levels	1 Level
P1 BIC*	BIC Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	BIC Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	BIC Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	BIC Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	BIC Account Beneficiary (BUYR)
P1 KTO*	KTO Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	KTO Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	KTO Receiver's Intermediate 1 (REI1)	KTO Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	KTO Account Beneficiary (BUYR)
P2	Receiver's Intermediate 2 (REI2)	Receiver's Intermediate 2 (REI2)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)	
P3	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Receiver's Custodian (RECU)	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)		
P4	{:70E::DECL/// RCP4}	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)			
P5	Account Beneficiary (BUYR)				

*Only one of the two fields should be filled.

Processing of complete instruction

The "check" button on the entry screen: receipt instruction enables the user to have the data entered verified by the system. No data processing occurs yet.

By clicking on "process", the whole instruction is completed.

The data entered can remain on display on the screen, so that the user can modify it for another instruction. "Cancel" takes the user back to the main menu.

4.1.3 TEFRA D release

According to the TEFRA D Rules (relating to the U.S. Securities and Exchange Act of 1933 concerning the sale of U.S. securities abroad), a TEFRA D security, in the first 40 days of being issued, may not be purchased by any U.S. citizen or by any person who has lived in the U.S.A. for longer than 183 days. This must be checked by the CBF client and reported to CBF.

If the corresponding TEFRA D securities are credited to a CBF securities account within the 40-day period, this will automatically cause the securities to be transferred to a blocked securities account (sub-account xxxx/671). This transfer is forwarded to T2S for settlement. This is the case for all CBF client accounts. This blocked securities account is automatically be set up for all CBF clients. Clients who are affected will be notified of the transfer in a separate report.

Positions that cannot be allocated to any person in the meaning of the TEFRA-D Rules must be released via the CASCADE-PC selection "TEFRA D release". This release triggers a transfer from the blocked securities account to the specified settlement account (usually the main account, xxxx/000). The release is a confirmation that nobody from the previously indicated group of persons holds any positions of these TEFRA D securities. If any of the blocked positions have been credited to the account of an unauthorised person, this partial position remains in the blocked account. It is the duty of the CBF client who holds

and manages the positions to properly release the positions. CBF reports the positions held in the blocked account to the lead manager at the end of the TEFRA D term.

The client who holds and manages the positions may only release them after the end of the period if the lead manager has given its approval. In this case, the blocked positions must be transferred to the special securities account (yyyy/670) of the lead manager. After the lead manager has given its consent, the positions are transferred to the main account of the client.

TEFRA D release instruction has to be entered by the position keeper or by the deliverer/seller and is also forwarded to T2S for settlement:

The following deliveries are possible:

- Delivery free of payment;
- Delivery with cash clearing.

If the user selects "OTC/enter/TEFRA D release", the following dialog box is displayed.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC TEFRA-D release: enter". The dialog contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:** Text input field.
- file no.:** Text input field.
- debit:** Text input field with a slash separator.
- credit:** Text input field with a slash separator.
- securities:** Section with an **ISIN** dropdown menu and several text input fields.
- nominal:** Text input field.
- unit:** Text input field.
- cash:** Text input field, followed by a dropdown menu showing "EUR" and "EUR - Euro".
- DCA/REF:** Text input field.
- BATM/ADEA:** Dropdown menu showing "no".
- settlement date:** Text input field showing "28-04-2022".
- stock exchange:** Text input field.
- opt-out:** Dropdown menu.
- place of clearing:** Text input field.
- beneficial owner indicator:** Dropdown menu.
- ex-trade:** Dropdown menu.
- partial buy-in indicator:** Dropdown menu.
- trade date:** Text input field.
- party hold:** Dropdown menu showing "none".

At the bottom of the dialog, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel".

In order for the delivery to be processed, "customer reference" needs to be entered. The user calls up the "further data" entry screen by clicking on the corresponding button at the bottom-left side of the screen.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC TEFRA-D release: enter: further data". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: [text input]
- file no.: [text input]
- custody type: [dropdown menu, highlighted in blue]
- cash posting text: [text input]
- ref. no.: [text input]
- issue start:
- price: [text input] [text input] [dropdown menu]
- return transfer:
- priority: [dropdown menu]
- partial settlement indicator: [dropdown menu]
- ext. settlement date: [text input]
- partial rights: [dropdown menu]
- already matched: [dropdown menu]
- instruction ref.: [text input]
- coupon information/record date: [text input]
- ISO transaction code: [text input] [dropdown menu]
- transfer reason: [dropdown menu]
- ca-option-number: [text input]
- ca-option-key: [text input]
- KADI cycle-number: [text input]
- KADI event type: [text input]
- rights sec. code: [dropdown menu] [text input]
- ex date/start: [text input]
- corp. act. date: [text input]
- blocked for staff:
- blocking date: [text input]
- text: [text input]

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

If additional settlement party information is to be entered, the user clicks on the navigation icon to display the input dialog box.

The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC TEFRA-D release: enter: settlement party". At the top, there are two input fields: "instruction no.:" and "file no.:". Below these are two main sections: "settlement party - seller" and "settlement party - buyer". Each section contains five rows, labeled P1 through P5. Each row has a dropdown menu followed by a text input field. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE TD 21-11-18 02:39:26 pm".

The linkage functionality offers the possibility to link several instructions in order that they are either settled together (all-or-none) or in a specific order.

The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC TEFFRA-D release: enter: linkage". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". It contains six input fields arranged in two columns: "instruction no.", "file no.", "pool-ref", "sequence number", "pool enumerator", and "pool owner BIC". Below these fields is a table with four columns: "position", "indicator", "link-reference", and "link-owner BIC". The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The Windows taskbar at the bottom shows the following information: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE TD 21-11-18 02:39:26 pm".

All fields for delivery can be filled in according to the general field descriptions and formal verification procedures (see chapter [16](#) Appendix). However, there are particular rules applying to the fields below. The entry of a TEFRA D release must contain entries in the following fields:

Screen field	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.
DEBIT	DEBIT ACCOUNT (bank number of the bank entering the data) is unalterable, as the first four digits are fixed. The sub-account will be initialised with TEFRA D sub-account /671.
CREDIT	Account number of the recipient bank. After the end of the 40-day blocking period the special account number of the lead manager should be used /670
SECURITIES	German securities code, ISIN, stock exchange code etc.
NOMINAL	Input of the nominal value.
SETTLEMENT DATE	This field contains the next business day and is alterable. Entry is possible up to and including 40 business days in advance.

The other fields have to be entered like for regular delivery instructions (see [4.1.1](#) Delivery instruction).

4.1.3.1 Release and delivery of TEFRA D securities

There are various ways of releasing TEFRA D securities for deliveries or sale instructions, within and after the 40-day period:

- The TEFRA D securities have already been released and are no longer in the blocked securities account, xxxx/671:
- The securities can be entered as an ordinary securities transfer “WPÜ”, free of or against payment; the securities are then credited to the blocked securities account, xxxx/671, of the recipient or buyer (within the 40-day blocking period).
- The TEFRA D securities are entered in the blocked securities account, xxxx/671, within the 40-day period:

The securities can be transferred via the release function in CASCADE and CASCADE-PC and credited to the settlement account (usually the main account). This transfer is also the confirmation that the positions have been released and, therefore, that no unauthorised persons hold positions in this TEFRA D securities. If any of the blocked positions are credited in favour of an unauthorised person, this partial position remains in the blocked securities account. It is the duty of the CBF client who holds and manages the positions to ensure that they are properly released.

- At the end of the 40-day period, the TEFRA D securities are still in the blocked securities account, xxxx/671:

At the end of the term, the client who holds and manages the positions can only release the securities if the lead manager has given its approval. In this case, the client’s positions in the blocked account can only be transferred to the special securities account of the lead manager (xxxx/670). This transfer takes place via the TEFRA D release function. After the entry of the ISIN or German securities code (WKN), the special account of the lead manager is specified as a CREDIT “GUT” account; if a different account number is entered, this will be signalled by an error message. When the incorrect account number has been deleted, the correct number of the special account of the lead manager is displayed. After the lead manager gives its approval, the positions will be transferred to the main account of the relevant client by the lead manager.

- At the end of the 40-day period, the TEFRA D securities can be entered as an ordinary securities transfer “WPÜ”, free of or against payment. No transfer to a blocked securities account takes place after this.

4.1.4 Position transfer

Securities transfers are possible from registered positions to unregistered positions held in an own securities account only.

By clicking on the “OTC/enter/RS position transfer” menu, securities transfer can be selected. The data has to be entered in two windows shown subsequently:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC position transfer: enter". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:** A text input field.
- file no.:** A text input field.
- account/BTC:** A text input field with a slash separator.
- securities:** A dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected, followed by a text input field. Below it is another dropdown menu with "-- other --" selected, followed by a text input field.
- nominal:** A text input field.
- unit:** A text input field.
- settlement date:** A text input field containing "22-11-2018".
- party hold:** A checkbox.
- Buttons:** Three buttons labeled "process", "check", and "cancel" are located at the bottom of the window.

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KYEE BV 21-11-18 02:42:54 pm".

The instruction must contain entries in the following fields:

Screen field	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.
FILE NO.	Entry of a booking number.
ACCOUNT	The account of the bank entering the instruction is not automatically set.
SECURITIES	Entry of the stock exchange, sec. or ISIN code.
NOMINAL	Entry of the nominal value.
SETTLEMENT DATE	The field is pre-set with the next business day.
SETTLEMENT TYPE	Different types can be put in through a drop-down list.
REF. NO.	A reference number can be keyed in.
INSTRUCTION REF.	A freely chosen reference may be allotted.
UNIT	The display field is pre-set with "ST".
PARTY HOLD	By clicking on the check-box, block/unblock is activated/deactivated.

The user calls up the "further data" entry screen by clicking on the corresponding button at the bottom left-hand side of the screen.

The linkage functionality offers the possibility to link several instructions in order that they are either settled together (all-or-none) or in a specific order.

Please note that in the case of a transformed position transfer (cancellation and re-run of pending instructions) the MITI of the underlying instruction legs is displayed on the subscreen "linkages" in the information screen. This linkage is marked as "INFO" analog to the sese.023/sese.024 message tag of each transformed instruction.

The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC position transfer: enter: linkage". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar are several input fields:

- instruction no.:
- file no.:
- pool-ref:
- sequence number:
- pool enumerator:
- pool owner BIC:

Below the input fields is a table with the following columns: position, indicator, link reference, and link owner BIC. The table is currently empty. At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays the following information: Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KYEE BV 21-11-18 02:42:54 pm

The following fields must be filled in the “further data” screen:

Screen field	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NUMBER	Is taken from the preceding window.
CUSTODY TYPE	Collective safe custody is pre-set.
PRIORITY	The following items can be chosen via a drop-down list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Very high • High within group • High within instruction type • Normal
TRANSFER REASON	The following items can be chosen via a drop-down list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard • Securities withdrawal • Securities borrowing and lending
FILE NO.	Automatically corresponds to the last window.
CUSTOMER REF.	The bank entering the instruction has to define the positions to be transferred indicating the customer reference.
SHAREHOLDER NO.	If the client cannot be found on the basis of the customer ref., the shareholder no. may help to clearly identify the client. If the shareholder no. is not entered, the user goes to a menu.
SHAREHOLDER NAME (BANK)	Name of the shareholder, as stored with the bank. The fields are pre-set within the system.
SHAREHOLDER NAME (ISSUER)	Name of the shareholder as stored with the issuer, only filled if different.
REF. NO.	A reference number can be entered.
INSTRUCTION REF.	A freely chosen reference may be entered.

Dependency/verifications

Securities code

The securities code entered must refer to a securities class eligible for CASCADE-RS; that is the securities admitted to collective safe custody for which an electronic link between the respective issuer and CBF was installed.

Storage of individual data entry windows

By mouse-click on “OK”, entry of the follow-up data is concluded and the user goes back to the starting screen of a securities transfer. If the entered data should not be stored or processed, the user must click on “cancel”.

Processing of completed instructions

By selecting “verify” in the window of the instruction, the system verifies the data but does not initiate processing.

By selecting “process”, the instruction is concluded.

The data entered can remain on the screen and the user can modify them for another instruction.

By selecting "cancel", the user returns to the menu.

4.1.5 Account transfer

There are the following types of account transfer:

Internal account transfer: the account to receive the securities transfer is kept by the same participant, counterpart (credit account) and the instructor is the same client. In addition, the sub-account must be the same.

External account transfer: the account to receive the securities transfer is kept by another client, the counterpart (credit account) or the account to receive the securities is a different sub-account.

External account transfer: the client asks for delivery of individual certificates. Transfer is processed in favour of a special settlement account at certain dates during the year.

With the input of an external account transfer, securities movement in favour of another participant or another sub-account is initiated. The respective positions are also switched from registered positions to registered positions within the CASCADE-RS positions management.

External account transfers are forwarded to T2S for settlement.

Entry of an internal account transfer triggers only a transfer between two customer references within the CASCADE-RS positions management. Internal account transfers are not forwarded to T2S.

By clicking on the "OTC/enter/RS account transfer" menu, the following window for entry of a securities transfer pops up:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC account transfer: enter". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area contains several input fields and controls:

- instruction no.: [text box]
- file no.: [text box]
- debit: [text box] / [text box]
- credit: [text box] / [text box]
- securities: [dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected] [text box] [text box] [text box]
- [dropdown menu with "-- other --" selected]
- nominal: [text box]
- unit: [text box]
- settlement date: [text box with "22-11-2018"]
- [checkbox] party hold
- trade date: [text box]
- opt-out: [dropdown menu]
- ex-trade: [dropdown menu]

At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel". The taskbar at the bottom shows the system information: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE DV 21-11-18 02:45:30 pm".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The following fields must be filled according to the criteria mentioned below:

Screen field	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.
DEBIT	Bank account of the client entering the instruction.
CREDIT	Bank account of the counterpart.
SECURITIES	Entry of the stock exchange or ISIN code respectively selection of a securities class eligible for CASCADE-RS from the pull-down list.
NOMINAL	Entry of the nominal value.
UNIT	The field is pre-set with "ST".
FILE NO.	Entry of a booking number.
SETTLEMENT DATE	The next business day is displayed automatically.
SETTLEMENT TYPE	A drop-down list contains different possibilities at choice.
PARTY HOLD	By clicking on the field, block/unblock can be activated and de-activated.

The user calls up the "further data" entry screen by clicking on the corresponding button at the bottom left-hand side of the screen.

The following fields can be filled in the “further data” screen:

Screen field	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NO.	The number is taken from the start-up screen.
CUSTODY TYPE	Collective safe custody is displayed automatically.
PRIORITY	The following items can be chosen via a pull-down display: very high, high within group, high within instruction type and normal.
FILE NO.	The file number is automatically taken from the start-up screen.
REF. NO.	A reference number can be entered.
INSTRUCTION REF.	A freely chosen reference can be put in.
BLOCKED FOR STAFF	The check-box can be de/activated by clicking on it.
RETURN TRANSFER	The check-box can be de/activated by clicking on it.
BLOCKING DATE	A date must be entered if the block/unblock field is activated.
TEXT	Any type of text may be entered.

For a clear identification of the client and the shareholder through the customer reference, additional data must be entered, which are different for internal and external account transfers. Below, the screen for external account transfers is shown.

Description of the fields:

Screen field	Explanation
SHAREHOLDER NO.	If the client cannot be found on the basis of the customer ref., the shareholder no. may help to clearly identify the client. If the shareholder no. is not entered, the user goes to a menu.
CUSTOMER REF. (INSTRUCTOR)	The bank entering the instruction has to define the positions to be transferred by entry of the customer reference.
SHAREHOLDER NAME (BANK)	Name of the shareholder, as stored with the bank. The fields are pre-set within the system.
SHAREHOLDER NAME (ISSUER)	Name of the shareholder as stored with the issuer, only filled if different.
TARGET REFERENCE (BENEFICIAL OWNER)	To be entered at ext. account transfers only; generated by the system.
CUSTOMER REFERENCE (BENEFICIAL OWNER)	At int. account transfers, the positions received are defined. At ext. account transfers, this field serves to inform the counterpart.
NAME	Information field for the counterpart (at ext. account transfer only)
ADDRESS	Information field for the counterpart (at ext. account transfer only)

Dependency/verifications

Customer reference

If at data entry, the user recognises that more than one shareholder is stored under one customer reference, a shareholder number has to be entered explicitly. This number can either be keyed in by the user or automatically entered by the system after selection of a shareholder position via the menu.

Debit /credit

For internal securities transfers, the two accounts are corresponding. The customer reference beneficiary must be entered in the next window.

For external securities transfers, the accounts are not corresponding. The target reference beneficiary is automatically shown by the system. The customer reference can be entered for information purposes.

Please note that in the case of a transformed account transfer (cancellation and re-run of pending instructions) the MITI of the underlying instruction legs is displayed on the subscreen "linkages" in the information screen. This linkage is marked as "INFO" analog to the sese.023/sese.024 message tag of each transformed instruction.

4.1.6 Conversion (exchange)

With the Global Exchange Bearer Certificates (GBC) conversion order, the exchange of certain shares in the depository of the CBF in units of the bearer certificate of CBF will be initiated. The validated conversion (exchange) instruction is forwarded to T2S with a hold flag and is released by CBF only if the shares are received by the depository of CBF. After selection of "conversion (exchange)", a screen is provided for input of the instruction.

For more information regarding GBC, please visit the Clearstream website under www.clearstream.com under Products and Services / Settlement / Settlement services / [CSD GBC conversions](#).

If the user selects "OTC/enter/conversion", the following screen is displayed.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC conversion: enter". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:** A text input field.
- custody type:** A dropdown menu.
- file no.:** A text input field.
- debit:** A text input field containing "7961000" followed by a slash and another empty text input field.
- credit:** A text input field followed by a slash and another empty text input field.
- securities:** A dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected, followed by a text input field.
- nominal:** A text input field.
- security type:** A dropdown menu.
- unit:** A text input field.
- trade date:** A text input field.
- ext. settlement date:** A text input field.
- custodian country:** A dropdown menu.
- customer reference:** A dropdown menu, a text input field, a hyphen, another dropdown menu, and a text input field.
- delivery of:** A text input field.
- text:** A text input field.

At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE UT 21-11-18 02:48:23 pm".

For the instruction the following mandatory fields have been defined:

Screen field	Default value:
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.
CREDIT	CBF account number of the instruction client.
SECURITIES	German securities code, ISIN, stock exchange code or common code.
NOMINAL	The nominal value.
TRADE DATE	The trade date.
EXT. SETTLEMENT DATE	The settlement date valid between the third party counterparties.
DELIVERY OF	<p>Encoding of the ISIN in WSS with LGL/LGS 271/001</p> <p>The instruction must be entered with the value "CRST/". Afterwards, entry is only possible up to five places (alphanumeric). All other entries will be rejected with an error message according to the ISIN entered.</p> <p>Encoding of the ISIN in WSS without LGL/LGS 271/001</p> <p>The instruction also relates to Global Bearer Certificates. The instruction must be entered without the value "CRST/". Instead of this, the field "LIEFERUNG-VON NAME" (DELIVERY-FROM-NAME) is tested. The corresponding field "LIEFERUNG-VON NAME" (DELIVERY-FROM-NAME) must include the value "BIC/" and the associated 8-character BIC. A check is made that the first 6 places only contain capital letters and the last two places only capitals or numerals. All other inputs will be rejected with the error message "FOR THIS ISIN ONLY BIC OF COUNTERPARTY POSSIBLE".</p>

4.1.7 Re-conversion (re-exchange)

With the order type re-conversion (re-exchange) of Global Bearer Certificate (GBC), the CBF bearer certificates will be exchanged in certain (original) shares of the related depository of the CBF depository. The settlement takes place in T2S on the settlement day entered by the instructing CBF participant. After selection of "re-conversion (re-exchange)", a screen is provided for the input of the instruction.

For more information regarding GBC, please visit the Clearstream website www.clearstream.com under Products and Services / Settlement / Settlement services / [CSD GBC conversions](#).

If the user selects "OTC/enter/re-conversion", the following screen is displayed.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE-PC re-conversion: enter". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: [text box]
- custody type: [dropdown menu]
- file no.: [text box]
- debit: [text box]
- credit: [text box] (with "7961000" pre-filled)
- securities: [dropdown menu] (with "ISIN" selected) and [text box]
- nominal: [text box]
- unit: [text box]
- security type: [dropdown menu]
- settlement date: [text box] (with "22-11-2018" pre-filled)
- trade date: [text box]
- ext. settlement date: [text box]
- custodian country: [dropdown menu]
- customer reference: [dropdown menu] - [text box]
- delivery to: [text box]
- address: [text box]
- beneficiary: [text box]
- address: [text box]
- text: [text box]

At the bottom of the form area, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel".

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE RT 21-11-18 02:49:33 pm".

For the instruction, the following mandatory fields are defined:

Screen field	Default value:
INSTRUCTION NO.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 8000000 and unique.
DEBIT	CBF account number of the instruction client
SECURITIES	Stock exchange or ISIN code
NOMINAL	Nominal value
SETTLEMENT DATE	Next business day
TRADE DATE	Trade date
EXT. SETTLEMENT DATE	The settlement date valid between the third party counterparties.
DELIVERY TO	<p>Encoding of the ISIN in WSS with LGL/LGS 271/001</p> <p>The instruction must be entered with the value "CRST/". Afterwards, entry is only possible up to 5 places (alphanumeric). All other entries will be rejected with an error message according to the entered ISIN.</p> <p>Encoding of the ISIN in WSS without LGL/LGS 271/001</p> <p>The instruction also relates to Global Bearer Certificates. The instruction must be entered without the value "CRST/". Instead of this, the field "LIEFERUNG-AN NAME" (DELIVERY-TO-NAME) is tested. The corresponding field "LIEFERUNG-AN NAME" (DELIVERY-TO-NAME) must include the value "BIC/" and the associated 8-character BIC. It will be checked that the first six places only contain capital letters and the last two places only capitals or numerals. All other inputs will be rejected with the error message "FOR THIS ISIN ONLY BIC OF COUNTERPARTY POSSIBLE".</p>

4.1.8 Split of warrants

“Split of warrants” is an order type, when a warrant is detached from a bond with a warrant; this yields a bond without a warrant and a single warrant.

Upon entry of the order, the ISIN and the nominal of the bond with a warrant must be input. During the settlement processing, the necessary additional bookings will be created in CASCADE and settled in T2S. The turnovers out of the detachment can be booked via a deviating account number of the client.

After selecting “OTC/enter/split of warrants” from the main menu, an order entry screen is shown:

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC split of warrants: enter' window. The interface includes the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:** []
- deposit type:** [01 - collective custody]
- file no.:** []
- debit:** [] / []
- credit:** [7926000] / []
- securities:** [ISIN] []
- nominal:** []
- security type:** []
- unit:** []
- customer reference:** [] - []
- settlement date:** [22-11-2018]
- There are** [] **additional bookings in favour of:** []

At the bottom, there are three buttons: **process**, **check**, and **cancel**.

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IM522 production T2S Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE OT 21-11-18 02:50:52 pm

The entry of split of warrants requires the following fields:

Screen field	Input	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NO.	Mandatory	Must be lower than 7000000 and unique, meaning there must be no other order for the same client with the same number, neither in entry nor in order status.
DEPOSIT TYPE		01 – collective [safe] custody: Must be identical with the type defined at CBF for the entered ISIN
DEBIT	Mandatory	Must be one of the following account types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Client account (including fiduciary, on-stock, return and special purpose accounts); • EUREX collateral account; • CBF account; • Lending account.
CREDIT		Automatically predefined with an internal CBF account, which cannot be modified.
ISIN	Mandatory	The following security types are allowed for a warrant detachment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bond with a warrant; • Double currency bond with a warrant; • Convertible bond with a warrant; • Zerobond with a warrant; • Profit participation right with a warrant (“<u>Genussrechte</u>”).
NOMINAL	Mandatory	
SETTLEMENT DATE	Mandatory	Default is the next value date.
Booking row		
THERE ARE		After starting the booking checks, the number of potential turnovers is shown with the ISIN, the description of the security and the nominal amount. These are determined by the detachment ratio. If there are more than six additional bookings, there will be an additional message shown on the screen. After the booking took place, the complete turnovers can be retrieved under “movements–positions / movements”.
ADDITIONAL BOOKINGS IN FAVOUR OF	Mandatory	Account number of the bank entering the order. Main and sub-accounts of the account in favour of the bookings are pre-defined automatically according to the debit account. If the sub account of the debit account is modified by the user, the account in favour of the bookings will not be changed automatically as well, but can be changed, if desired.

Client should check the following field dependencies:

- Debit account and user ID: The first four digits of the account number must be identical to the first four digits of the user ID.
- ISIN and settlement day: The settlement day must be within the detachment period for the selected ISIN.

4.1.9 Merger of warrants

The merger of a bond and a single warrant is an order type, when a bond without a warrant and a single warrant are merged; this yields a bond with a warrant.

Upon entry of the order, the ISIN and the nominal of the bond with a warrant must be input. During the settlement processing, the necessary additional bookings are created in CASCADE and settled in T2S. The turnovers out of the merger can be booked via a deviating account number of the client.

After selecting “OTC/enter/merger of warrants” from the main menu, a screen for order entry is shown:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC merger of warrants: enter". The window contains several input fields and dropdown menus for order entry. The fields include: instruction no., deposit type (set to "01 - collective custody"), file no., debit (7926000), credit, securities (ISIN), nominal, security type, unit, customer reference, settlement date (22-11-2018), and additional bookings charged to. At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEE OZ 21-11-18 02:51:55 pm".

The entry of merger of warrants requires the following fields:

Screen field	Input	Explanation
INSTRUCTION NO.	Mandatory	Must be lower than 7000000 and unique, meaning there must be no other order for the same client with the same number, neither in entry nor in order status.
DEPOSIT TYPE		01 – collective (safe) custody: Must be identical with the type defined at CBF for the entered ISIN.
DEBIT		Automatically pre-defined with an internal CBF account, which cannot be modified.
CREDIT	Mandatory	Must be one of the following account types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Client account (including fiduciary, on-stock, return and special purpose accounts); • EUREX collateral account; • Lending account.
ISIN	Mandatory	The following security types are allowed for a warrant re-attachment: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bond with a warrant; • Double currency bond with a warrant; • Convertible bond with a warrant; • Zero bond with warrant; • Profit participation right with a warrant (“Genussrechte”).
NOMINAL	Mandatory	
SETTLEMENT DATE	Mandatory	Default is the next value date.
Booking row		
THERE ARE		After starting the booking checks, the number of the potential turnovers is shown with the ISIN, the description of the security and the nominal amount. These are determined by the detachment ratio. If there are more than six additional bookings, there will be an additional hint shown on the screen. After the booking took place, the complete turnovers can be retrieved under “movements – positions / movements”.
ADDITIONAL BOOKINGS CHARGED TO	Mandatory	Account number of the bank entering the order. Main and sub-accounts of the account charged by the bookings are pre-defined automatically according to the credit account. If the sub-account of the credit account is modified by the user, the account in favour of the bookings will not be changed automatically as well, but can be changed, if desired.

Client should check the following field dependencies:

- Credit and user ID: The first four digits of the account number must be identical to the first four digits of the user ID.
- ISIN and settlement day: The settlement day must be within the detachment period for the selected ISIN.

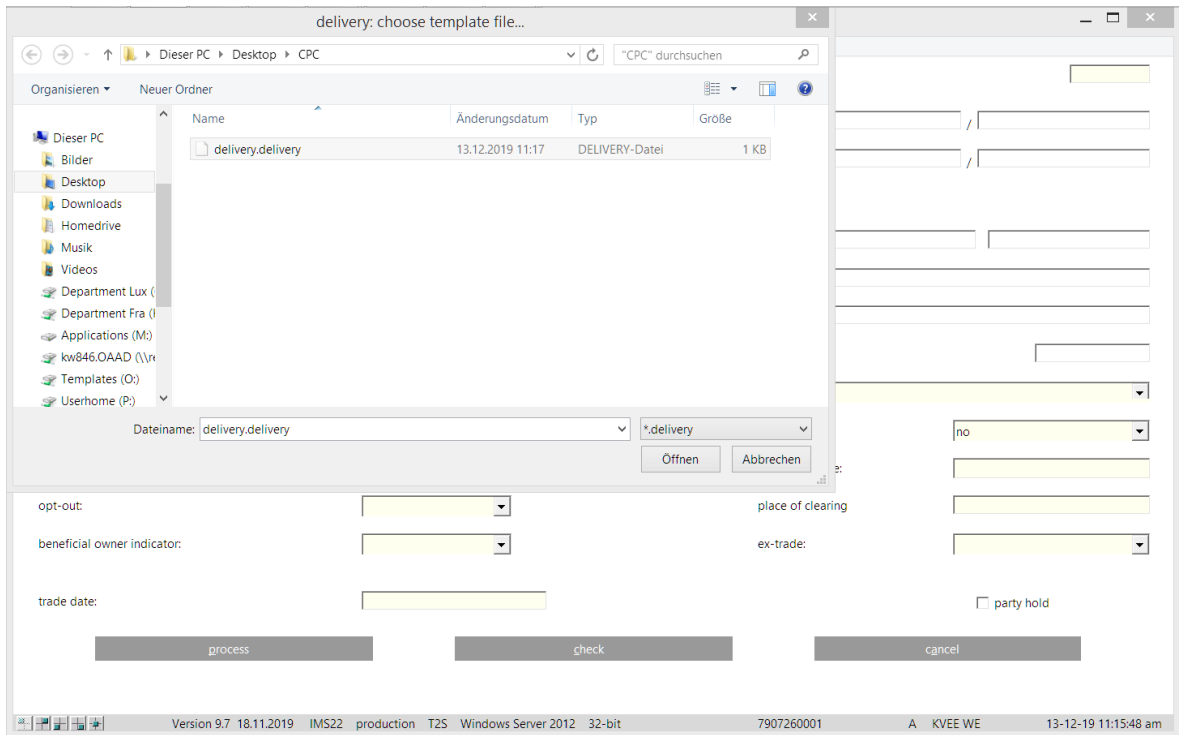
4.1.10 Instruction templates

Instructions can be uploaded via template by clicking “window – load template”. After this, a pre-filled instruction, “the Template” is uploaded which can be adjusted before processing the instruction. There can also be more templates prepared for the future usage – by filling an instruction and going to “window – save as a template”. After the template was saved, it appears in the list and can be used when entering a new transaction via the template.

Please refer to the following example for a delivery instruction template. The functionality is available for the types of instructions as follows (Please note the associated suffixes of the filenames):

- Delivery (suffix delivery);
- Receipt (suffix receipt);
- TEFRA-D release (suffix delivery);
- RS position transfer (suffix positiontransfer);
- RS account transfer (suffix accountransfer);
- Conversion (suffix conversion);
- Re-conversion (suffix reconversion);
- Split of warrants (suffix warrant);
- Merger of warrants (suffix warrant);
- Vaults Deposit;
- Vaults Withdrawal.

The screenshot displays the CASCADE-PC software interface for entering a delivery instruction. The window title is "CASCADE - PC delivery: enter". The interface includes a menu bar with "window" and "help". The "window" menu is open, showing options: "basic data...", "further data...", "settlement-Party...", "linkage...", "registration settlement party", "print view contents", "save as a template...", "load template..." (highlighted with a red box), and "close all". The main form contains various input fields and dropdown menus for fields such as "file no.", "nominal:", "unit:", "cash:", "DCA/REF:", "settlement date:", "opt-out:", "beneficial owner indicator:", "trade date:", "BATM/ADEA:", "stock exchange:", "place of clearing:", "ex-trade:", and "party hold". At the bottom, there are buttons for "process", "check", and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom shows "Version 9.7 18.11.2019 IMS22 production T2S Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907260001 A KVEE WE 13-12-19 11:11:16 am".



4.2 Modification/deletion/information of unverified instructions

Only unverified instructions can be modified or deleted. If the transaction has already been verified, the transaction has to be returned to unverified instructions.

The modification/deletion is done by following “OTC/unverified instructions/modify/delete/display”, which displays the following dialog box.

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: modify / delete/display: unverified instructions". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main content area is divided into two sections. The first section, labeled "selection", contains a list of radio buttons: "all instructions" (selected), "all invalid instructions", "instruction no.", "file no.", "debit bank", and "credit bank". The second section, labeled "additional selection", contains a label "securities code:" followed by a dropdown menu showing "ISIN" and an empty text input field. At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom displays system information: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KYEI AA 21-11-18 02:54:28 pm".

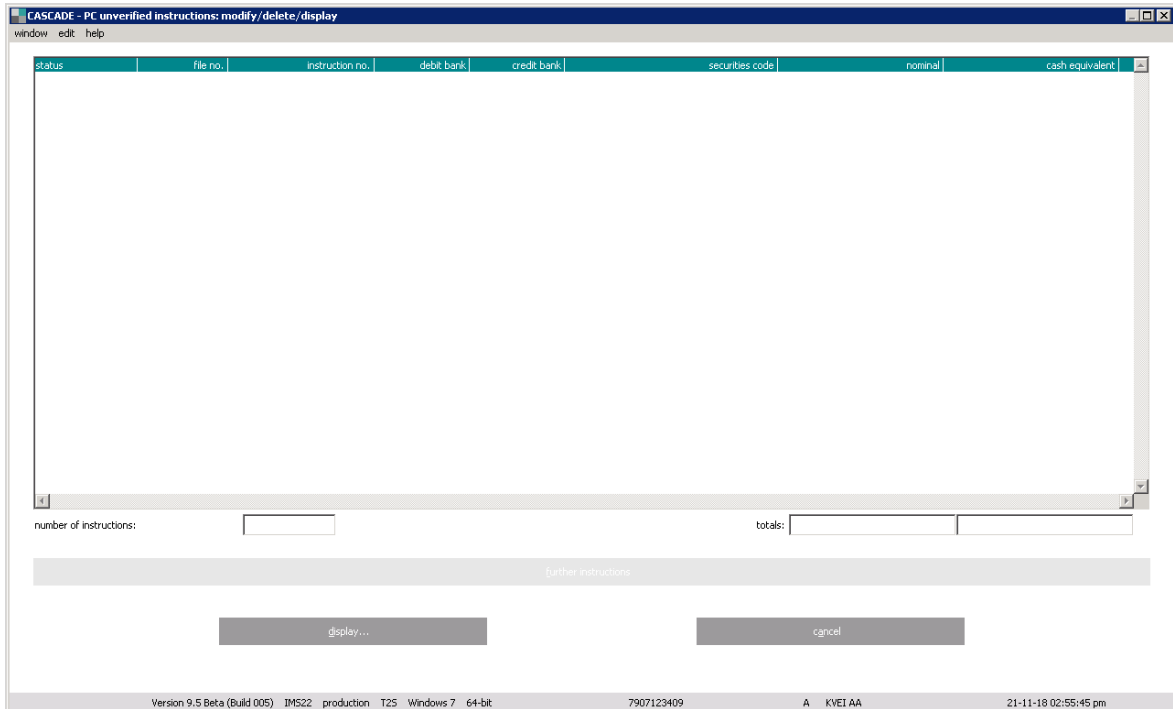
The display can be limited by entering the following data:

- All instructions;
- All invalid instructions;
- Instruction number;
- File number;
- Debit bank;
- Credit bank.

The securities code can be keyed in as an additional selection criterion.

After clicking on “OK”, the list display appears. The options modification, deletion or information can be chosen for example from the right-click menu, which displays with click on the right mouse button on a selected instruction.

Only the current status of an instruction is shown in unverified instructions.



The user has various ways of modifying, deleting, or getting detail information about an instruction.

Button “display”

Click on “display” to see detail information.

Double-click

Double-click on the marked instruction will also display detail information.

Right-mouse click

By marking the instruction with a right-mouse click, a sub-menu is displayed, which enables the user to go to modification, deletion or full display of information.

Menu bar

By marking the instruction and clicking on the menu option “edit”, the user can go to modification, deletion or full display of information.

The processing status of the instruction is displayed in the STATUS column:

- blank value --> non-verified instruction
- "invalid" --> invalid instruction
- "modification" --> instruction returned from pending status for modification
- "deletion" --> instruction returned from pending status for deletion

Processing

"process" saves the modification and the user goes back to the list display.

At deletion, a pop-up window is displayed in which the deletion of the instruction has to be confirmed. Only after "OK" is the deletion executed and the user returns to the list display.

"Cancel" closes the list display and returns the user to the processing menu.

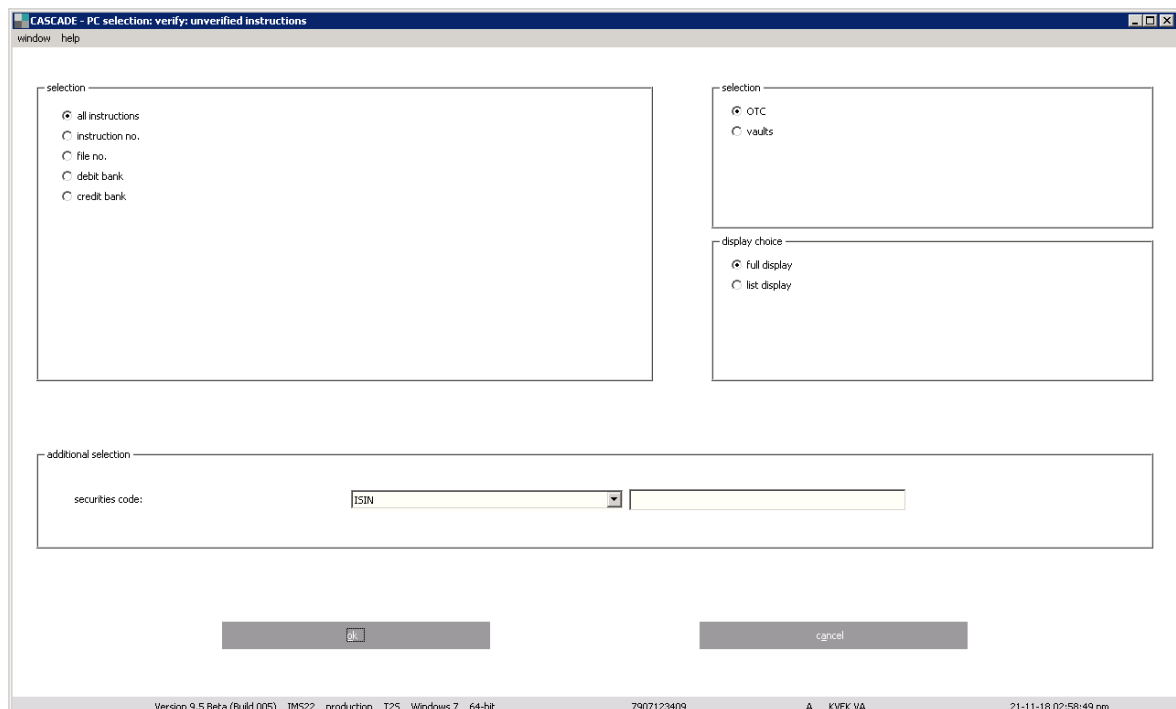
4.3 Verification of OTC instructions

The entered instructions have to be verified by a second person to follow the dual control principle. The system checks whether the verifier uses a different ID from the person who had entered the data.

The user accesses the entry window by selecting "OTC/unverified instructions/verify". He can choose between full display of the instruction or a reduced list form.

The instructions can be selected by instruction number, file number, debit or credit bank, or they can be displayed as "all instructions".

The securities code can also be entered as an additional selection criterion.



4.3.1 Verification: full display

When selecting “all instructions” and full-screen display, the user gets the full display of all unverified instructions.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: verify". The window contains a form with the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: 254815
- file no.:
- debit: (empty)
- credit: (empty)
- securities: ISIN: DE0005085708, CINEMAXX AG O.N.
- nominal: 1, unit: ST
- cash: 1.00, EUR, EUR - Euro
- DCA/REF: (empty)
- BATM/ADEA: no
- settlement date: 22-11-2018, stock exchange: (empty)
- opt-out: (empty)
- beneficial owner indicator: (empty)
- ex-trade: (empty)
- trade date: 21-11-2018, party hold:
- status: unverified

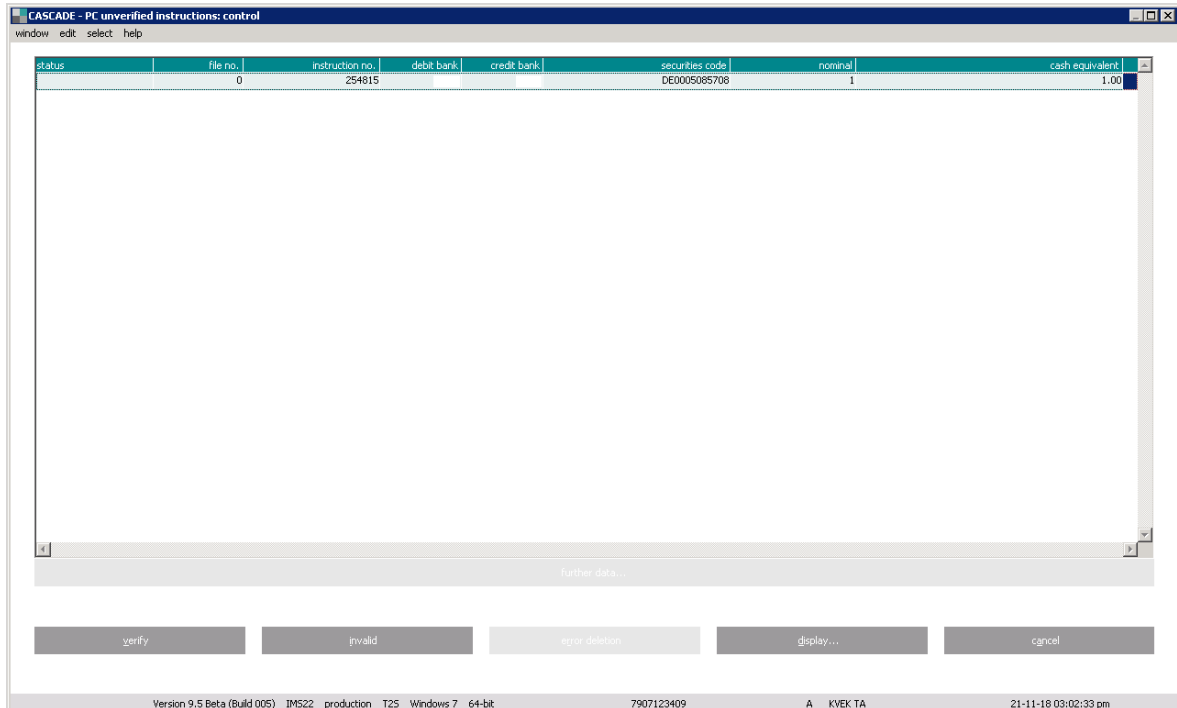
At the bottom of the form, there are four buttons: "verify" (disabled), "unverified", "invalid", and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVEK VA 21-11-18 03:00:10 pm".

The verification can only be executed when all windows applying to the instruction (for example further data and/or settlement party) have been opened. Otherwise, the “verify” button remains inactive.

By clicking on the “verify” button, the instructions are marked as having been verified and are shifted from the unverified instructions into pending instructions. The user can skip an instruction or mark it as invalid by clicking the buttons: “unverified” or “invalid”.

4.3.2 Verification: list display

In the list display, the instructions are listed in a short display.



The tabular short display allows various options for verification.

Process button

After marking an instruction, it can be verified by clicking the “verify” button.

Right-mouse click

The user can mark the instruction and by clicking the right-mouse button, he can call up a sub-menu, with the options: “verify”, “invalid” and “display”.

Menu bar

In addition, by marking the instruction and clicking on the menu option “edit”, the same processing can be implemented as described under “right-mouse click”.

The user can also mark the instruction and go to the full display of information by double-clicking.

The button “further data” is described (as “further instructions”) in section 2.2.3 “The Dialogue Window”.

The processing status of an instruction is displayed in the information display with the following options:

- blank value --> non-verified instruction
- “invalid” --> invalid instruction
- “modification” --> instruction returned to unverified positions from pending for modification
- “deletion” --> instruction returned to unverified positions from pending status for deletion

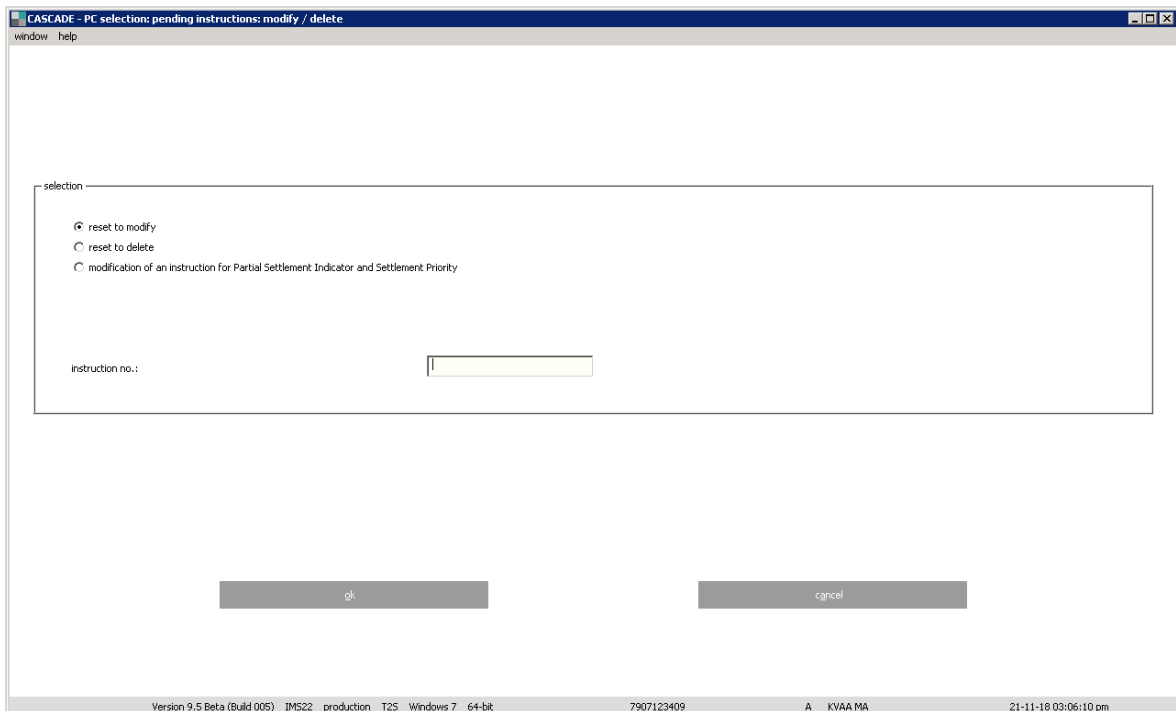
4.4 Modification/deletion/information on pending instructions

A verified instruction is a pending instruction. If an instruction needs to be amended or deleted, it has to be marked for modification or deletion to return to the unverified instruction.

Instruction modification for Stock Exchange trades follows the same processes as modifications of OTC instructions and are triggered and reported via the same connectivity channels. For Stock Exchange Transactions, the modification service can only be used on the "sell side".

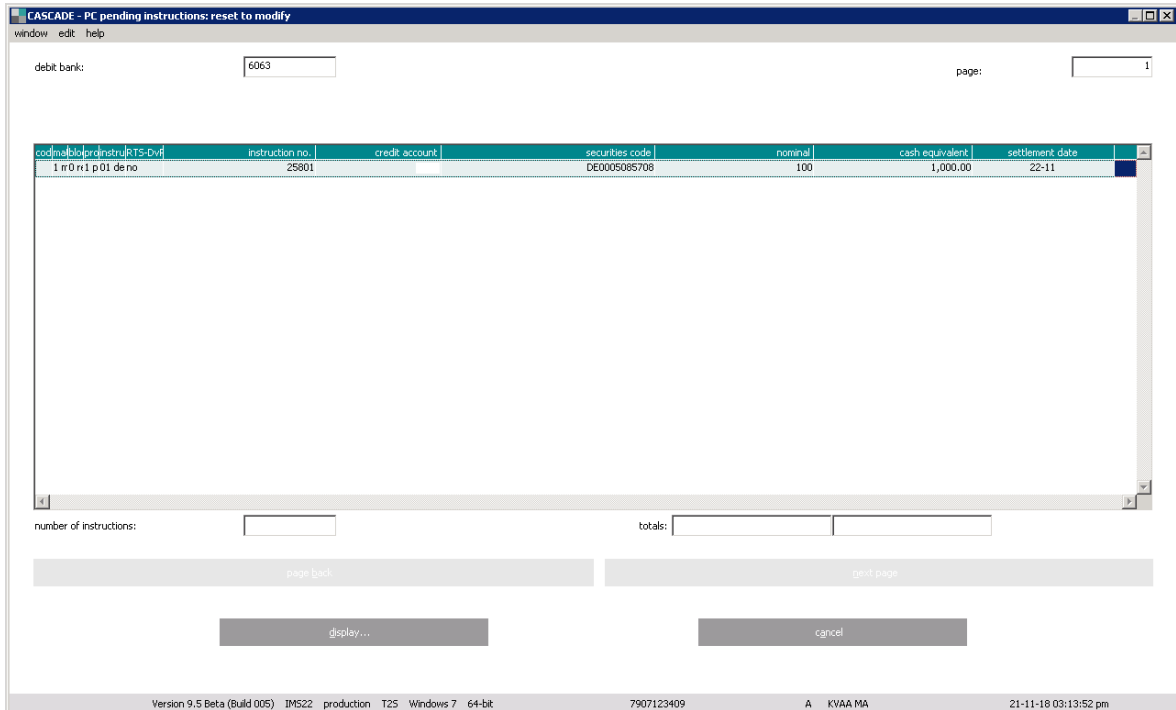
Matched instructions can no longer be modified but need to be cancelled.

Reset of the pending instruction to an unverified instruction for deletion or modification can be executed by the menu option "OTC/pending instructions/modify/delete".



Reset to Modify

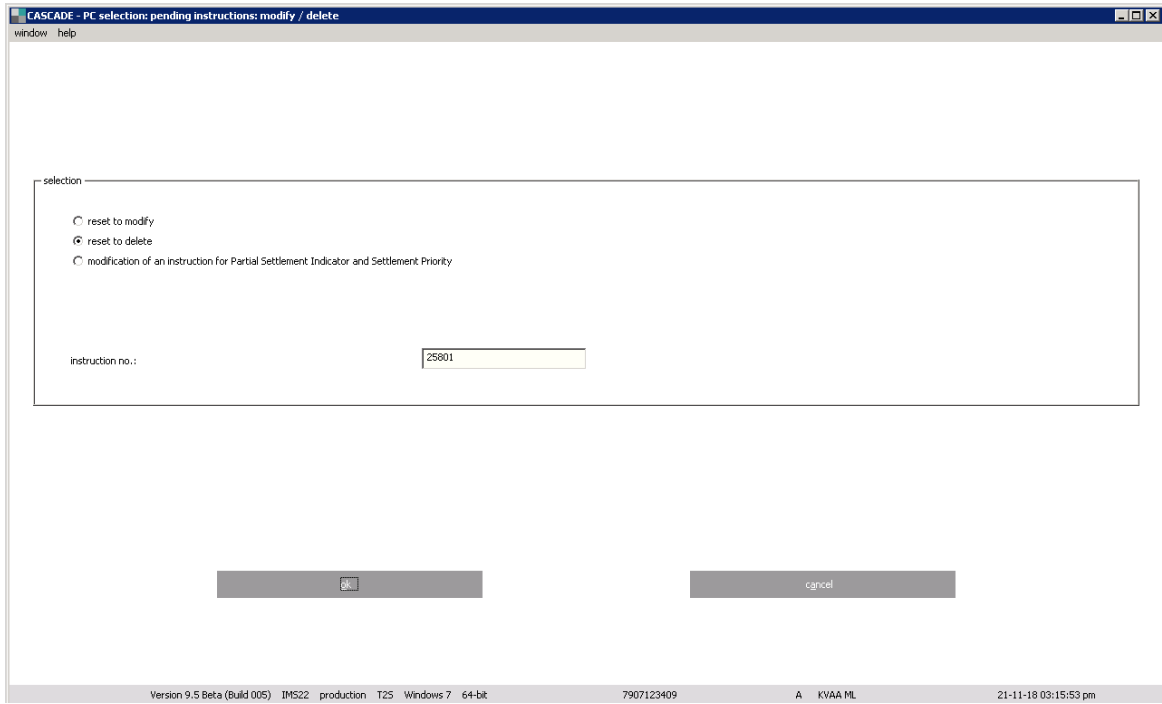
Enter an instruction number to call up the desired instruction. The options for one-leg or two-leg modification can be chosen for example from the right-click menu, which displays with click on the right mouse button on a selected instruction.



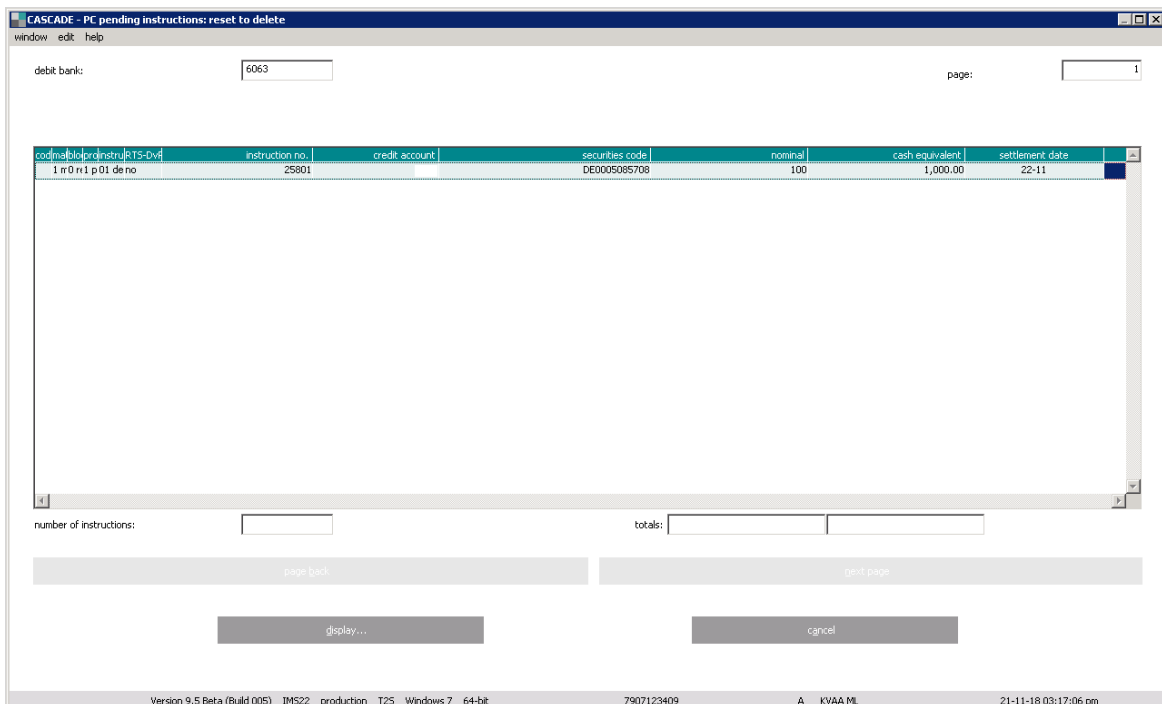
Any modification, except a change of the instruction number, can be entered in the "unverified instructions" status. After verification, the instruction reverts to the pending status.

Reset to Delete

If pending instructions are to be deleted, these have to be changed back into unverified instructions first. The user can do this with “reset to delete” under the menu options “OTC/pending instructions/modify/delete”.



Enter an instruction number to call up the desired instruction. The options for one-leg or two-leg deletion can be chosen for example from the right-click menu, which displays with click on the right mouse button on a selected instruction.



The irrevocable deletion of an instruction is executed using the function “verify” in the unverified instructions (dual control principle).

Deletion of Stock Exchange Transactions

A transaction, which has been marked for deletion by both counterparties, will be recorded during the evening processing. The transaction will be shown for one more day for information purposes and then automatically deleted.

Transactions for CSC securities in EUR, which have been marked for deletion by one counterparty only, are set on hold in T2S. They will be carried over until the other counterparty also marks them for deletion or cancels the marking for deletion. A request for deletion is sent to T2S only if both counterparties mark the transaction for deletion. Deletion is also possible for the remaining parts of partial delivery and partial settlement.

Transactions for CSC securities in non-EUR currencies can be deleted as long as the cash side has not settled in Creation. If only one side marks the instruction for deletion, no hold is set in T2S and settlement will still be possible.

Transactions are only deleted, if both counterparties delete the instruction. If a stock exchange instruction for a CSC security is deleted due to a revalidation in T2S (for example because the security meanwhile reached maturity) the delivery will be deleted afterwards automatically. An instruction with this status cannot settle in T2S.

If a participant sets a marking for deletion of stock exchange transactions, which are marked “fixed value next day”, then the cash clearing for these instructions will not be carried out.

Clearstream Banking can delete Eurex instructions after receiving a directive from Eurex. This deletion, however, will not be displayed to users who are not Clearstream Banking participants.

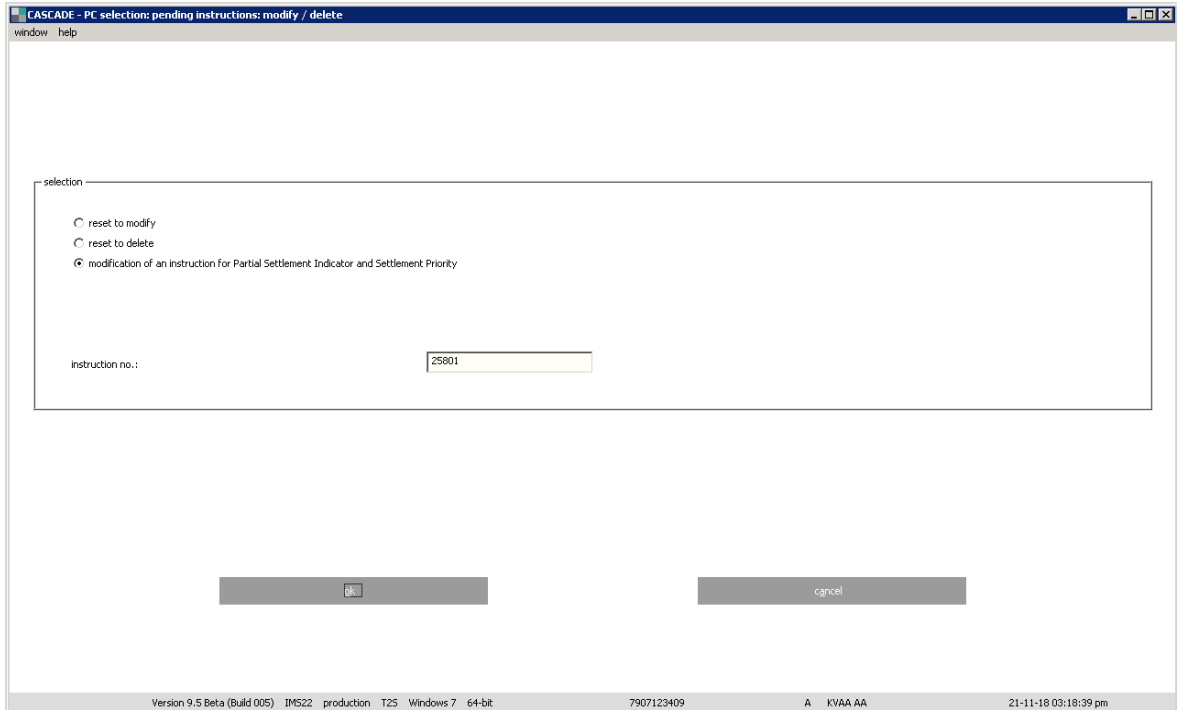
Under the following conditions, the individual instructions will **not** be shown in the list display of the stock exchange clearing and settlement:

- The position is cancelled;
- An order or a transfer order is involved;
- A compensation is involved;
- The position is indicated for deletion by the buyer;
- The position is indicated for deletion by the seller;
- The position is indicated for deletion by both counterparties;
- The position was deleted by both counterparties on the previous day.

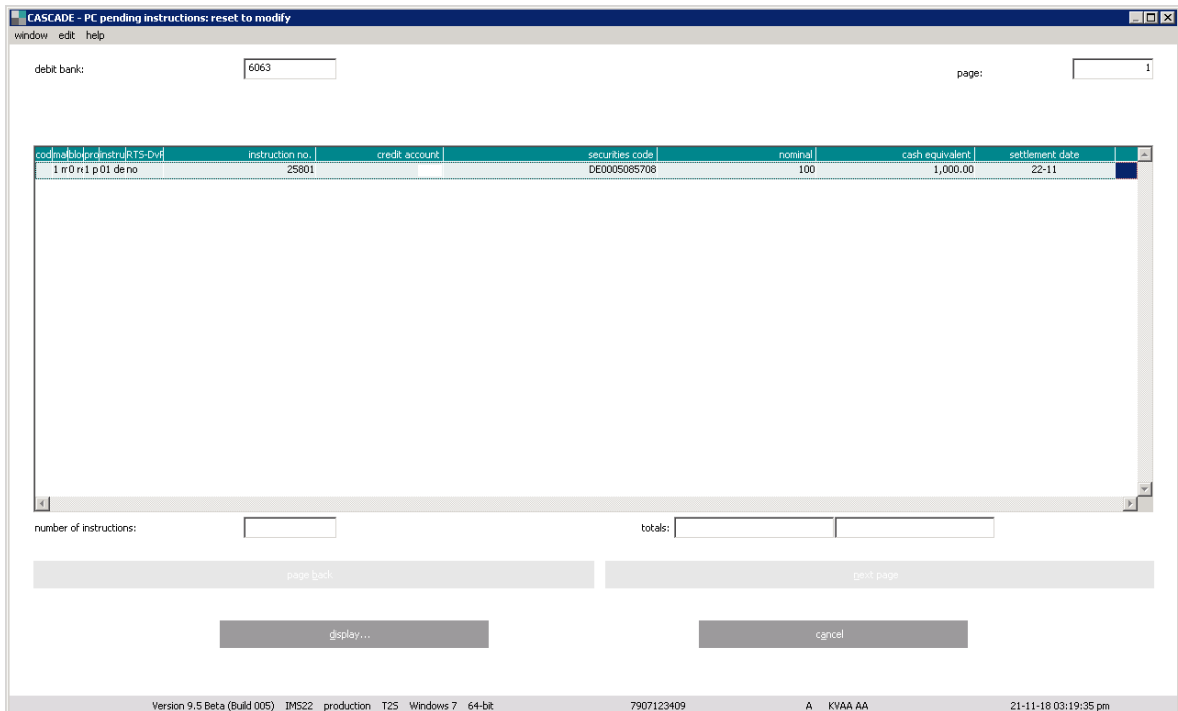
For instructions which are already marked for deletion, the marking for deletion can be cancelled subsequently. In such a case, for a proper processing, both participants have to cancel the delete-markings set by them before the processing is carried out.

Modification of an instruction for Partial Settlement Indicator and Settlement Priority

Enter an instruction number to call up the desired instruction.



Select modification option by right-clicking the instruction or from edit menu.



Pending instructions

After verification, the instruction is pending. The user can call up displays, with extensive status information, in regard of matching, blocking/unblocking and processing. The information is related both to the instructions which the user himself has entered and instructions entered by counterparts.

The user can call up the information menu window by "OTC/pending instructions/information".

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: display: pending instructions". It features a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar, there are two radio buttons: "own instructions" (selected) and "counterparty instructions". A "selection" section contains a list of radio buttons: "all instructions by type" (selected), "instruction no.", "reference", "instructions rejected in process", "delivery instructions", "receipt instructions", "instruction history", "all orders to ISIN", and "custody PFoD". Below this is a "transaction type:" label and a dropdown menu with options: "DI Deposit / Withdrawal only", "OTC only", and "SE only". To the right of this dropdown is another dropdown menu. Below these is an "additional selection" section with fields for "own account no.", "counterparty:", "securities:" (with a dropdown showing "ISIN"), "settlement date:" (with "25-05-2022"), and "currency:" (with a dropdown). At the bottom are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

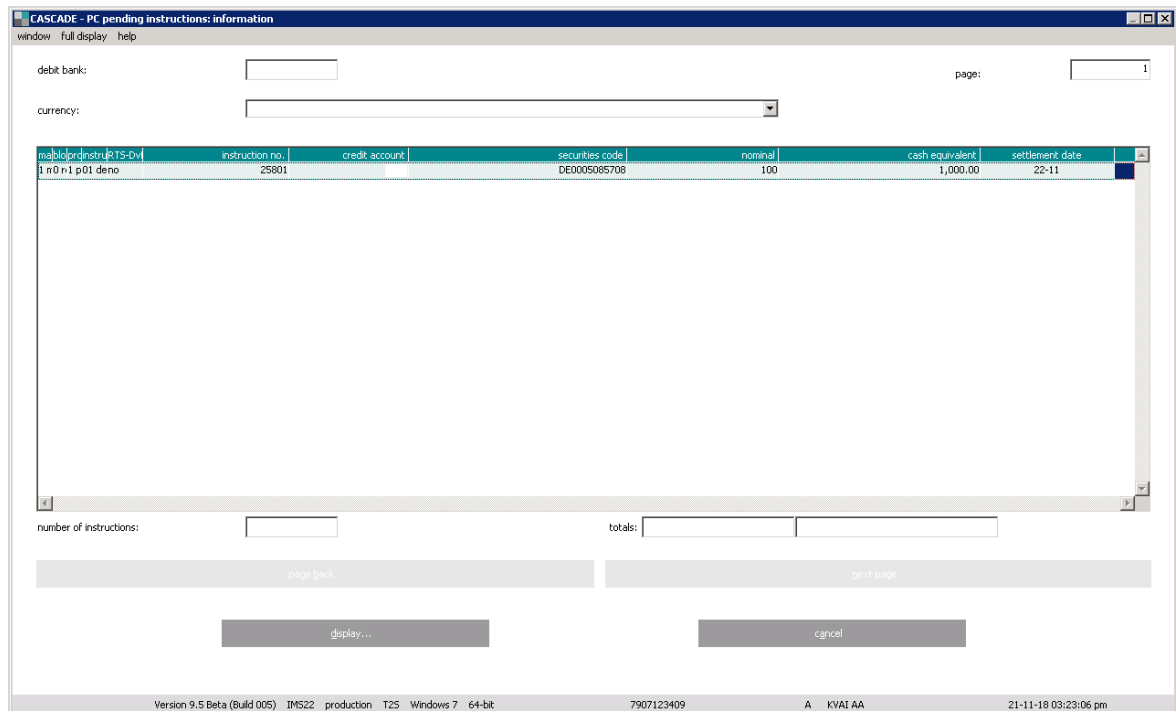
In the field "transaction type", clients can set one of the new filter criteria ("OTC only" for OTC trades or "SE only" for Stock exchange trades or "DI Deposit/Withdrawal only" for dematerialized securities transactions). The field is optional and is left blank per default.

The user has the following options in limiting the list display:

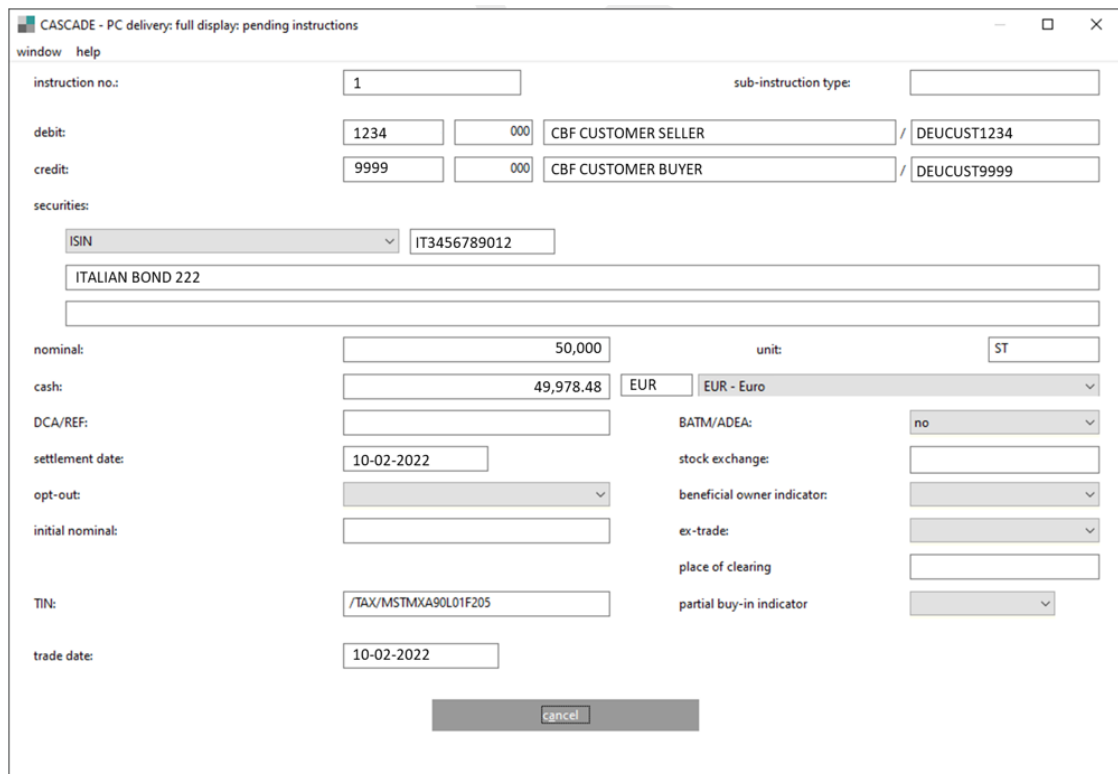
- Instruction type (delivery, receipt);
- Instruction number;
- MITI reference;
- Instructions rejected in process;
- Counter-party delivers (matched, unmatched, invalid);
- Counter-party receives (matched, unmatched, invalid);
- Instruction history;
- All orders to ISIN;
- Custody PfoD.

Additional selection criteria are the debit and credit bank, settlement date, the currency and the securities code.

“OK” takes the user to the list display.



The path to call the full display is the same like in every list display: By marking the instruction and clicking on display or by double-clicking on the marked instruction or by choosing full display from the menu bar.



CASCADE-PC User Manual

CASCADE - PC receipt: full display: pending instructions

instruction no.: 1 sub-instruction type:

debit: 1234 000 CBF CUSTOMER SELLER / DEUCUST1234

credit: 9999 000 CBF CUSTOMER BUYER / DEUCUST9999

securities:

ISIN IT3456789012

ITALIAN BOND 222

nominal: 50,000 unit: ST

cash: 49,978.48 EUR EUR - Euro

DCA/REF: BATM/ADEA: no

settlement date: 10-02-2022 stock exchange:

opt-out: beneficial owner indicator:

TIN: /CTX/MSTMXA93L41F205F place of clearing:

trade date: 10-02-2022 partial buy-in indicator:

cancel

Please note that via selecting “YYY” as currency, all transactions will be selected with a non-EUR currency and which are not FoP (for which an “XXX” currency is used), and a total will be shown for them.

CASCADE - PC pending instructions: information

debit bank: page: 1

currency:

instr	instr no.	credit account	securities code	nominal	cash equivalent	settlement date
1	25801		DE0005085708	100	1,000.00	22-11

number of instructions: totals:

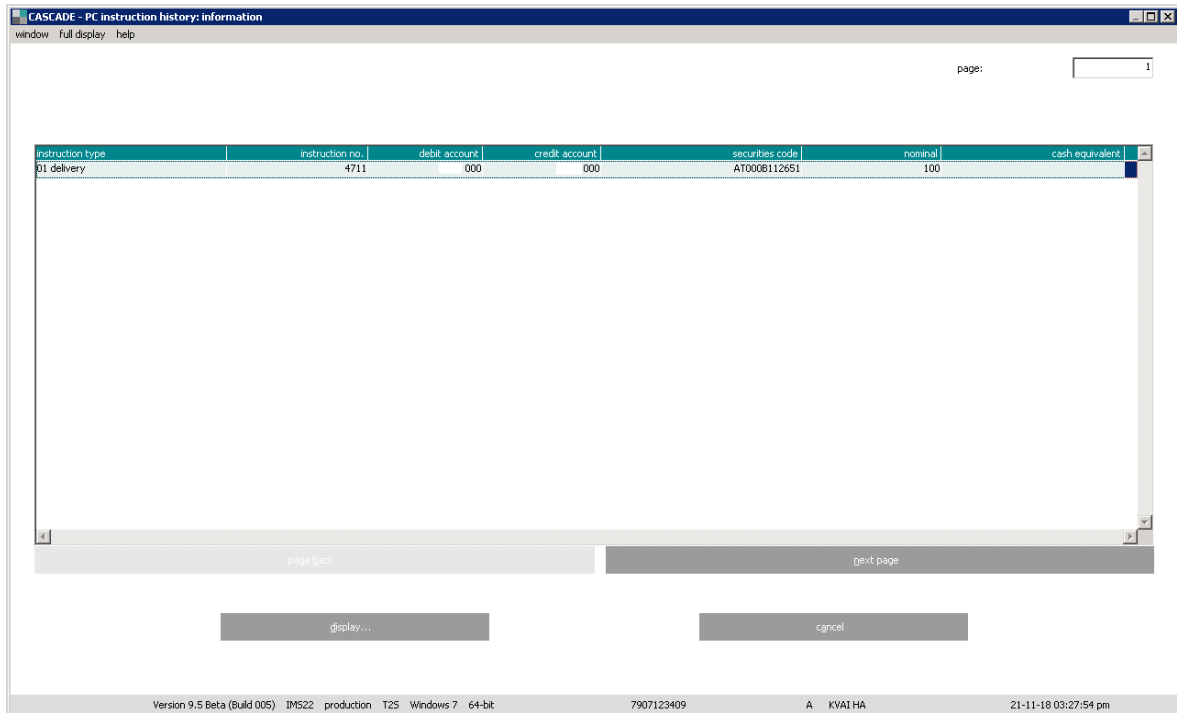
page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVAIAA 21-11-18 03:23:06 pm

4.5 Display instruction history

Pending instructions which are changed back into "unverified instructions" are placed in the history for one day. Information on the history can be called up by clicking on "OTC/pending instructions/instruction history".



Calling up the full display is the same like in every list display.

4.6 Blocking/release of instructions

The settlement service provides an option to block or release a delivery (with cash clearing or free of payment) or a receipt instruction for the corresponding processing.

An instruction can be blocked already at data entry (see delivery instruction entry). This blocking or release can be cleared in the blocking/unblocking service after verification up to processing.

Blocking/unblocking applies irrespective of whether an instruction is matched or not.

By clicking on the menu option "OTC/pending instructions/block/unblock", the user arrives at the "blocking/unblocking" window.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: block / unblock: pending instructions". The window contains a "selection" section with four radio buttons: "block deliveries" (selected), "block receipts", "unblock deliveries", and "unblock receipts". Below this is an "additional selection" section with several input fields: "settlement date" (text input), "securities code" (dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected and a text input), "debit bank" (text input), "credit bank" (text input), "currency" (dropdown menu), "sub-instruction type" (dropdown menu), and "transaction type" (dropdown menu). The "transaction type" dropdown is open, showing three options: "DI Deposit / Withdrawal only", "OTC only", and "SE only". At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

In the field "transaction type", clients can set one of the new filter criteria ("OTC only" for OTC trades, or "SE only" Stock exchange trades or "DI Deposit/Withdrawal only" for dematerialized securities transactions). The field is optional and is left blank per default.

Stock exchange instructions for CSC securities can be set on hold by clients as long as they are pending in T2S

The user can call up for display all blocked and unblocked instructions. He can also call up information on all deliveries and receipts to be blocked or released. He can activate a further selection by entering settlement date, securities code, debit bank and credit bank.

The instructions and receipts that are blocked or released are displayed in a tabular form.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC block: pending delivery". At the top, there are input fields for "settlement date:" (22-11-2018), "debit bank:", and "page:" (1). Below these is a "currency:" dropdown menu. The main area contains a table with the following data:

code	instruction no.	credit account	securities code	nominal	cash equivalent
0 ri 01 mx 1 p	25801	000	DE0005085708	100	1,000.00

Below the table, there are fields for "number of instructions:" (1) and "totals:" (100). At the bottom, there are buttons for "page back", "next page", "process", "display...", and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVA5 SA 21-11-18 03:32:00 pm".

The list display allows various options to process the instructions.

Right-mouse click

The user can mark the instruction and by clicking on the right-mouse button, he can call up a sub-menu in which the options are: "display" and "process".

Menu bar

By marking the instruction and clicking on the menu option "edit", the same display appears as already described under "right-mouse click".

In addition, the user can mark the instruction and by double-clicking, go to the full display of information.

4.7 Match service

Security transfers versus, with or free of payment as well as payments without security transfer are to be confirmed by the recipient in form of a match instruction, independently from which leg has been entered first in the CASCADE system. Only security transfers with the status “matched” can be used for settlement in T2S on the settlement day. The matching immediately takes place when a captured and checked security transfer or respectively a match instruction (instructions submitted via File Transfer, IBM WebSphere MQSeries and SWIFT are considered as checked) has been transmitted to T2S and in parallel to CASCADE. The match status of an instruction can be retrieved from the information service.

The matching takes place in T2S on the basis of mandatory, additional and optional matching fields after the check of the captured instruction.

Mandatory matching fields:

Against Payment instructions (DvP / RvP / DwP / RwP / PfoD)	Free of Payment instructions (DfoP / RfoP)
	Delivering Party BIC
	Receiving Party BIC
	ISIN code
	Settlement Quantity
	Intended Settlement Date
	Trade date
	Payment Type (APMT/FREE)
	Securities Movement Type(DEL/RECE)
	CSD of the Delivering Party
	CSD of the Receiving Party
Settlement amount	n/a
Currency	
Credit/Debit	

Additional matching fields:

Against Payment and Free of Payment instructions

Opt-out ISO transaction condition indicator

ExCoupon / CumCoupon indicator

Optional matching fields:

Against Payment and Free of Payment instructions

Common trade reference

Client of delivering CSD participant

Client of receiving CSD participant

T2S SAC of delivering party

T2S SAC of receiving party

The mandatory matching fields have to be filled in both the instruction and in the counter-instruction, and the values have to be identical or contrary (direction of payment or security), in order to match. Moreover, the values in the additional matching fields have to match if at least one counterparty has filled the respective field. Optional matching fields can match against empty fields; if, however, both counterparties have filled the respective fields, these values have to match. Only if all these conditions are met, the instruction is considered as "matched".

For the alignment of the corresponding countervalue in a security transfer versus payment, tolerance levels apply (see following section). If both countervalues differ from each other exceeding the acceptable tolerance level, the countervalue of the seller's delivery instruction will be used for cash settlement.

If the above-mentioned conditions are met for more than one counter-instructions, T2S will match those instructions and counter-instructions with the smallest deviation in the countervalue. If the instruction does not have a countervalue or multiple instructions with the same countervalues meet the conditions, T2S will match the instruction and counter-instruction with the smallest deviation in the timing of their receipt at T2S.

4.7.1 Additional criteria for matching

4.7.1.1 Countervalue – Tolerance levels for security transfers with countervalue

The current tolerance limits are available on the Clearstream website under [Foreign currency matching tolerance amounts](#).

4.7.1.2 Exceptions – Matching security transfer without countervalue

CASCADE offers different types of instructions to submit instructions for security transfers without countervalue (D-FoP). For FoP matching and entry of a security delivery instruction without counter-instruction (R-FoP), not all security types are concerned.

In the following, the types of security transfers without countervalue that fall under the matching obligation are listed:

- Security transfer without countervalue – applicable for D-FoP instructions with bearer bonds as well as for D-FoP instructions with registered shares, which are transferable as unregistered positions, CCP surplus deliveries (CASCADE Auftragsart 01);
- RS Account Transfer from a corporate action without countervalue (CASCADE Auftragsart 01).

The matching obligation of the D-FoP instruction depends on the setup of the involved CBF accounts.

For D-FoP instructions, the matching obligation applies also for CBF accounts between headquarters and subsidiaries, or clients who maintain multiple CBF account masters, as this might involve different legal entities.

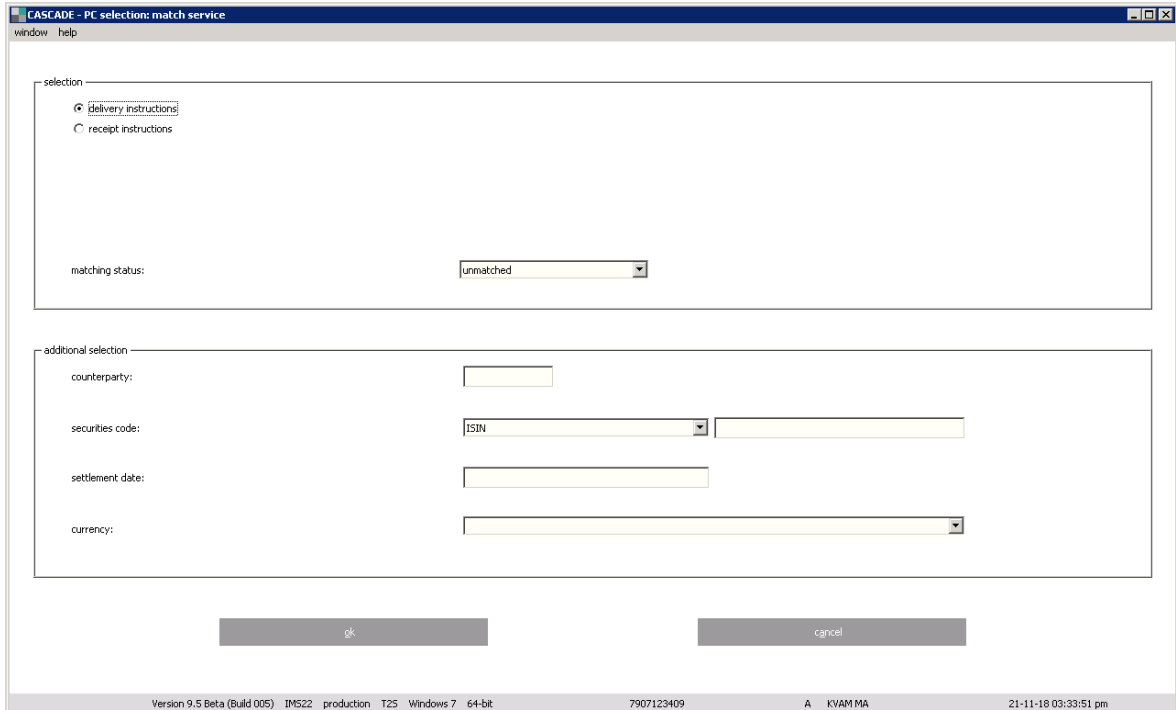
4.7.2 Counterparty instructions against payment

To properly process a securities transaction with cash settlement, all delivery instructions are to be confirmed with a matching receipt instruction of the purchaser.

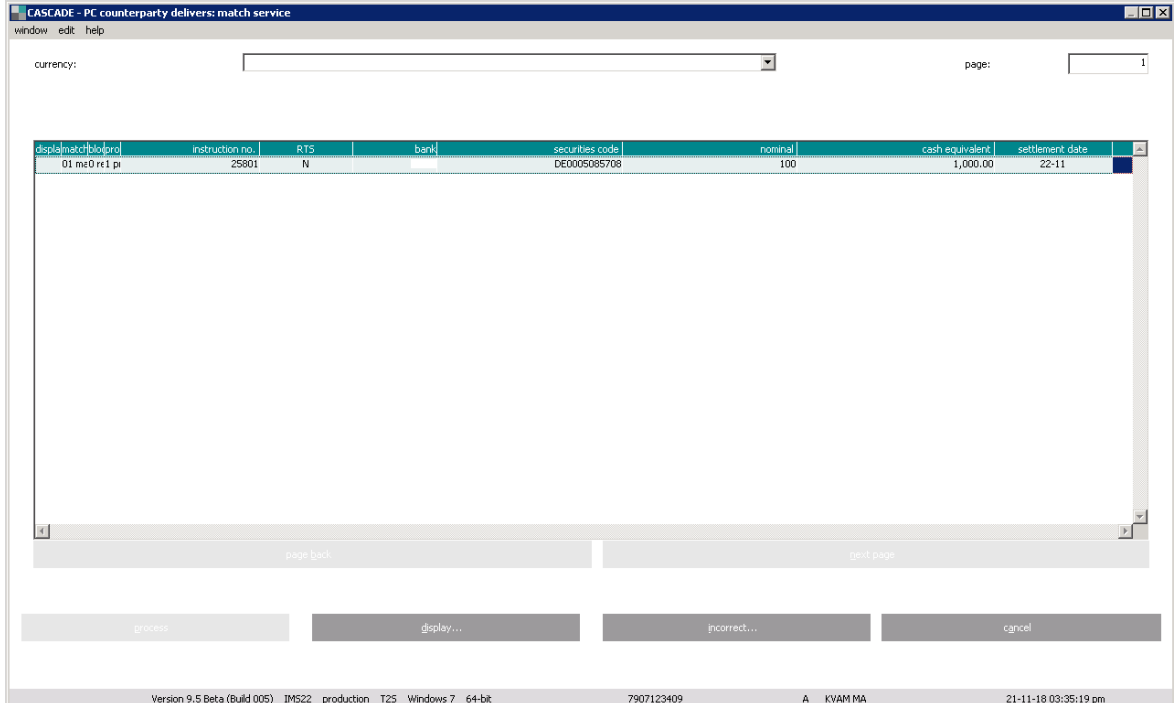
The matching service displays the instructions entered by counterpart that is the user can call up all delivery instructions and the matching receipt instructions which have been entered against his name.

Information on delivery instructions/receipt instructions a user has entered himself can be called up only from the CASCADE information display service (OTC/pending instructions/display).

By clicking on "OTC/pending instructions/match service", the user calls up the matching service menu.



All matched and unmatched delivery and receipt instructions can be displayed here. Options here are counterpart's bank number, securities code and settlement date.



The matching status shows the processing status of the delivery/receipt instruction. Unmatched delivery/receipt instructions indicate that the CP instruction is missing.

Right-mouse click

The user can mark the instruction and by clicking on the right-mouse button, he can call up a sub-menu in which the options are: "display", "incorrect".

When choosing "select error ID", a pop-up window is displayed, in which the user can choose the reason for rejection using the drop-down list. "OK" takes the user back to the list display.

The counterpart has to implement the error clearance for a delivery or a receipt in unverified instructions. To do this, he has to return the instructions into unverified to modify them (see chapter modification/deletion).

Menu bar

By marking the instruction and clicking on the menu option "edit", the same process as given under "right-mouse click" can be performed.

In addition, the user can mark the instruction and by double-clicking and go to the full display of information.

The user can also select all transactions which are non-EUR or FoP by selecting the currency "YYY".

Cancel matched instructions

If a receipt and a delivery instruction are already matched, it can only be cancelled via bilateral cancellation, that is, both counterparties send a cancellation.

Receipts and/or deliveries can be marked as invalid only as long as they are unmatched.

Deletion is carried out on input of the instruction number.

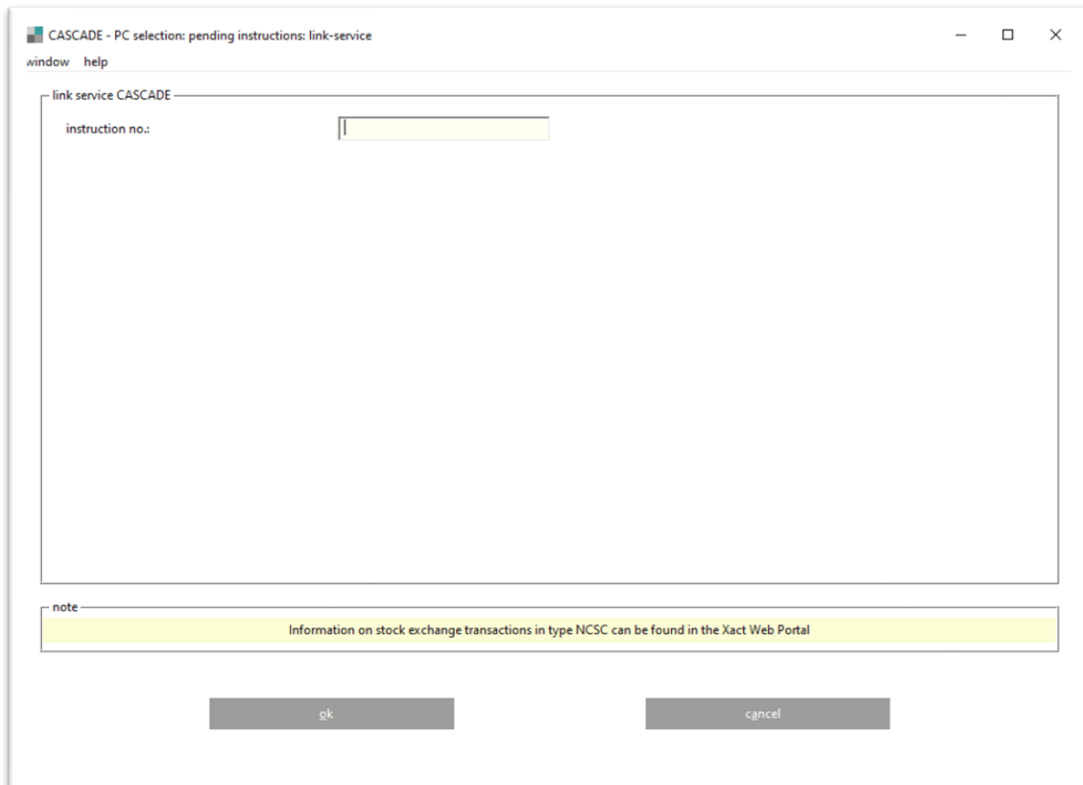
4.8 Link service

General description

Via the Link service functionality in CASCADE-PC the creation and deletion of a link of a stock exchange trade (CSC security) to a non-CCP stock exchange trade (CSC security) or OTC transaction can be conducted.

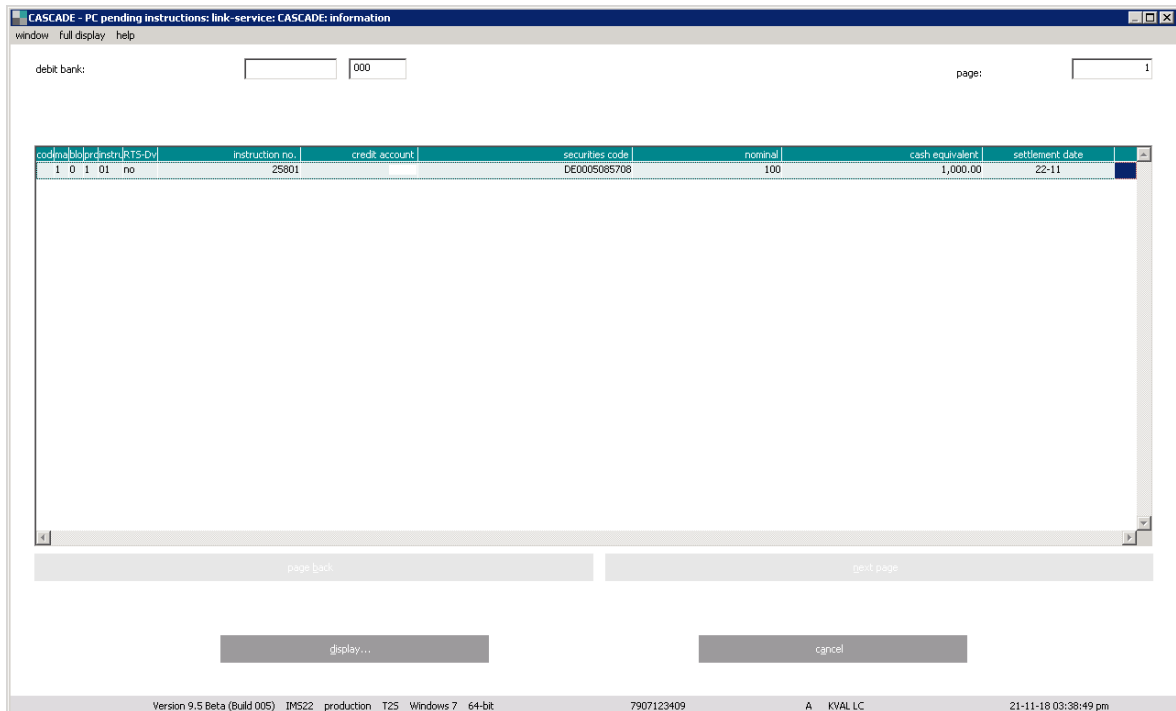
Link Service CASCADE

By clicking on **OTC / pending instructions / link-service**, the user calls up the link-service menu.



The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: pending instructions: link-service". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area is titled "link service CASCADE" and contains a label "instruction no.:" followed by a text input field. Below the input field is a "note" section with a yellow background containing the text: "Information on stock exchange transactions in type NCSC can be found in the Xact Web Portal". At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

Note: DvP transactions in foreign currency as well as transactions involving an Out-CSD counterparty must generally not be linked with any other transaction, as this can cause processing issues. For such cases, CBF reserves the right to manually interfere in order to ensure proper settlement of the concerned transactions. If the strict procedure is applied, no linkage must be created for TEFRA D securities between a delivery and a receipt instruction within the 40-days period for simultaneous settlement of the same security.



The list display allows various options to process the instructions.

Right-mouse click

The user can mark the instruction and by clicking on the right-mouse button, he can call up a sub-menu in which the options are: “display” and “modify”.

Menu bar

By marking the instruction and clicking on the menu option “edit”, the same display appears as already described under “right-mouse click”.

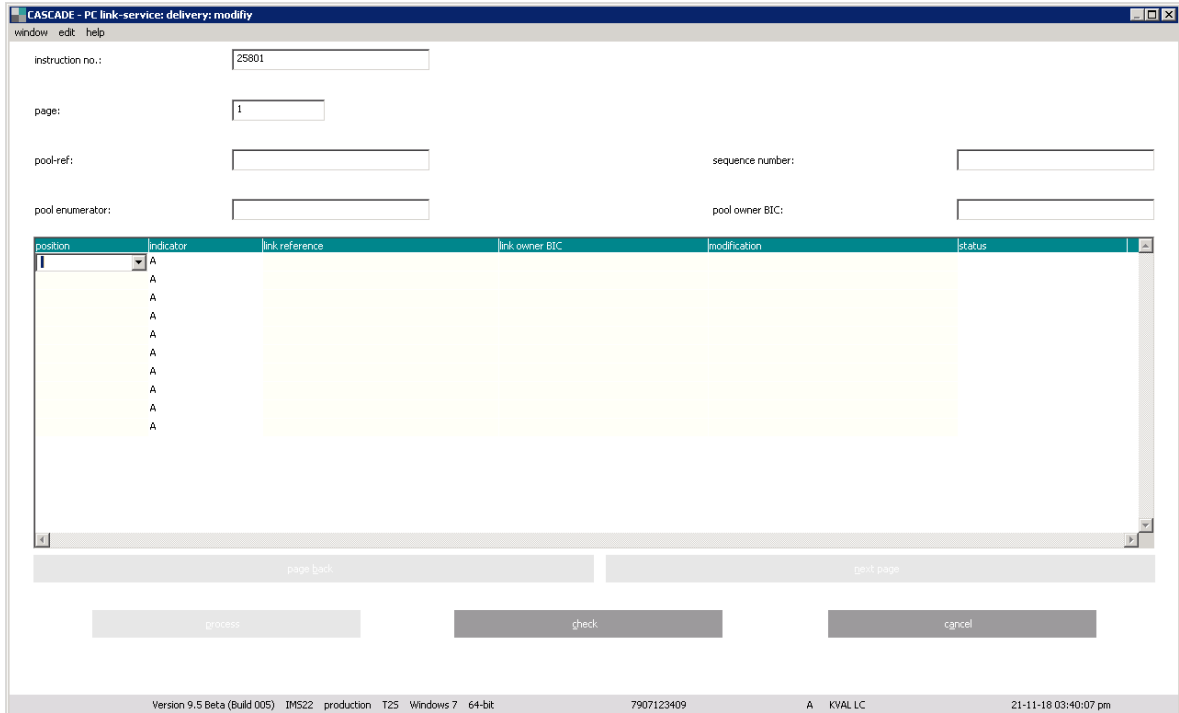
In addition, the user can mark the instruction and by double-clicking, go to the full display of information.

Modify screen

The processing position values which can be used to link an instruction are:

- BEFO (Before)
The instruction is to settle before or at least at the same time as the instruction to which it is linked.
- AFTE (After)
The instruction is to settle after or at least at the same time as the instruction to which it is linked.
- WITH (With)
The instruction is to settle at the same time as the instruction to which it is linked (that is, all-or-none).
- INFO (Information)
The code is for information purposes only. The instruction reference is provided for information only and is not relevant for settlement.

(For all field descriptions please see chapter [16](#) Appendix.)



5 T2S auto-collateralisation and client-collateralisation

5.1 General information

T2S auto-collateralisation is a functionality provided by T2S. It allows the generation of additional intraday cash liquidity in case of insufficient liquidity for the settlement of securities transactions.

For the provision of intraday credit, two types of T2S auto-collateralisation are offered by the Eurosystem:

- Central Bank collateralisation (afterwards referred to as “auto-collateralisation”):
 - Offered by a NCB (credit provider);
 - Covering the lack of cash on a T2S DCA;
 - Providing the possibility for secured intraday credit from NCBs;
- Client-collateralisation:
 - Offered by a payment bank (credit provider);
 - Covering insufficient external guarantee headroom as defined within the CMB for the payment bank’s client;
 - Providing the possibility for secured credit line from payment banks.

Whereas auto-collateralisation increases the available cash liquidity on a DCA, client-collateralisation increases the credit limit a payment bank grants to his client. With the migration to T2S, CBF supports both auto-collateralisation (together with the NCBs) and client-collateralisation.

NCBs have to determine the collateral management procedure they want to use for their central bank collateralisation processes. CBF supports the following collateral management procedures¹²:

- Repo procedure:

The used collateral is transferred from the collateral providing account of the collateral provider to an (intraday) collateral receiving account of the credit provider.
- Pledge procedure:

The used collateral is transferred from the collateral providing account of the collateral provider to an (intraday) collateral receiving account of the collateral provider where it is pledged to the credit provider.

Clients should contact CBF or their NCB to find out the chosen procedure. Deutsche Bundesbank envisages to use the REPO procedure.

For client-collateralisation, T2S only supports the REPO procedure.

In general, the NCBs for auto-collateralisation and the payment banks for client-collateralisation are responsible for setting up the respective processes. For further details on the processes, please refer to the T2S UDFS and the respective NCB documentation. CBF supports clients with respect to account setup and instruction management of collateral as described in the following sections. The generation of the collateral instructions, for example for opening or returning the collateral is functionality that is offered by T2S.

Note: The collateral provider does not necessarily have to be the same legal entity as the credit consumer. Therefore, in the remainder of the document “collateral provider” always refers to the owner of the collateral providing account, whereas “credit consumer” refers to the owner of the DCA where the liquidity is received.

¹² The Pledge-sub procedure (the selected collateral is restricted in the securities account where it is held – on a restricted position – without transfer to any other securities account) is currently not supported by CBF

5.2 Account setup

For auto- or client-collateralisation, links have to be set up in T2S between the collateral providing SAC and the corresponding DCA. The link defines which collateral providing account can be used in case of missing liquidity or insufficient credit limit headroom on the DCA. CBF will set up these links on client request. All positions in a collateral providing account are available for T2S auto-collateralisation as long as the security is eligible for auto-/client-collateralisation (see the following section).

CBF will by default configure the account for the currency option EXXX (that is, auto- or client-collateralisation applies to all DvP settlement instructions). With this option, a collateral providing account can also be used as a collateral receiving account in case a CBF client wants to provide client-collateralisation. Clients requiring the account to be configured for the option EEUR (that is, auto-collateralisation applies only to DvP settlement instructions in EUR) are requested to contact their Relationship Officer. Please note that the option EEUR is not compatible with client-collateralisation and will only become relevant for auto-collateralisation once additional currencies are accepted by T2S (currently, it is EUR only). CBF will enable the respective new currency options once this is the case. CBF will set up the related links in T2S for T2S auto- or client-collateralisation based on the currency option chosen by the client.

Collateral which is used for a T2S auto- or client-collateralisation transaction is automatically moved by T2S to the respective (intraday) collateral receiving accounts. These are different depending on whether the REPO or Pledge procedures are used:

- Repo procedure:

The (intraday) collateral receiving account belongs to the respective credit provider that is, the NCB for T2S Central Bank collateralisation. The credit provider is responsible for opening the account.

- Pledge procedure:

The (intraday) collateral receiving account belongs to the respective collateral provider. If a client applies to participate in auto-collateralisation as collateral provider via the Pledge procedure, the client needs to request the opening of a Pledge account.

It is possible to link more than one collateral providing account to a given DCA for the purpose of auto- or client-collateralisation. In this case, T2S takes collateral from any of the linked SACs. In addition, one SAC can be used as a collateral providing account for more than one DCA. In this case, T2S might support collateral demands for various DCAs from the given collateral providing account. Both cases can be supported, provided that the client informs CBF of all auto- or client-collateralisation relations between SACs and DCAs in question. In any case, auto- or client-collateralisation is always driven by lack of cash on a DCA.

A collateral providing account can be a new or existing¹³ CBF sub-account. If an existing CBF sub-account is redefined as a collateral providing account, the securities on this account must be owned by the future collateral provider.

Please note that no RS securities can be held in or transferred to a collateral providing account.

5.3 Eligible securities

The credit provider, that is the NCB for auto- collateralisation and the payment bank for client-collateralisation, decides which securities are accepted for the respective collateralisation process. Securities eligible as collateral are provided in the list of eligible marketable assets on the ECB website. However, the list of eligible assets per NCB for auto-collateralisation might deviate as each NCB can individually define the assets they accept as collateral. The credit provider also has to deliver the necessary information for the valuation of its eligible securities in T2S.

¹³ Clients who want to use an existing sub-account are requested to contact their Relationship Officer first.

5.4 Collateral provision on the providing account

Only positions held on a collateral providing account are used as collateral for auto- or client-collateralisation. The account of the receiving party needs to be specified as a collateral providing account. Potential collateral positions can be transferred to the collateral accounts via MT54X in ICP mode or sese.023 in DCP mode, either by the client themselves or by a third party, either via FoP or DvP. No specific indication referring to auto-or client-collateralisation needs to be included in such an instruction. Any eligible securities credited on a collateral providing account automatically receive the respective position type ("EEUR" or "EXXX") as defined in the T2S reference data. This position type does not block the securities from being used for other securities settlement transactions.

5.5 Auto-collateralisation and client-collateralisation process

Auto- and client-collateralisation transactions are generated automatically by T2S on behalf of the parties involved to increase insufficient liquidity or credit limit headroom on the linked DCAs. This allows cash settlement of securities transactions on any SAC that is linked to this DCA – not only the collateral providing accounts. T2S allows combining SACs in several CSDs and DCAs in several NCBs in the setup for auto- and client-collateralisation. Where there is a lack of cash on a DCA, all linked collateral providing accounts will be considered for the collateral selection. For the selection criteria, please refer to the T2S UDFS. In addition, minor amounts can initiate an auto- or client-collateralisation process as no cash threshold for auto- or client-collateralisation is foreseen by T2S.

The collateral is then moved to the respective (intraday) collateral receiving account of either the credit provider (Repo procedure) or the collateral provider with a pledge to the credit provider (Pledge procedure).

The opening instructions are generated as "Already matched" by T2S and will settle immediately.

Generally, intraday credit provided in T2S through auto-or client-collateralisation must be reimbursed, that is returned, before the end of the same business day. The reimbursement instructions are generated by T2S together with the opening instructions for the auto- or client-collateralisation transaction. The reimbursement instructions are generated also as "Already matched" but with a Party Hold and must be released. For auto-collateralisation, there is an automated process that releases pending reimbursement instructions after the end of DvP settlement. The reimbursement instructions can be released also upfront by the collateral provider¹⁴.

T2S generates an additional relocation instruction, if a reimbursement instruction remains pending due to lack of cash during the reimbursement process for auto-collateralisation. The relocation instruction transfers the credit to an overnight account of the NCB, that is, transferring the intraday credit to an overnight credit with possibly additional costs. It is linked to the reimbursement instruction and enables settlement of both together.

¹⁴ There is currently no separate release privilege for T2S auto-collateralisation reimbursement instructions, that is, the unlimited privilege to release any pending instruction is required to manually reimburse an auto- or client-collateralisation credit.

The specifics of auto-collateralisation (Central Bank) instructions are listed below:

Related T2S Process	Auto-collateralisation (Central Bank) with Repo procedure
Opening collateral instruction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Credit DCA: DCA of the credit consumer ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = No ○ Instruction will settle immediately • RvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: (intraday) collateral receiving account of the NCB ○ Debit DCA: DCA of the NCB ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No ○ Instruction will settle immediately
Reimbursement instruction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: (intraday) collateral receiving account of the NCB ○ Credit DCA: DCA of the NCB ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No • RvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Debit DCA: DCA of the credit consumer ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = Yes; the instruction needs to be released by the collateral provider
Collateral relocation	<p>If the reimbursement instruction cannot settle due to lack of cash by the EoD, an additional instruction for the collateral relocation is generated to transfer the credit to an overnight account of the NCB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Credit DCA: DCA of the credit consumer ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = No • RvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: overnight collateral account of the NCB ○ Debit DCA: DCA of the NCB ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No <p>The relocation instruction is internally linked with the reimbursement instruction in T2S (not visible to clients) for settlement on an all-or-none basis.</p>

T2S generates DvP/RvP instructions for the REPO procedure and FoP and PfoD instructions for the PLEDGE procedure. These FoP and PfoD instructions for the PLEDGE procedure are linked and can only settle together:

Related T2S Process	Auto-collateralisation (Central Bank) with Repo procedure
Opening collateral instruction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DfoP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = No • RfoP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: pledge account of the collateral provider ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No • PfoD CRDT instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Credit DCA: DCA of the credit consumer ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = No • PfoD DBIT instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: pledge account of the collateral provider ○ Debit DCA: DCA of the NCB ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No
Reimbursement instruction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DfoP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: pledge account of the collateral provider ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No • RfoP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = No • PfoD CRDT instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: pledge account of the collateral provider ○ Credit DCA: DCA of the NCB ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No • PfoD DBIT instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider ○ Debit DCA: DCA of the credit consumer ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = Yes; the instruction needs to be released by the collateral provider <p>The DfoP/RfoP and PfoD instructions are internally linked with each other in T2S (not visible to clients) for settlement on an all-or-none basis.</p>
Collateral relocation	<p>If the reimbursement instruction cannot settle due to lack of cash by the EoD, an additional instruction is generated to transfer the credit to an overnight account of the NCB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Debit SAC: collateral providing account of the collateral provider

Related T2S Process	Auto-collateralisation (Central Bank) with Repo procedure
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit DCA: DCA of the credit consumer ○ Transaction Code = COLO ○ Party Hold indicator = No • RvP instruction: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Credit SAC: overnight collateral account of the NCB ○ Debit DCA: DCA of the NCB ○ Transaction Code = COLI ○ Party Hold indicator = No <p>The relocation instruction is internally linked with the reimbursement instruction in T2S (not visible to clients) for settlement on an all-or-none basis.</p>

Additional information about auto- and client-collateralisation is available in the T2S UDFS or from the "Knowledge base repository", as published on the ECB website or in the information material from the Deutsche Bundesbank as published on its website.

6 Cash

The cash side of securities settlement transactions is cleared on dedicated cash accounts (DCAs) opened via NCBs in T2S.

Cash settlement of foreign currency transactions remains with Clearstream's Creation platform in commercial bank money (CoBM).

The following figure gives an overview of the cash processing and its related services in CBF:

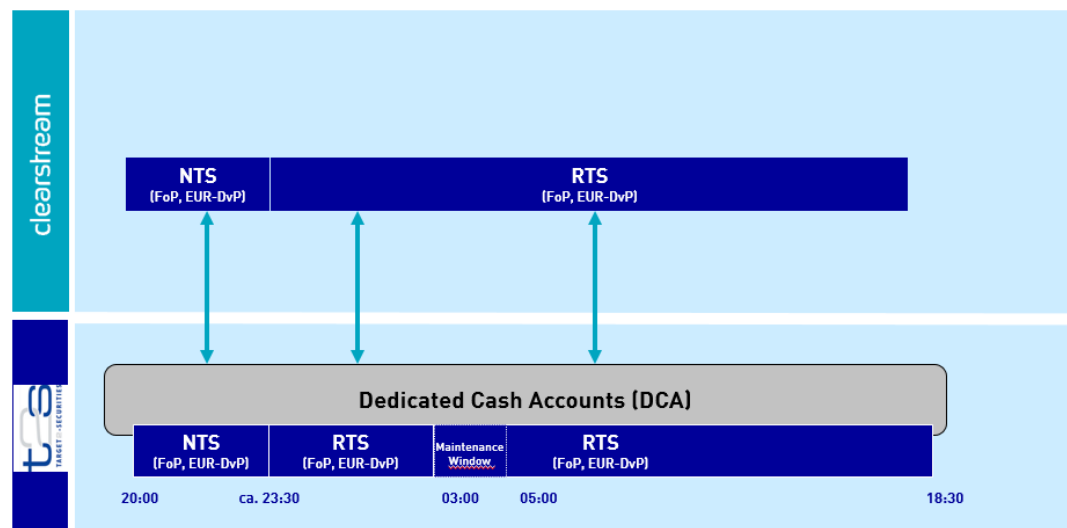


Figure 1 Overview of the cash settlement timeline

6.1 Cash management for T2S

CBF-processes payments in connection with securities settlement, interest and custody payments and Xemac® compensations for securities where CBF acts as Issuer CSD via the T2S DCAs (via PfoD).

At the Start of Day, the DCAs in T2S are empty; for successful settlement, it is necessary to provide sufficient liquidity in the respective DCAs after Start of Day Processing and NTS settlement (20:00).

Custody payments are instructed via payment free of delivery (PfoD) well before the start of the NTS first cycle sequence 4 so that this additional liquidity can be used for settlement in NTS.

Clients can choose to provide liquidity to or withdraw it from the DCAs intraday (O in Figure 1) through the payment banks.

6.2 Information cash monitoring RTS

6.2.1 Commercial bank money

To enable monitoring of FC transactions, CBF is offering an online service to support commercial bank money (CBM) during its opening hours. The counter-values (non-EUR only) of all RTS transactions where securities have been reserved and are waiting for further processing are displayed.

The content shown herein is updated continuously and any change of any of the FC transaction is reflected immediately. Information can be retrieved for the current date and also for the last ten business days.

Selection criteria

For information and monitoring purposes of OTC RTS FC transactions, an online service is available which is entered via "Information for xxx". Here the information service XXX CBM for RTS transactions against FC can be started.

If a date prior to the current date is entered, the historic data corresponding to the transactions are displayed (ten business days backwards).

Via the field currency the (foreign) currency of the transactions to be displayed is selected. Via the checkboxes processing status cash and origin, the results can be further specified.

In addition, the instruction number (of delivery or match instruction) can be entered.

The following status expressions are possible:

100 – CBM cash instruction generated and sent to CBL
590 – CBM cash instruction rejected by CBF (manually)
200 - securities and cash settled (automatically)
290 - securities and CBM cash settled (manually)
600 – Revocation of CBM cash instruction sent to CBL
800 – Revocation of CBM instruction successful (automatically)
890 – Revocation of CBM instruction successful (manually)
900 – Revocation not successful, securities and CBM already booked (automatically)
990 – Revocation not successful, securities and CBM already booked (manually)

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: commercial bank money". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". It is divided into two main sections: "selection" and "additional selection".

selection: This section contains three radio buttons for selection:

- information for buyer
- information for seller
- information for buyer and seller

additional selection: This section contains several input fields and dropdown menus:

- bank: [text input field]
- value date: [text input field containing "09-11-2018"]
- currency: [dropdown menu]
- processing status cash: [dropdown menu]
- origin: [dropdown menu]
- instruction no.: [text input field]

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays the following information: Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVGK 09-11-18 01:29:30 pm

Table view/information for buyer

If the "information for buyer" option is chosen, all instructions (and cancellations) against foreign currencies are shown for which the counter-value will be debited or has already been debited.

CASCADE - PC commercial bank money information: buyer

value date: page:

number of items:

status	origin	credit account	debit account	cash equivalent	currency	instruction no. MI/TR	instruction no. MA	debit	credit
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002716	8002598		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002716	8002598		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002714	8002595		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002714	8002595		
290 - se	CASCADE			350,000,000.00	USD	8002720	8232991		
290 - se	CASCADE			150,000,000.00	CHF	8002717	8052661		
290 - se	CASCADE			350,000,000.00	USD	8002720	8232991		
290 - se	CASCADE			150,000,000.00	CHF	8002717	8052661		
290 - se	CASCADE			300,000,000.00	USD	8002719	8232990		

total amount:

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KWGC IK 09-11-18 01:34:24 pm

Table view/information for seller

If the "information for seller" option is chosen, all instructions (and cancellations) against foreign currency are shown for which the counter-value will be credited or has already been credited.

value date: page:
 number of items:

status	origin	credit account	debit account	cash equivalent	currency	instruction no. MI/TR	instruction no. MA	debit	credit
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002716	8002598		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002716	8002598		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002714	8002595		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002714	8002595		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002715	8002597		
290 - se	CASCADE			200,000,000.00	GBP	8002715	8002597		

total amount:

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.5 Beta (Build 006) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KVGC IV 09-11-18 01:37:22 pm

Detail view/Information

The detailed view is shown after selecting a specific transaction from the table view.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE-PC commercial bank money information' window. It features several input fields and sections:

- credit bank:** Two empty text boxes.
- debit bank:** Two empty text boxes.
- cash:** A text box containing '200,000,000.00' and a dropdown menu set to 'GBP - Pound Sterling'.
- nominal:** A text box containing '200,000,000.000' and a dropdown menu.
- securities:** A dropdown menu set to 'ISIN' and a text box containing 'DE000A1PHUN0'. Below it is a text box containing 'EUREX REPO GC US'.
- value date:** A text box containing '31-10-2018'.
- CBM account:** A section with 'debit:' and 'credit:' labels, each followed by an empty text box.
- CASCADE:** A section with 'instruction no. MI:' (8002716), 'instruction no. MA:' (8002598), and 'settlement date:' (31-10-2018).
- ref. number MI:** A text box containing '1808X0112028'.
- ref. number MA:** A text box containing '1808X0112028'.
- Log Table:** A table with columns 'status', 'time', 'date', and 'user ID'. It contains two entries:

status	time	date	user ID
290 - securities and CBM cash settled (manually)	16:21	31-10-2018	7907620002
100 - CBM cash instruction generated and sent to CBL	16:19	31-10-2018	
- cancel:** A button at the bottom center.

At the bottom of the window, the status bar displays: 'Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 64-bit 7907123409 A KWGC IV 09-11-18 01:39:13 pm'.

Table view/Information buyer and seller

By clicking on the "OK" button "information buyer and seller", all CBM instructions and cancellation requests are displayed with the predefined user as creditor or debtor.

7 Book-entry information

Apart from general information, the user can access data on booked movements and current positions.

7.1 Movements display

The movements display shows positions for which the transfer of co-ownership has already occurred.

There are four menu options available:

- Booked movements;
- Movements statistics;
- Booked movements custody and CBF cash settlement;
- Internal cash movements.

7.1.1 Booked movements

The display of booked movements can be account-related or be found by securities code. In addition to the booked movements of the current accounting date, the user can call up movements up to 40 business days retrospectively.

In the field “transaction type”, clients can set one of the new filter criteria (“OTC only” for OTC trades, or “SE only” Stock exchange trades or “DI Deposit/Withdrawal only” for dematerialized securities transactions). The field is optional and is left blank per default.

The menu to select booked movements has various data-entry fields to restrict the output. Mandatory fields are:

- Accounting date;

- Bank/account;
- Transactions type (delivery/receipt).

All other fields are optional.

The more fields are filled, the higher the hit rate. The best way to retrieve the movement needed is to enter an instruction or transaction number for the customer reference.

Additional selection possibilities:

SORT CRITERIA

A selection with sort criteria of the security movements is possible only in combination with the input of a single booking day. Without selection of this field, the list view takes place with the sorting by ISIN.

By selection of "Processing time", the disposition time of the security movement is adapted to the list view.

With no selection or with selection of "Cash equivalent" or "Nominal", the list view is displayed without changes to the current screen.

The following options are made available:

- Cash equivalent = sorting by counter value or cash equivalent (ascending)
- Nominal = sorting by nominal amount (ascending)
- Processing time = sorting by disposition or processing time (ascending)

There are 16 different windows that can be chosen through the short display described below.

Following, there is a selection of these windows. Detailed information on the various columns can be retrieved via the online help system.

Click on "OK" to generate the list display.

To call up the full display of an instruction, follow these steps:

1. Mark the instruction with the mouse.
2. Click on the edit button or double-click on the marked instruction.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

Click on "OK" to return to the list display.

CASCADE - PC domestic movements: overview

accounting date: 27-10-2014 up to: page: 1

transactions type: debit entry items: 54

bank: 7931 HANDELSBANK AG

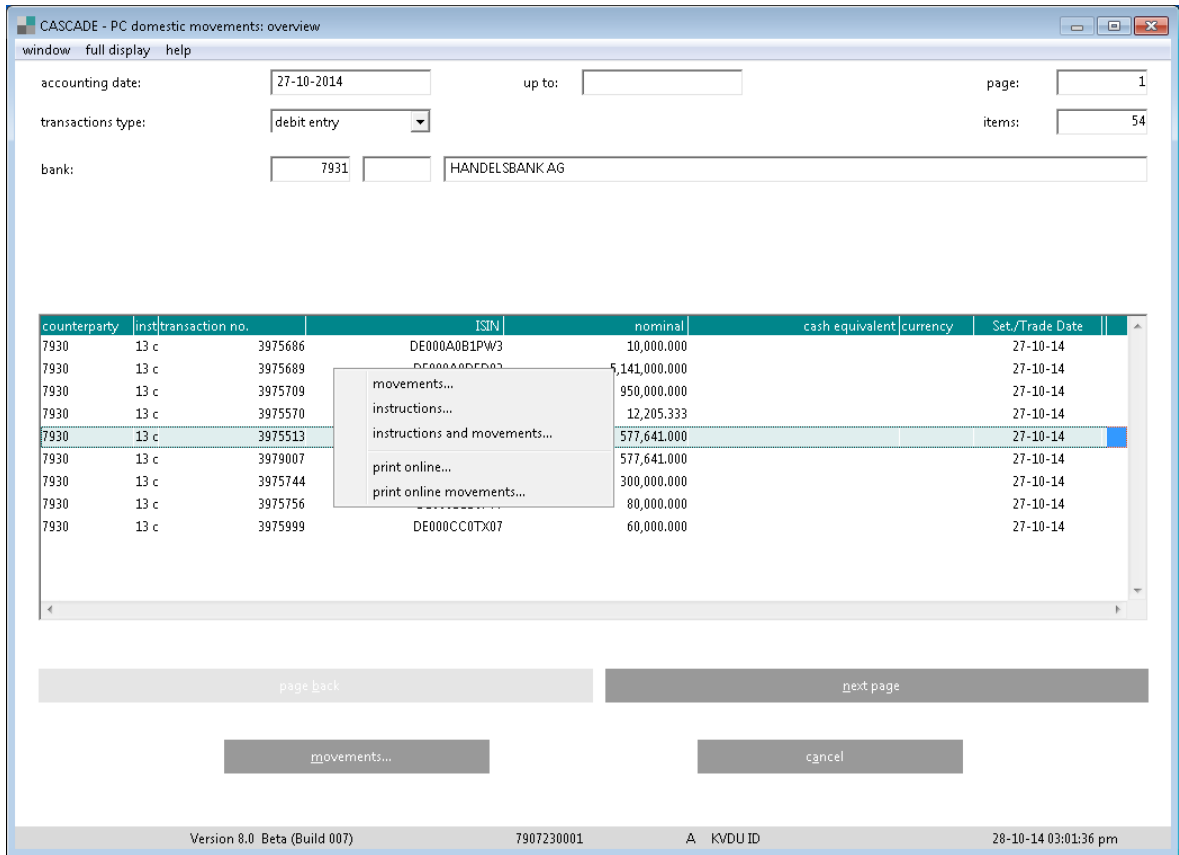
counterparty	inst	transaction no.	ISIN	nominal	cash equivalent	currency	Set./Trade Date
7930	13 c	3975686	DE000A0B1PW3	10,000.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975689	DE000A0DED93	5,141,000.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975709	DE000A0FAH34	950,000.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975570	DE000A1PG979	12,205.333			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975513	DE000A12UNH6	577,641.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3979007	DE000A12UNH6	577,641.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975744	DE000BC0BCC4	300,000.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975756	DE000BL6FT7	80,000.000			27-10-14
7930	13 c	3975999	DE000CC0TX07	60,000.000			27-10-14

page back next page

movements... cancel

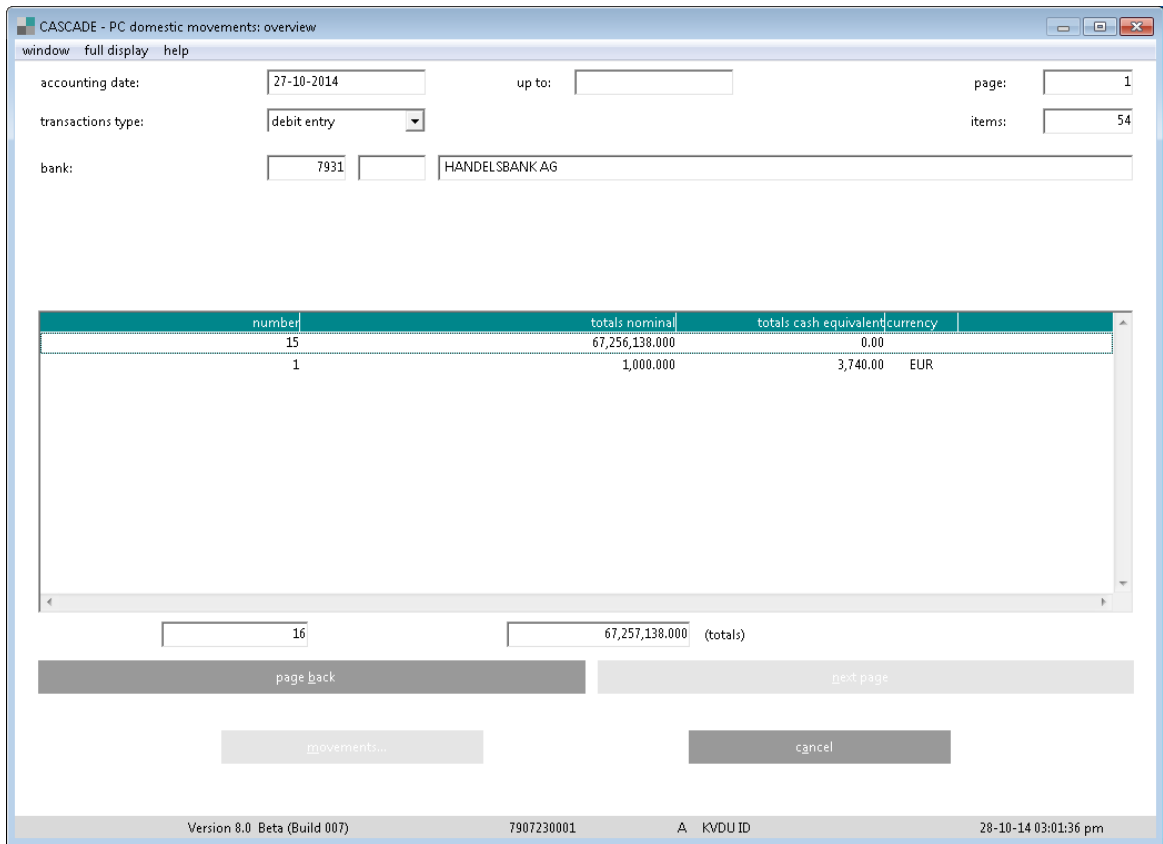
Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907230001 A KVDU ID 28-10-14 03:01:36 pm

Via full display, the user can select one of three display types. As default screen, "booked movements" is shown, which pops up by double-clicking on the desired instruction or by marking an instruction and clicking on the "movements" button. Then an overlay window is opened showing the data concerning the respective movement. If a new instruction is chosen from the short display, the information shown in the window changes accordingly.

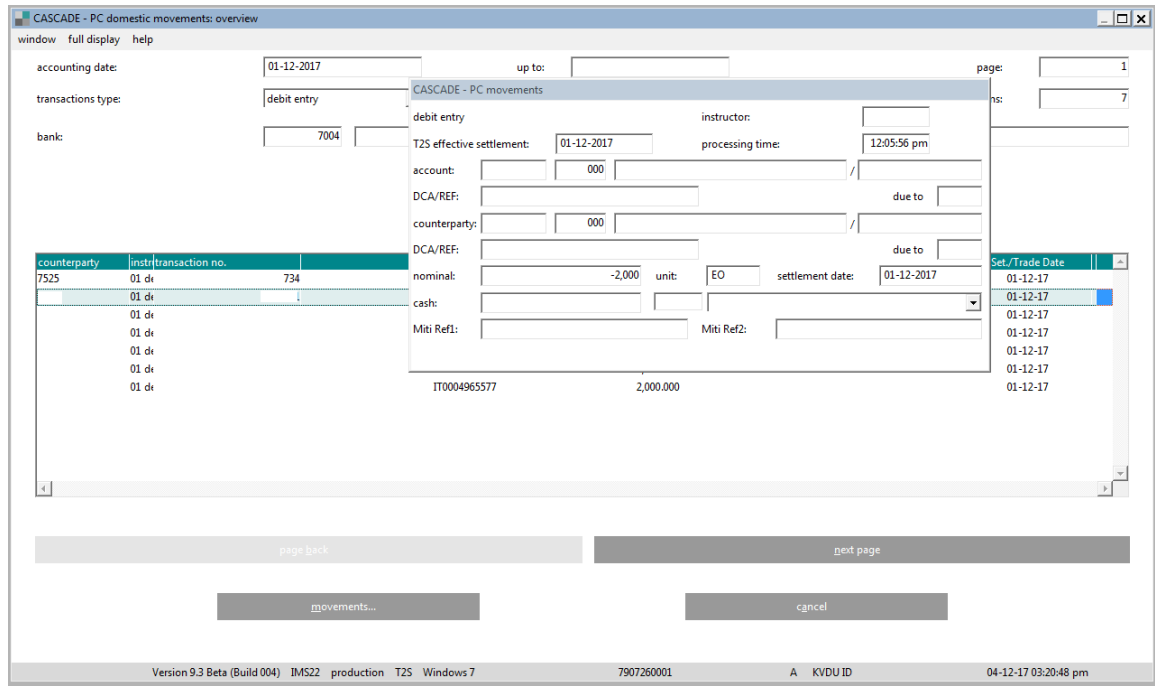


CASCADE-PC User Manual

The last pages show the totals nominal and totals cash equivalents for all available currencies.



Via full display, the user can select one of three display types. As default screen, "booked movements" is shown, which pops up by double-clicking on the desired instruction or by marking an instruction and clicking on the "movements" button. Then an overlay window is opened showing the data concerning the respective movement. If a new instruction is chosen from the short display, the information shown in the window changes accordingly.



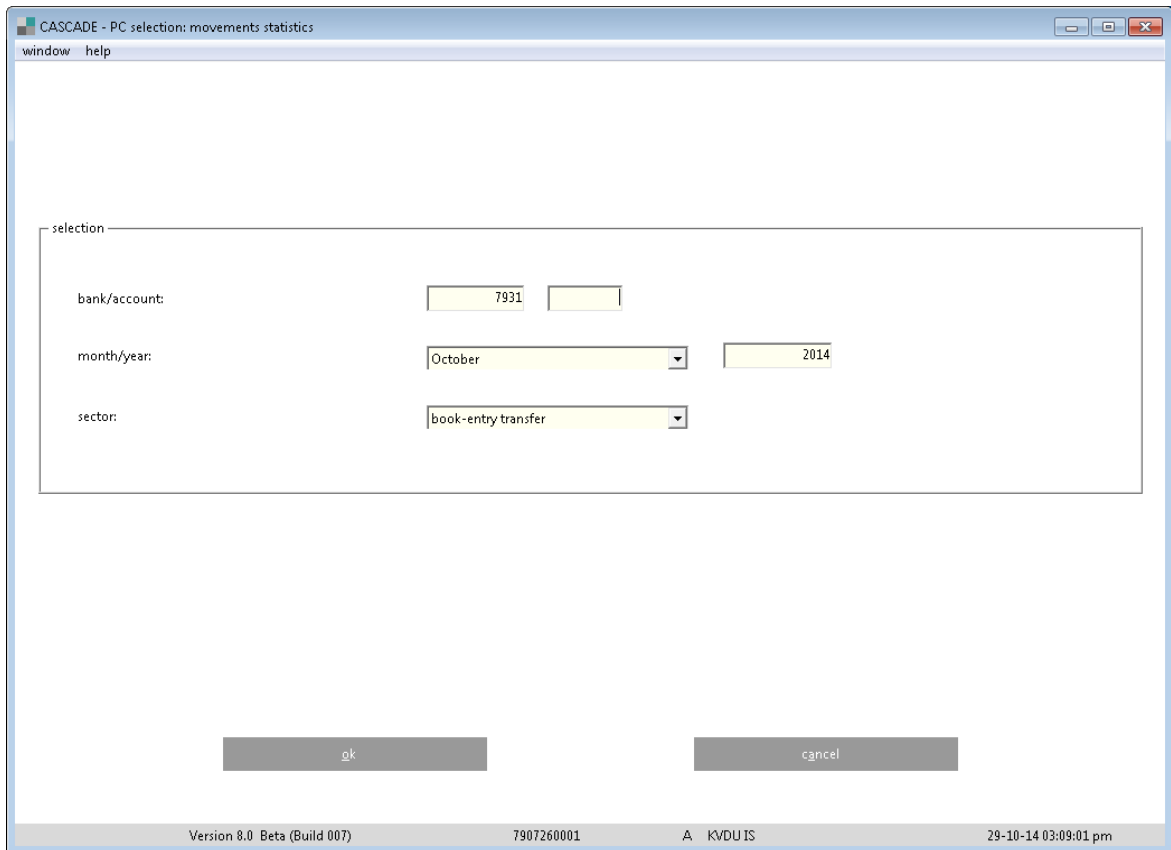
Note: CBF reports the accounting date, that was provided by T2S. The accounting date in T2S is generated out of the T2S business day and the time. From the difference between T2S business day and calendar day, for example during the night-time settlement, movements after the change of business day in T2S and before midnight differ from the calendar day and time. The displayed business day and time are in line with the calendar day and time for movements with identical calendar day and time after midnight.

Alternatively, the user can display instructions and/or movements statistics. The opening window has a full display showing the instructions and the relevant windows with data on movements. The navigation icon on the bottom left-hand corner can be used to move from one window to another.

The corporate action event reference is included for the related order type 13.

7.1.2 Movements statistics

The user can call up monthly statistics on the movements by using the menu option “movements/positions/ movements/movements statistics”. As default, the current month is shown.



The user only selects between book-entry transfer and physical transfer. Bank account, current month and year are preset.

Depending on the selected sector (book entry or physical transfer), only the instructions executed via book-entry transfer respectively the physical deliveries are shown.

Sector	Displayed instruction type
Book-entry transfer	01, 03, 04, 05, 07, 09, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20, 99
Physical transfer	06, 08, 16

The instruction types 02 and 21 are not shown since they are always linked to the types 01 and 20 respectively do not directly refer to movements.

“Book-entry transfer” takes the user to this display:

instruction type	number debit	number credit
01 sec. transfer	61	102
04 provide pledge	1	1
05 release pledge	1	1
09 re-conversion	2	
10 stock exchange trades	10	3
13 custody non-income	5,286	65
14 bond stripping: detachment	1	17
15 bond stripping: reattachment	17	1
17 split of warrants	1	2
99 deletion manual accounting entry	7	6

cancel

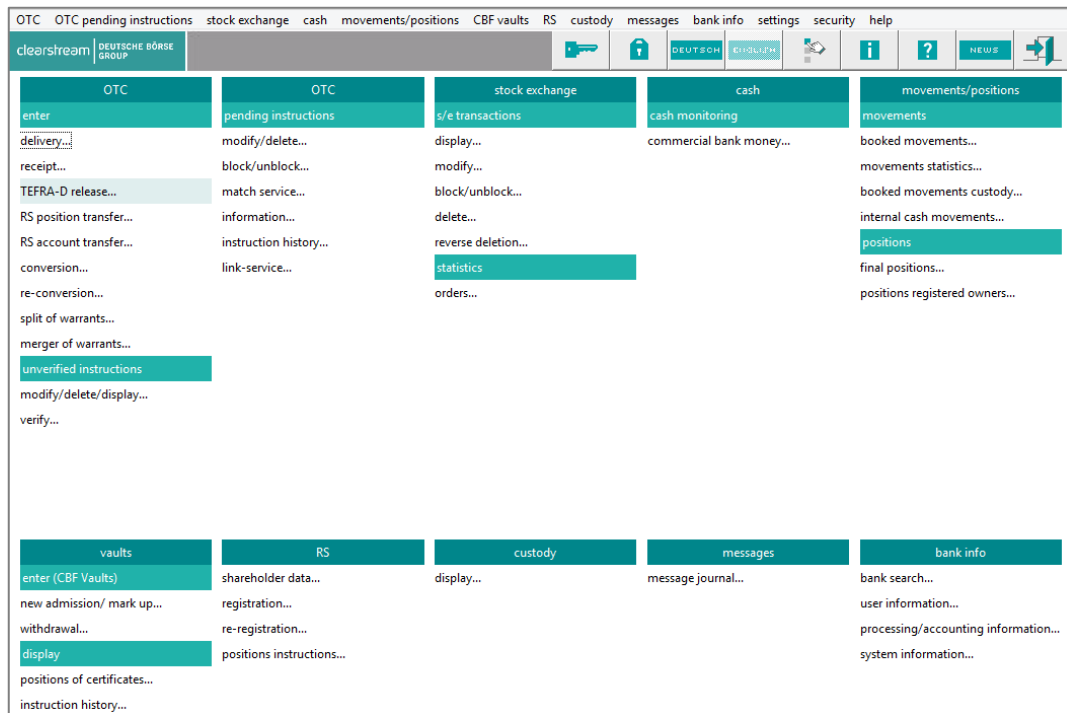
Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVDU IS 29-10-14 03:10:44 pm

If the user selects “physical transfer”, the same window is shown retrieving the data on physical instructions.

“Cancel” takes the user back to the menu.

7.1.3 Booked movements custody and CBF cash clearing

All transactions related to custody payments (settled PfoD transactions) and CBF cash clearing can be shown with the function “booked movements custody and cash clearing”.



Mandatory fields to select the PfoD transactions are:

- Accounting date;
- Transaction type (debit entry or credit entry);
- Bank/account (Clearstream account).

All other fields are optional.

CASCADE - PC selection: custody movements and cash clearing

selection

accounting date: up to:

transactions type:

securities:

bank/account:

counterparty:

event type:

BID:

cash posting text:

gk cancel

CASCADE - PC selection: custody movements and cash clearing

selection

accounting date: up to:

transactions type:

securities:

bank/account:

counterparty:

event type:

BID:

cash posting text:

gk cancel

CASCADE - PC custody and cash clearing movements: overview

accounting date: 04-11-2020 up to: page: 1

transactions type: debit entry items: 31

bank: 8996 CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG

counterparty	transaction no.	SIN	event type	cycle-number	cash posting text	cash equivalent	currency	accounting date
	9503492	DE000AA6C5P3	122 income: payment	2567	402	10,000.00	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503491	DE000AA6C5P3	122 income: payment	2567	402	20,000.00	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503548	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2565	401	10,520.00	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503486	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2560	462	26.37	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503579	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2565	462	0.26	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503572	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2565	459	7.37	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503479	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2560	456	736.25	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503575	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2565	398	2.50	EUR	04-11-2020
	9503482	DE000ADCB011	126 income: payment	2560	398	250.00	EUR	04-11-2020

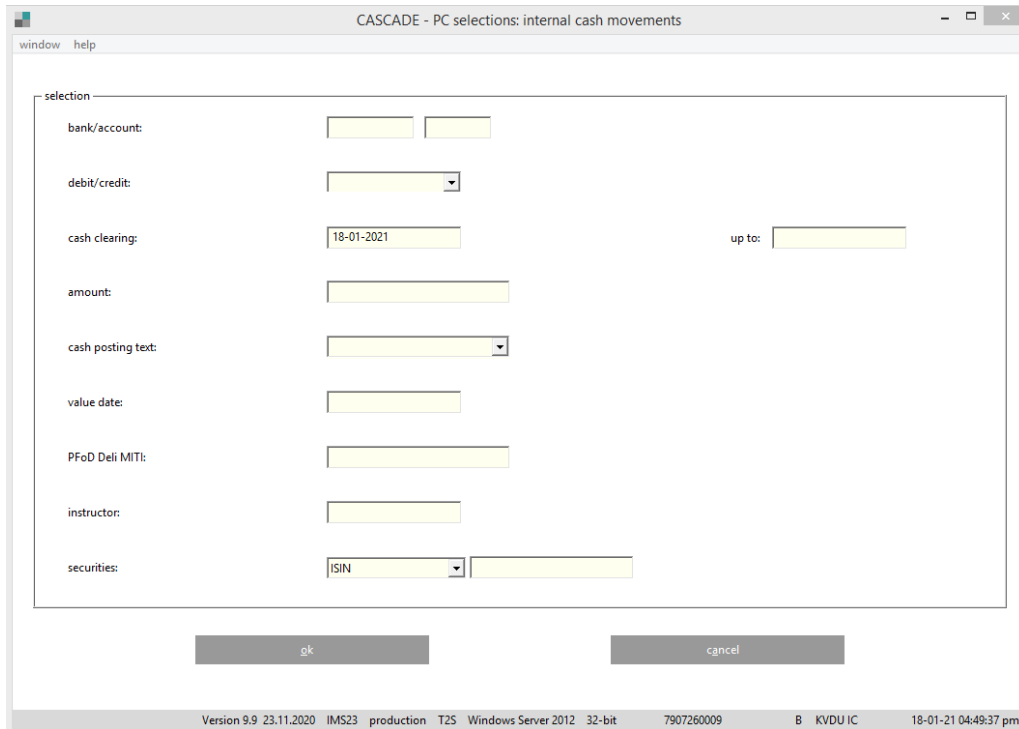
total cash equivalent: 1,518,668,490.25 EUR - Euro

page back next page

movements... cancel

7.1.4 Internal cash movements

The CBF cash settlement can lead to an internal cash movement. The following display shows internal cash movements.



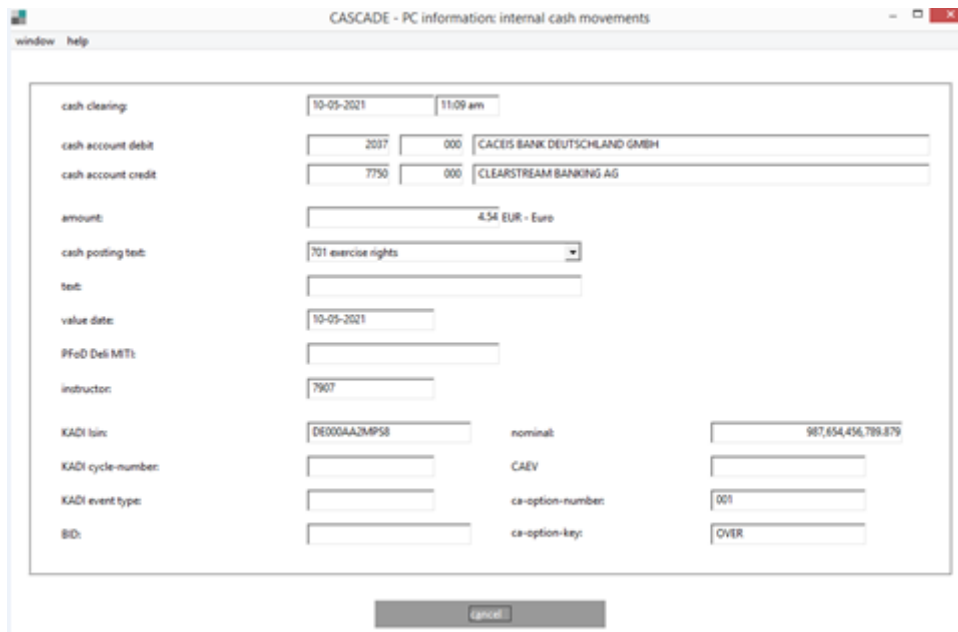
The menu to select internal cash movements has various data-entry fields to restrict the output. The cash clearing (date) field is mandatory.

All other fields are optional.

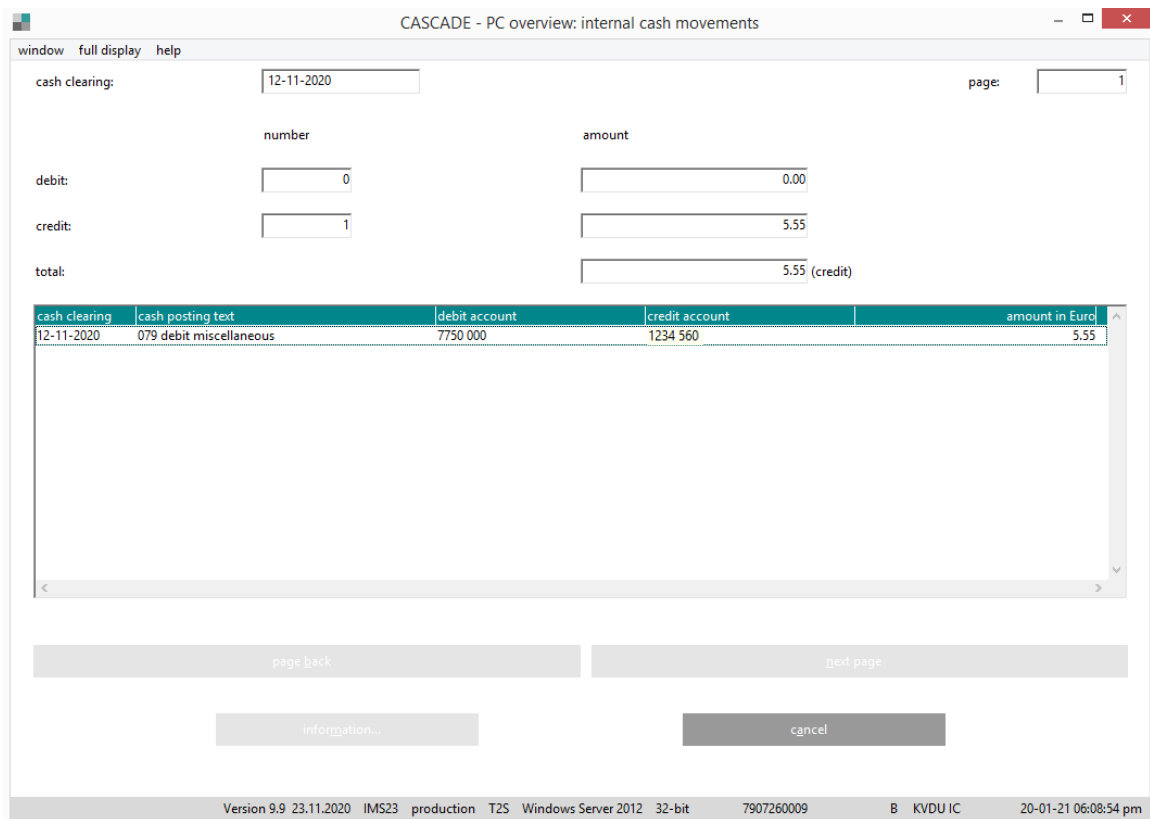
Click on "OK" to generate the list display.

To call up the full display of an internal cash movement, follow these steps:

1. Mark the internal cash movement with the mouse.
2. Click on the edit button or double-click on the marked item.



CASCADE-PC User Manual



Above the list, the total amounts for debit and credit of all listed internal cash movements are shown.

7.2 Positions display

The positions display enables the user to look at current positions.

Positions

At positions display, the user can have the securities on his account displayed online.

By accessing “positions”, the user goes to the “positions” menu.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: final positions". It features a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main content area is labeled "selection" and contains the following fields:

- account/BIC: [text box]
- SAC: [text box]
- securities: [dropdown menu showing "ISIN"] and two adjacent text boxes
- value date: [text box showing "29-10-2014"] and a checkbox labeled "display market value"

At the bottom of the dialog are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The footer of the window displays: "Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007)", "7907260001", "A KVBA BB", and "29-10-14 03:12:46 pm".

The account is pre-set with the account number of the head office but can be overwritten. The BIC can be used for selection instead of the account.

The user can enter a sub-account. If the account field is not filled in, the positions of all accounts will be displayed.

The “value” field is pre-set with the current date, but can be overwritten with an historical date.

The securities code has to be entered in the first field in this screen. In that field, the user can also key in at least the first two digits of the securities code. The screen output will be all securities, beginning with this number combination.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

“OK” displays the legally binding positions.

CASCADE - PC final position: overview

account/BIC: 7931 / HANDELSBANK AG / BANKDEFFXXX value date: 29-10-2014

SAC:

securities: ISIN DE0008404005

ALLIANZ SE VNA O.N. page: 1

account	securities code	unit	final positions	date of last movements
7931 000	DE0008404005	ST	16,257,117.000	28-10-14
7931 001	DE0008404005	ST	100.000	15-10-14
7931 608	DE0008404005	ST	0.000	27-08-14
7931 650	DE0008404005	ST	22,473.000	14-05-14
7931 995	DE0008404005	ST	0.000	22-10-14

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVBA BB 30-10-14 10:38:40 am

By marking a position and clicking on display or by double-clicking, the user calls up the full display of the position.

CP account	instruction type	instruction no. debit and credit	nominal	cash equivalent	settlement date
------------	------------------	------------------------------------	---------	-----------------	-----------------

If the chosen security is of RS type, it is possible in addition to receive more special RS information about the positions.

Within the transaction “movements/positions” clients have the possibility to see a complete overview of customer references with all related shareholders and their security positions. Therefore, the users can see all positions of one shareholder by a single query summarised on one screen.

Client benefits:

- Tabular view of a customer reference with its respective shareholders and their positions;
- Link to shareholder data and overview of respective positions;
- Link to ISIN and according stock balance display.

With the introduction of the securities spanning information, a query is possible without entering the ISIN. The user then receives an overview of all customer references. Optionally, a customer reference can be entered. The user then selects the related customer reference he is searching for by clicking on the “OK” button.

The query via the shareholder number is only possible with the WKN included.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: final positions: registered shares". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area is titled "selection" and contains the following fields and controls:

- account/BIC:** A text field with a yellow background, followed by a separator "/" and another text field.
- SAC:** A text field with a yellow background.
- securities:** A dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected and a yellow background, followed by a text field with a yellow background. Below this is another dropdown menu with "-- other --" selected and a yellow background, followed by a text field with a yellow background.
- customer reference:** A dropdown menu with a yellow background, followed by a text field with a yellow background, a separator "-", another dropdown menu with a yellow background, and a final text field with a yellow background.
- shareholder no.:** A text field with a yellow background.
- summation

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007)", "7907260001", "A KVBA BW", and "30-10-14 12:45:09 pm".

The possibility to display totals by setting a check mark in the field “addition” is not given in the screen of the functionality “Security Spanning Information” because different security codes (WKN/ISIN) cannot be added together. If the user, however, enters a check mark in the relevant field without entering the WKN, an error message will appear “Securities spanning totals formation not possible”. Therefore, the totals of every WKN of a specified shareholder will be displayed under “allocated positions”.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC final position: registered shares' window. It contains several input fields for search criteria: account/BIC (7931, HANDELSBANK AG / BANKDEFFXXX), SAC, ISIN, and customer reference. Below these fields is a table with the following data:

registration type	customer ref. bank	- customer ref. customer	registration type	allocated positions
406017017		- 203062500		
406017017		- 230205148		
406017017		- 230205270		
406017017		- 230205445		
406017017		- 230205619		
406017017		- 230205627		
406017017		- 230205643		
406017017		- 230205676		

At the bottom of the window, there are buttons for 'page back', 'next page', 'display...', and 'cancel'. The status bar at the very bottom shows 'Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007)', '7907260001', 'A KVBA BW', and '30-10-14 12:46:35 pm'.

In the tabular view of the different shareholders, the user selects the one he is searching for and marks the according name. After clicking on the “display...” button, the user reaches the stock balance display, if the according share owner has only one WKN in its portfolio.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC final position: registered shares' window. It contains the following fields and data:

- account/BIC: 7931 / HANDELSBANK AG / BANKDEFFXXX
- SAC: [empty]
- ISIN: DE0008404005 (selected), ALLIANZ SE VNA O.N.
- shareholder no.: 11820471
- customer ref.: 406017017 - 230205148
- shareholder name (bank): KKKAAHBKDGA
- shareholder name (issuer): KARL
- Date of birth: 17-05-1995

position sub-type:	nominal	reserved
positions in registration:	0.000	0.000
positions in registration corp. action:	0.000	
registered positions:	2,700.000	0.000
total:	2,700.000	

Buttons: cancel

Footer: Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVBA BW 30-10-14 12:48:35 pm

If the selected share owner has several WKNs in its portfolio, this new screen gives an overview.

The user is able to move the pages by clicking on the buttons “next page” or “page back”. By clicking on “cancel” the user reaches the last level accessed.

As additional information in the upper part of the screen, the name of the corresponding bank is placed right beneath the account number. The name and surname of the shareholder will be displayed underneath the customer reference. Besides this information, the date of birth and (often with entities) the third name option and an additional identification will be displayed.

To search for a shareholder’s ISIN follow these steps:

1. Select the shareholder’s ISIN.
2. Mark the corresponding field.
3. Click the button “display”.
4. The stock balance of the selected WKN is displayed with the classification into different stock types.

8 Custody services¹⁵

CBF clients have the possibility to access information on each clearing instruction per ISIN, as well as per cash/nominal clearing date, in custody services (disposition, accounting) for CBF maintained balances from corporate actions.

The information on custody services is generated 14 business days before the ex-date or record-date (depending on an ex-day or record-day event), as well as before the start of the callable exchange period and is updated daily. Capital income is displayed up to 120 business days after the value date.

The display menu for corporate actions has both obligatory and voluntary actions and shows in detail, the individual ISIN, the actual balance and where applicable, the changes in the balance and the new ISIN.

Obligatory corporate actions include increases in capital, exchanges, redemptions and other actions, such as name changes. Voluntary offers include such actions as pay-off offers, exchange offers and warrants.

In all custody service (corporate events and actions) selections, it is possible to see the full information details in the anticipated event data, for example, see under dividends, rate of dividend, tax rate or increase in capital, new ISIN etc.

CASCADE - PC selection: custody services

window help

selection

- income / redemptions
- provisions
- compensations
- total income
- all compensations per transaction type
- amount to be paid
- tax credit
- non income corporate actions credit
- non income corporate actions debit
- non income corporate actions exchange
- non income corporate actions other
- all mandatory non income corporate actions
- voluntary offers

bank:

value/settlement: 07-12-2015

currency:

additional selection

event type:

sec. codes from:

ok cancel

Version 9.0 Beta Build (003) 7907260001 A KVG1 04-12-15 11:01:02 am

¹⁵ The following parts, including example screens, describe the handling within KADI processing. They do not apply for securities and events migrated to OneClearstream.

MENU

The following options are offered in the menu selection:

- Income payments and redemptions;
- Provisions;
- Compensation;
- Total income;
- All compensations per transaction type;
- Non income corporate actions credit;
- Non income corporate actions debit;
- Non income corporate actions exchange;
- Non income corporate actions;
- All mandatory non income corporate actions;
- Voluntary offers.

BANK

This field is pre-set with the bank number (the first four digits of the user-ID).

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

SETTLEMENT

This field is used to select the Direct Debit run, which is used for displaying securities income.

CURRENCY

This field has a drop-down list with a list of applicable currencies.

EVENT TYPE

This field has a drop-down list with the possibility to enter directly the code of an event type or to choose an event type by name.

SEC. CODES

This field has a drop-down list with the possibility to enter a SEC, ISIN or no code at all. If a code should be entered, then only entries which are greater than the code will be displayed. This applies to all menu selections except "total income" and "all mandatory non income corporate actions", where a SEC entry is not allowed.

UPON RECEIPT OF FUNDS

The information service KADI – Pre Advice and Results provides CBF clients the opportunity to retrieve pre-advice upon receipt of funds (URF) until CBF has received credit confirmation from its agent / Issuer CSD.

Selection "URF" for field ABRECHNUNG: Selection of URF (for income payments and non income corporate actions available). In consideration of the other selection criteria, for example value date (payment date) or currency, the result of selection only incorporates pre-advice for payments from URF.

OK (button)

Click on "OK" to display details of menu selection.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.1 Income payments, redemptions, provisions and compensations

8.1.1 Income payments and redemptions

Income payments and redemptions from interests and dividends

The individual amounts according to class are displayed.

The screenshot shows the CASCADE-PC custody services: income / redemption window. The window title is "CASCADE - PC custody services: income / redemption". The window contains the following fields and table:

bank: 7931 HANDELSBANK AG page: 1

value/settlement: 30-10-2014 DD1-direct debit

currency: EUR - Euro

security code	distribution	custody collection	total	kind of transaction
DE000AA15BG8	10,800.00	0.00	10,800.00	final
DE000AA2G028	285.00	0.00	285.00	final
DE000A0A3TE0	680.00	0.00	680.00	final
DE000A0B1KK9	3,380.00	0.00	3,380.00	final
DE000A1CRVQ8	31,250.00	0.00	31,250.00	final
DE000A1HHM94	1,680.00	0.00	1,680.00	final
DE000A1HRHM5	5,000.00	0.00	5,000.00	final
DE000A1KQ086	1,048.17	0.00	1,048.17	final
DE000A1RE5X0	100.00	0.00	100.00	final
DE000CS0AQ86	100.00	0.00	100.00	final
DE000CZ2ZEH9	11,292,050.00	-12,500,000.00	-1,207,950.00	final
DE000CZ4ZVP4	28,923.78	-28,923.78	0.00	final

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVG I KE 30-10-14 01:01:45 pm

BANK

This field displays the previously selected bank

VALUE

This field displays the previously selected business day.

SETTLEMENT

This field is used to select the Night-time settlement (NTS), which is used for displaying securities income.

CURRENCY

This field displays the applicable currency.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

DISBURSEMENT

This field shows disbursement according to class.

CUSTODY COLLECTION

The collection for each class is indicated.

TOTAL

The balance for each class is indicated.

KIND OF TRANSACTION

The following fields indicate the transaction types for the processing status of cash amounts:

- Pre advice: the amount requires information in advance
- Final: the amount reflects real Custody Services Income Data, that is due on the cash clearing date
- Upon receipt of funds: The information service KADI – Pre Advice and Results provides CBF clients the opportunity to retrieve pre-advice upon receipt of funds (URF) until payment date. URF is concerned with income events with CBF cash booking after the credit of money from the main paying agent or securities depository.

PAGE BACK/NEXT PAGE (button)

To move forward or backward, if the list of entries is longer than one page.

The length of entries shown in the table will depend on the parameters entered by the user. The parameter indicating the number of pages can be entered in the main menu "Settings / Options / Turn Page".

DISPLAY (button)

Click on "Display" to see details (Event Data) of the selected security.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.1.2 Provisions

By choosing “provisions” and further inputs (settlement/value date, currency) the following screen will be displayed to show provisions.

security code	distribution	custody collection	total	kind of transaction
DE0005011001	4,000.00	0.00	4,000.00	final

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

PURCHASE

Total of compensated income from purchases in the displayed currency per ISIN

SALE

Total of compensated income from sales in the displayed currency per ISIN

TOTAL

Balance of compensated income from purchases and sales in the displayed currency per ISIN

8.1.3 Compensations

Compensation from Interest and Dividends

By choosing “compensations” and further inputs (settlement/value date, currency) the following screen will be displayed to show compensations of interest.

This information is available as from ex-date up to 120 business days after ex-date and includes also reverse claim information for record-day events.

The kind of transaction is OTC, same for OTC transactions and for Stock exchange transactions.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC custody services: compensations' window. It features a menu bar with 'window', 'full display', and 'help'. Below the menu bar are input fields for 'bank' (5555, CUSTOMER), 'value/settlement' (22-03-2022, T2S - TARGET2-Securities), and 'currency' (EUR - Euro). A table displays the following data:

security code	credit in	debit in	total	kind of transaction
DE000A14KP45	0.00	-337.50	-337.50	OTC transaction (key date)

At the bottom of the window, there are 'page back' and 'next page' buttons, and 'display...' and 'cancel' buttons.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

PURCHASE

Total of compensated income from purchases in the displayed currency per ISIN

SALE

Total of compensated income from sales in the displayed currency per ISIN

TOTAL

Balance of compensated income from purchases and sales in the displayed currency per ISIN

8.1.4 Total income

The total income displays all earnings and commissions from interest, dividends and redemptions.

The menu option serves as a preliminary information source for future corporate actions (starting 14 business days before ex-date) and for settlements (starting on ex-date up to 120 business days later).

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC custody services: total". It contains a table with three columns: "interest", "dividends", and "redemptions". The rows are categorized into "Income payment", "commission", "compensations", and "tax". Each row has a description, a value in the "interest" column, a value in the "dividends" column, and a value in the "redemptions" column. A "total amount" field at the bottom right shows "68,540,487.90".

	interest	dividends	redemptions
Income payment			
distribution	-4,132,872.48	113,434.10	81,262,000.00
custody collection	-1,967,124.48	0.00	-15,000,000.00
commission			
distribution	0.00	0.00	0.00
custody collection	0.00	0.00	0.00
compensations			
buy	0.00	0.40	0.00
sell	0.00	-694.60	0.00
tax			
credit	0.00	0.00	0.00
debit	0.00	0.00	0.00
total	2,165,748.00	112,739.90	66,262,000.00

total amount: 68,540,487.90

BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

CURRENCY

This field displays the applicable currency.

SETTLEMENT

This field is used to select the Night-time settlement (NTS), which is used for displaying securities income.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

INCOME PAYMENT

The income payments for disbursement and custody collection are displayed.

DISBURSEMENT

This field shows disbursement according to class.

CUSTODY COLLECTION

The collection amounts in interest, dividends and redemptions are indicated.

COMMISSION

The commission amounts in interest, dividends and redemptions are indicated.

COMPENSATION (currently not available)

The compensation amounts in interest and dividends are indicated.

BUY

Displays the compensation amounts in interest or dividends for market- or reverse claims if the client is on the buyer side of the claim relevant trade.

SELL

Displays the compensation amounts in interest or dividends for market- or reverse claims if the client is on the seller side of the claim relevant trade.

TAX

Display of tax credit amounts (generated during the 20 business days market claim period) and display of debits/credits resulting from processed tax relief/tax refund instructions in the context of the Investment Tax Reform (as of 1 January 2018).

TOTAL

The individual totals from payouts and collections for interest, dividends and redemptions are indicated.

TOTAL AMOUNT

The sum of all totals from interest, dividends and redemptions form the total amount.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.1.5 All compensations by transaction type

By choosing the function “all compensations by transactions type” and further inputs (settlement/value date, currency) the following screen is displayed to show compensations by type of transaction. The following transaction types are shown:

- Stock exchange trades (will always be “0.00”, as it is listed under OTC trades)
- OTC trades on record date;
- OTC trades on record date which were settled through the depository;
- Eurex exercises;
- Securities CCP transactions;
- Xemac claims (collateral):
- C7 SCS trades.

This information is available as from ex-date up to 120 business days after ex-date.

	credit	debit
stock exchange	0.00	0.00
OTC	0.00	-2.40
CCP DM	0.00	0.00
CCP CM	0.00	0.00
collateral	0.00	0.00

TRANSACTION TYPE

Display of transaction types:

- Stock exchange;
- OTC of due day = OTC trades on CBF record date;
- OTC depository = OTC trades on record date which settled through the Clearstream depository;
- CCP Derivative Market;
- CCP Cash Market;

- Collateral = XEMAC claims:
- Debit;
- Total of compensated debits in the currency displayed for all securities per transaction type;
- Credit;
- Total of compensated credits in the currency displayed for all securities per transaction type.

8.1.6 Amount to be paid

By choosing the function “amount to be paid” and further inputs (settlement/value date, currency) the following screen is displayed.

bank: 7931 HANDELSBANK AG page: 1

value/settlement: 17-11-2015 DD1-direct debit

currency: EUR - Euro

security code	credit in	debit in	total	kind of transaction
DE000VFP3YMS	0.00	-500.00	-500.00	OTC transaction (key date)

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.0 Beta Build (003) 7907230001 A KVGI AB 08-12-15 03:03:02 pm

The kind of transaction is OTC, same for OTC transactions and for Stock exchange transactions.

BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

CURRENCY

This field displays the applicable currency.

SETTLEMENT

This field is used to select the Night-time settlement (NTS), which is used for displaying securities income.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

SECURITY CODE

The respective ISIN is displayed.

CREDIT IN

Countervalue from purchase in EUR.

DEBIT IN

Countervalue from sale in EUR.

TOTAL

Sum of credit in and debit in.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.1.7 Tax credit

By choosing the function "tax credit" and further inputs (settlement/value date, currency) the following screen is displayed, showing tax credits from OGAW-IV relevant corporate actions and debits/credits resulting from processed tax relief/tax refund instructions in the context of the Investment Tax Reform (as of 1 January 2018).

security code	credit	debit	total	kind of transaction
DE000A08Q07	112.57	0.00	112.57	tax credit
DE0005933956	814.84	0.00	814.84	tax credit
DE0005933998	1.86	0.00	1.86	tax credit

BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

CURRENCY

This field displays the applicable currency.

SETTLEMENT

This field is used to select the Night-time settlement (NTS), which is used for displaying securities income.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

SECURITY CODE

The respective ISIN is displayed.

CREDIT

Tax credit in EUR and credit from Tax relief/refund in EUR.

DEBIT

Debit from Tax relief/refund in EUR (= cancel of instructed nominal with original tax rate).

TOTAL

Calculated by CREDIT – DEBIT

KIND OF TRANSACTION

Tax credit, tax relief, tax refund.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.2 Non income corporate actions

Non Income Corporate Actions include mandatory actions and voluntary offers. Please refer to menu options at the beginning of chapter **Error! Reference source not found.**

The menu options take place per value date (beginning 14 business days before ex-date and also at the start of the exchange period) and serves as preliminary information for future corporate actions.

The obligatory corporate actions are divided into:

- Credit (for example purchase rights);
- Debit (write-offs);
- Exchange (for example exchange of stocks);
- Others (for example name change);
- All mandatory.

8.2.1 Non income corporate actions: credit, debit, exchange

The below menu options serve as preliminary information for future corporate actions (beginning 14 business days before ex-date and up to the CBF due date).

The menu option "credit" enables the user to access information on:

- Setup of purchase rights, partial rights and bonus issues;
- Detachment of subscription warrants.

The menu option "debit" enables the user to access information on:

- Write-off of valueless securities.

Write-offs from redemptions are not covered here. They are found under corporate events in menu option "income payment from redemptions".

The "exchange" menu option enables the user to access information on:

- Exchange of stock;

- Equalisation;
- Change of face value or the number of shares;
- Re-denomination.

CASCADE - PC custody services: non income exchange (mandatory)

bank: 7931 HANDELSBANK AG page: 1

value date: 04-11-2014

security code	entitlement in shares/nominal	modification in shares/nominal	new sec	kind of transaction
DE000TB48P94	36,000.00	1,008.00		exchange

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 8.0 17.11.2014 7907260001 A KVGIUM 03-11-14 10:36:18 am

BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

ENTITLEMENT IN SHARES/NOMINAL

The volume of each entitlement in shares is displayed.

MODIFICATION IN SHARES/NOMINAL

The volume for the amount in modifications of a security is displayed.

NEW SEC

If necessary, a new SEC will be displayed.

PAGE BACK/NEXT PAGE (button)

To move forwards or backwards, if the list of entries is longer than one page.

The length of entries shown in the table will depend on the parameters entered by the user. The parameter indicating the number of pages can be entered in the main menu "Settings / Options / Turn Page".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

DISPLAY (button)

Click on "Display" to see details (Event Data) of the selected entry.

CANCEL (button)

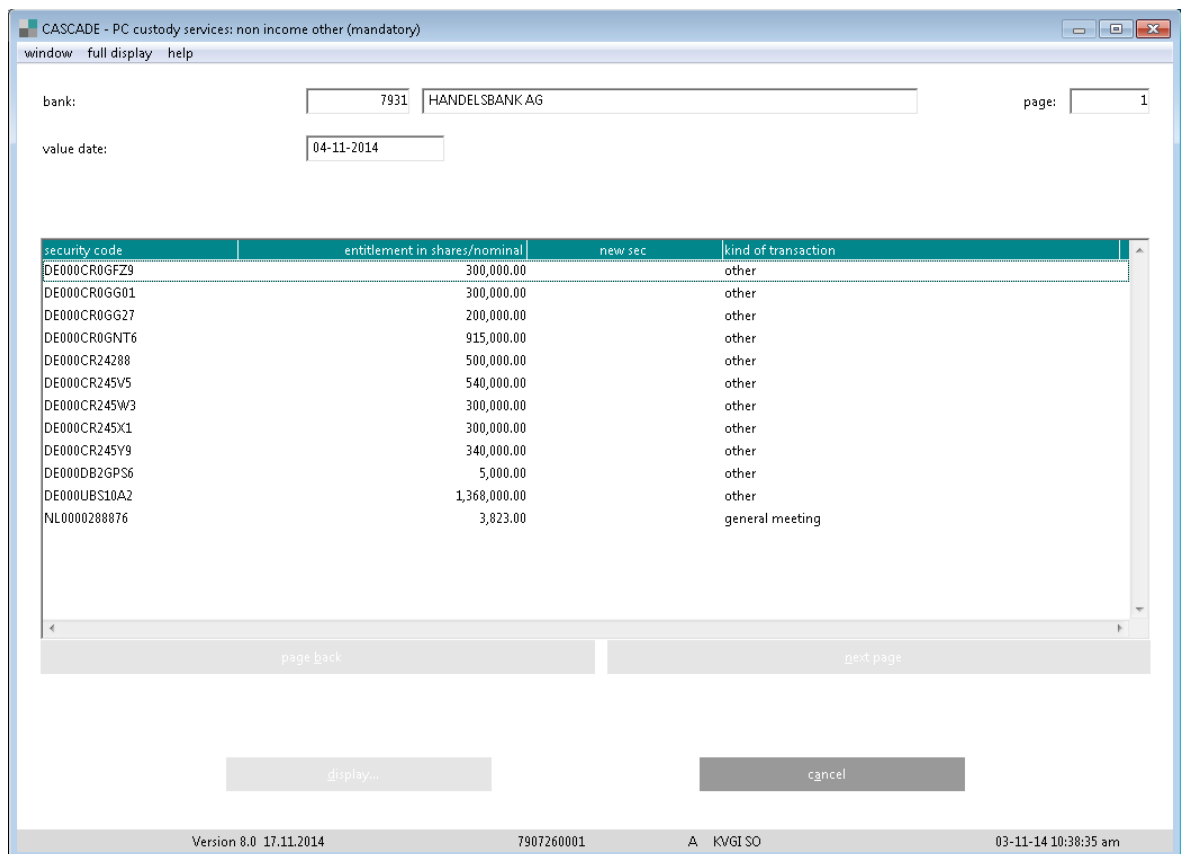
Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.2.2 Non Income Corporate Actions: Other

The menu option "other" enables the user to access information on name changes, stocks and bonds delivery rights, de-listing of certification, obligatory automatic options, squeeze out and general meetings. (These transactions are for information only and do not invoke any automatic processing of custody services.)

The entry date in "value" is either the beginning or the end of the exchange period.

The full display below serves as preliminary information for future corporate actions. It covers the period from 14 business days before the beginning of the exchange period up to the end of the exchange period. If either the start or end date is missing, then the other one is used.



BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed: either the beginning or the end of the exchange period.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

ENTITLEMENT IN SHARES/NOMINAL

The volume of each entitlement in shares is displayed.

NEW SEC

If necessary, a new SEC will be displayed.

KIND OF TRANSACTION

The transaction type for the corporate action is indicated (other/general meeting).

PAGE BACK/NEXT PAGE (button)

To move forwards or backwards, if the list of entries is longer than one page.

The length of entries shown in the table will depend on the parameters entered by the user. The parameter indicating the number of pages can be entered in the main menu "Settings / Options / Turn Page".

DISPLAY (button)

Click on "Display" to see details (Event Data) of the selected entry.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC custody services: event data". The window contains several input fields and dropdown menus for configuring event data. The fields are as follows:

- event type: 281, equity tender right
- security ID: DE000CR0GFZ9, 4, COBA AAL 11.14 ALV, 07.11.G GS
- BID: 2014043070100
- trading suspended date: (empty), lead manager: 0000
- start: 04-11-2014
- end: 04-11-2014
- new security identification number: DE0008404005, ALLIANZ SE VNA O.N.
- ratio: 10000, EUR - Euro, /, 87.51969, securities
- payment: 0
- corporate action option code: Obl./Akt. (additional)
- exercise price: 114.2, EUR - Euro
- cap amount: 0
- first execution: (empty), condition: (empty)
- second execution: (empty), condition: (empty)

A "cancel" button is located at the bottom center of the window. The status bar at the bottom shows "Version 8.0 17.11.2014", "7907260001", "A KVGISO", and "03-11-14 10:40:07 am".

EVENT TYPE

The field event type is pre-set depending on the user's selection.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

LEADMANAGER

The bank which handles the settlement is displayed.

START

The first day, on which the right to purchase a security is granted.

END

The last day, on which the right to purchase a security is granted.

NEW SEC

If necessary, a new SEC will be displayed.

CREDIT RATIO/DEBT RATIO/ RATIO

Reflects the type of changes in the capital stock.

MINIMUM EXERCISE

The conditions for the minimum exercise are indicated.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

8.2.3 All mandatory non income corporate actions

The "all mandatory non income corporate actions" menu option gives the user a summary of all transactions from credit, debit, exchange and other (as described above).

The full display below serves as preliminary information for future corporate actions. It covers the period from 14 business days before the beginning of the exchange period up to the end of the exchange period. If either the start or end date is missing, then the other one is used.

security code	entitlement in shares/nominal	modification in shares/nominal	new sec	kind of transaction
DE000CR0GFZ9	300,000.00			other
DE000CR0GG01	300,000.00			other
DE000CR0GG27	200,000.00			other
DE000CR0GNT6	915,000.00			other
DE000CR24288	500,000.00			other
DE000CR245V5	540,000.00			other
DE000CR245W3	300,000.00			other
DE000CR245X1	300,000.00			other
DE000CR245Y9	340,000.00			other
DE000DB2GPS6	5,000.00			other
DE000UBS10A2	1,368,000.00			other
NL0000288876	3,823.00			general meeting

BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

ENTITLEMENT IN SHARES/NOMINAL

The volume of each entitlement in shares is displayed.

MODIFICATION IN SHARES/NOMINAL

The volume for the amount in modifications of a security is displayed.

NEW SEC

If necessary, a new SEC will be displayed.

KIND OF TRANSACTION

The transaction type for the corporate action is indicated.

PAGE BACK/NEXT PAGE (button)

To move forwards or backwards, if the list of entries is longer than one page.

The length of entries shown in the table will depend on the parameters entered by the user. The parameter indicating the number of pages can be entered in the main menu "Settings / Options / Turn Page".

DISPLAY (button)

Click on "Display" to see details (event data) of the selected entry.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

Pre-advice for General Meetings

It is possible to retrieve detailed event data. All relevant information about the general meeting, including "record date" and "deadline to register" is displayed.

CASCADE - PC custody services: event data

event type: 282 annual general meeting

security ID: NL0000288876 0 EUROCOMM.PR. CERT.10EO-50 GS-

BID: 2014091710800

DATUM HV: (additional) 04-11-2014 lead manager:

RECORD-TAG: (additional)

LETZ. HINT.: (additional)

new security identification number: 28.10.2014

VEROEFF.: (additional) /

ORT: (additional) Amsterdam

exercise price: 14:00

cancel

Version 8.0 17.11.2014 7907260001 A KVGI AK 03-11-14 10:49:12 am

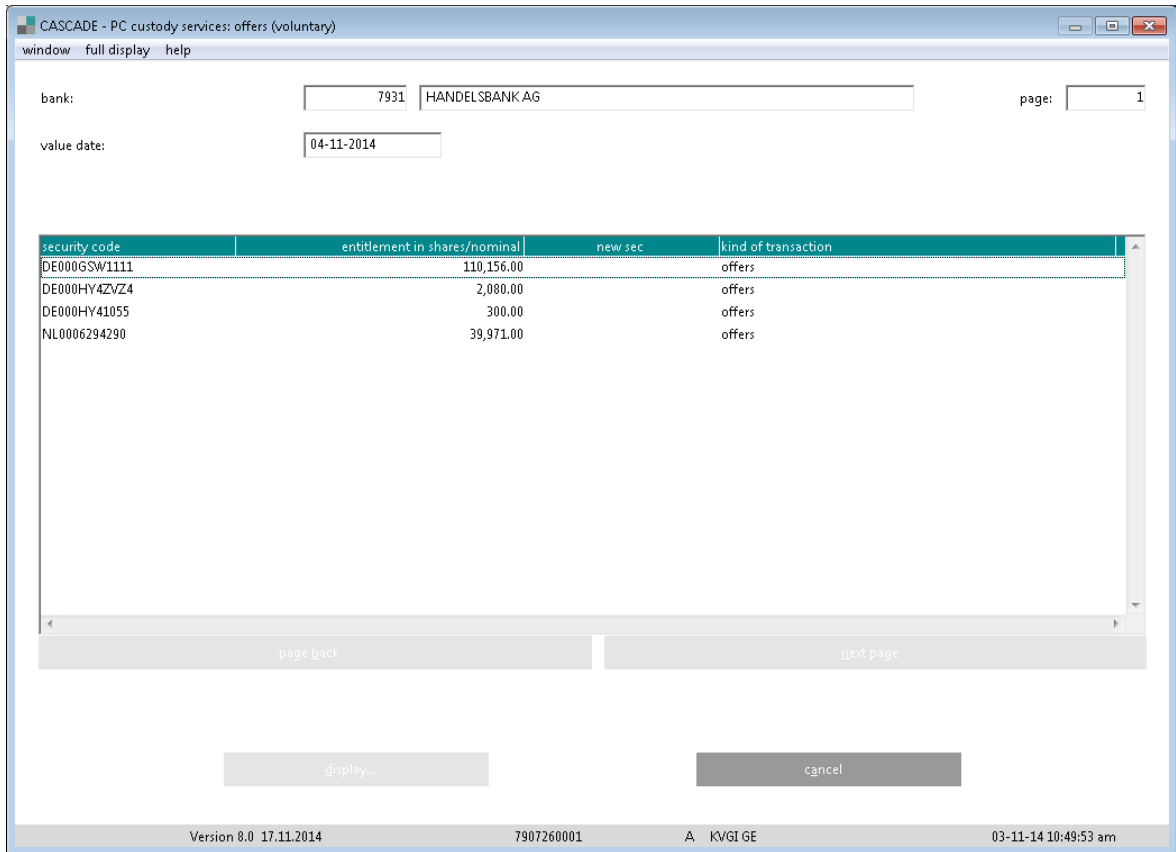
8.2.4 Voluntary offers

The "voluntary offers" menu option enables the user to access information on:

- Take-over and/or pay-off offers;
- Buyback offers;
- Return possibilities of stakes and/or stocks;
- Redemption of stakes
- Possibility of creditor and/or ownership termination
- Exchange offers;
- Conversion offers post termination or final maturity;
- Subscription offer;
- Expiration of the option or change period.

The entry date in "value" is either the beginning or the end of the exchange period.

The full display below serves as preliminary information for future corporate actions. It covers the period from 14 business days before the beginning of the exchange period up to the end of the exchange period. If either the start or end date is missing, then the other one is used.



BANK

Displays the previously selected bank.

VALUE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

ENTITLEMENT IN SHARES/NOMINAL

The volume of each entitlement in shares is displayed.

NEW SEC

If necessary, a new SEC will be displayed.

PAGE BACK/NEXT PAGE (button)

To move forwards or backwards, if the list of entries is longer than one page.

The length of entries shown in the table will depend on the parameters entered by the user. The parameter indicating the number of pages can be entered in the main menu "Settings / Options / Turn Page".

DISPLAY (button)

Click on "Display" to see details (event data) of the selected entry.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

Event data display: repurchase offers

In the event data display, all relevant detail information for the event is shown.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The display provides preliminary information starting 14 business days before the start of the exchange period up to the end of the exchange period.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC custody services: event data". The window contains the following fields and values:

- event type: 280 (dropdown menu set to "repurchase offer")
- security ID: CH0048265513 (with sub-fields for 0.000000000, TRANSOCEAN LTD., SF 15, GS-)
- BID: 2010042096100
- trading suspended date: (empty)
- start: 20-04-2010
- end: 19-04-2013
- new security identification number: (empty)
- ratio: 1.00 / 1.00 (with dropdown menus)
- payment: (empty)
- odd lot: 21.000 (with dropdown menu)

A "cancel" button is located at the bottom center of the window. The status bar at the bottom shows "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)", "7907260001", "A KVGI GE", and "16-04-13 01:57:16 pm".

EVENT TYPE

The field event type is pre-set depending on the user's selection.

SECURITY CODE

The SEC or ISIN is indicated.

LEADMANAGER

The bank which handles the settlement is displayed.

CREDIT RATIO/DEBT RATIO/RATIO

Reflects the type of changes in the capital stock.

8.2.5 Event type data

In the "event data" display option, the user is given all detailed information about the selected transaction.

This detailed display below serves as preliminary information and covers the period from 14 business days before ex-date up to the CBF due date, or 14 business days from the beginning of the exchange period up to the end of the exchange period. If either the start or end date is missing, then the other one is used.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC custody services: event data". The window contains the following fields and values:

- event type: 280 (dropdown menu: end of option period)
- security ID: DE000HY4ZVZ4 (dropdown menu: 0 UC-HVB CALL14 DAX GS)
- BID: 2014072291000
- trading suspended date: 03-11-2014 (lead manager: 0000)
- start: 24-07-2014
- end: 04-11-2014
- new security identification number: DE0008469008 (DAX PERFORMANCE-INDEX)
- ratio: 1 securities / 0.01 XXX - securities
- minimum exercise: 100 securities
- corporate action option code: OS/WTS=A.I (additional)
- exercise price: 9600 XXX - securities
- cap amount: 0
- first execution: (dropdown menu) condition: (dropdown menu)
- second execution: (dropdown menu) condition: (dropdown menu)

At the bottom of the window, there is a "cancel" button and a status bar with the following information: Version 8.0 17.11.2014, 7907260001, A KVGI GE, 03-11-14 11:10:12 am.

EVENT TYPE

The field event type is pre-set depending on the user's selection.

SEC

The Security Code or ISIN is indicated.

ENTITLED AT

Due date for the transmission of securities.

LEADMANAGER

The bank which handles the settlement is displayed.

DUE DATE/EX-DATE

Displays the first business day after entitlement (shown in "Entitled At").

VALUE/VALUE DATE

The previously selected business day is displayed.

START

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The first day, on which the right to purchase a security is granted.

END

The last day, on which the right to purchase a security is granted.

NEW SECURITY IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

If necessary, a new SEC will be displayed.

CREDIT RATIO/DEBT RATIO/RATIO

Reflects the type of changes in capital stock.

MINIMUM EXERCISE

The conditions for the minimum exercise are indicated.

CANCEL (button)

Click on "Cancel" to exit the current window.

9 Message monitoring message journal

9.1 General information

The following paragraphs describe the online service for message monitoring of exchanges between the user and CBF via SWIFT, MQ and File Transfer (LIMA). LIMA (Link Manager) is an application, which enables clients to connect to CASCADE, Xemac, Taxbox, LMS and KADI in various formats of the ISO, 15022 and XML standards.

The user can be informed of the following:

- Which user sent messages have been processed;
- Which user sent messages have been rejected;
- Which messages were sent from CBF to the user;
- Content of the messages sent via SWIFT, MQ and File Transfer (LIMA).

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC selection: message journal' application window. It contains several sections for filtering messages:

- selection:** A group of radio buttons. The first option, 'Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - technical overview', is selected.
- date and time filters:** 'date from:' and 'up to:' are both set to '08-03-2017'. 'time from:' is set to '00:00' and 'up to:' is set to '23:59'. There is also a 'reference:' field.
- additional selection:** A collection of dropdown menus and text boxes for further filtering, including 'sender/receiver:', 'CBF-customer:', 'application:', 'interface:', 'status:', 'inbound/outbound:' (set to 'both'), 'format:' (set to 'all'), 'message function:', 'message type:', 'cycle from:', and 'cycle to:'.
- Buttons:** 'gk' and 'cancel' buttons are located at the bottom of the main form area.
- Footer:** The bottom of the window displays 'Version 9.1a 21.11.2016', '7907260001', 'A MAMJ', and the current date and time '08-03-17 02:19:09 pm'.

The user can narrow his search by making entries in the checkboxes of the message journal. The direction of communication as used in the selection criteria (please see "inbound/outbound" field) is defined by CBF to the message itself.

The following functions are available from the message journal:

- **CBF – Technical Overview:**
Display of messages according to technical selection criteria.
- **CBF – Operational Overview:**
Display of messages according to any selection criteria. Additionally, it is mandatory to fill out the "reference" field. The operational reference comes from the incoming message of the evaluation group of the client. The outgoing messages are sorted in the evaluation group in reference to the CBF settlement system, for example per CASCADE instruction number. The entry of the operational reference can also be done using the "wildcard" (for example "KT"), which pulls up all messages beginning with these characters.
- **CBF – Rejected Messages:**
Displays all rejected incoming messages from CBF settlement systems (CASCADE and Custody Services). These messages are marked with "HLD" (default value for invalid entries)
- **CBL (Clearstream Banking Luxembourg) – File Transfer:**
Displays the files which are forwarded to CBL by CBF for or to CBF clients.

Details of fields for each function code:

		Technical Overview	Rejected Messages	Operational Overview	Default
sender/receiver	Either this or next field must be entered in minimum and must contain the first 4 digits of the User-Id.	0	0	0	yes
CBF Client	Either this or prior field must be entered in minimum and must contain the first 4 digits of the User-Id.	0	0	0	yes
KOMMUNIKATIONSART (TYPE OF COMMUNICATION)		M	M	M	yes
DATUM (DATE)		M	M	M	yes
ZEIT (TIME)		M	M	M	yes
ANWENDUNG (APPLICATION)		M	M	M	no
STATUS		0	M	0	no
EINGANG/AUSGANG (INPUT/OUTPUT)		0	-	0	no
MESSAGE TYPE		0	0	0	no
REFERENZ (REFERENCE)		0	-	M	no

Explanation:

- 0 Optional Field
- M Mandatory Field

All fields listed in the screen "Message Journal" as well as the fields in all other screens are displayed and explained in the table below.

Screen field	Explanation
DATE/TIME	These fields are used as selection criteria of messages for all function codes. All messages for the selected time period are displayed.
SENDER/RECEIVER	"SENDER/RECEIVER" refers to the communication partner of CBF and will be initialised with the first four digits of the user ID. It isn't necessary, that a message sender or receiver is instructing as a CBF account holder. The sending or receiving counter-party of CBF could be a pure service-provider like a computer centre. If a sender/receiver wants to select all messages he sent or received during the fixed time frame, next field "CBF-KUNDE" has to be empty.
CBF-CUSTOMER	The "CBF-Customer" field is focusing the CBF client accounts (main accounts) in CASCADE (-RS) application. In the end it identifies a CBF account holder and will be initialised with the first four digits of the entered user ID. If a CBF client wants to select all messages relating to the entered main account – that means inquiry independent from a specific message sender/receiver – prior "SENDER/RECEIVER" field has to be empty.
APPLICATION	The following applications can be selected: CASCADE, CASCADE-RS, Cash, CSS, KADI (custody services), LMS, Pass through, pending stock exchange trades, Proprietary International Events, Statement of Holdings, TaxBox, Xemac
STATUS	Filling the field STATUS with a code allows the selection of messages according to their status. There are two status fields: the system status and the application status. Only one of the two status fields must be marked, referring either to the system status or to the application status. The settings and meaning of STATUS is explained in the following paragraph.
INPUT/OUTPUT	The field used for the selection of messages received and/or sent by CBF.
COMMUNICATION TYPE	The following entries are possible: SWIFT, MQ or File Transfer.
MESSAGE TYPE	By choosing MESSAGE TYPE a certain MT is selected for display.
MESSAGE FUNCTION	Drop down menu of all possible message functions
CYCLE FROM: / CYCLE TO:	The monitoring functionality will be applied for inbound as well as for outbound messages. Additionally, a newly introduced reference field will ease the mapping of the sent instruction and the received validation feedback will enable the selection of the validation feedbacks.
REFERENCE	This field refers to the sender's reference in MT 541-MT 547 it refers to the sender's reference in field 20C, Qualifier: SEME. Reference is only valid with the instruction overview; all messages with a specified instruction reference are displayed. By choosing a certain reference, the user can enter "*" as a wildcard. For example, by entering "F*" in the field "reference", all messages the reference of which starts with "F" are displayed.

9.2 Status information

The processing of a SWIFT message is basically represented in two different status fields. The system status represents the state of processing within the interface system (MERVA), while the application status quotes the same, however, for the respective application (CASCADE).

For each relevant step of processing which is originated from an interface or application program, one status is required. The status is message-related when originated from the interface, whereas the application status documents the processing results of the application program. Each system status field consists of a 3-character alphanumeric sequence. Each application status field consists of a 3-character numeric sequence. An expansion of the status fields for the application or an interface is possible without difficulties.

The change in status is processed in various steps through the application or interface. The possible status changes resulting from the processing steps are described below. First, status and changes concerning inbound messages, that is messages being received by CBF, are described. The respective description for outbound messages, that is messages being transmitted by CBF, follows afterwards.

9.2.1 Status for inbound messages

Status		Meaning
System	Application	
IPR	000	System: The message is retrieved from MERVA by API and entered into the database. Application: The message is pending for processing. ¹⁶
API	000	System: The message is deleted from the MERVA queue and is ready for processing by the application. Application: The message is pending for processing. ¹⁷
XGN	000	System: The message is routed to the X-GEN converter. Application: The message is pending for processing. ¹⁸
PRG	012	System: Processing of the message by the application has started. Application: The message is retrieved from the database for processing.
VS1	010	System: Processing of message is finished. Application: Message will be printed on a CBF printer.
VS1	091	System: Processing of message is finished. Application: Message was processed successfully by the application.

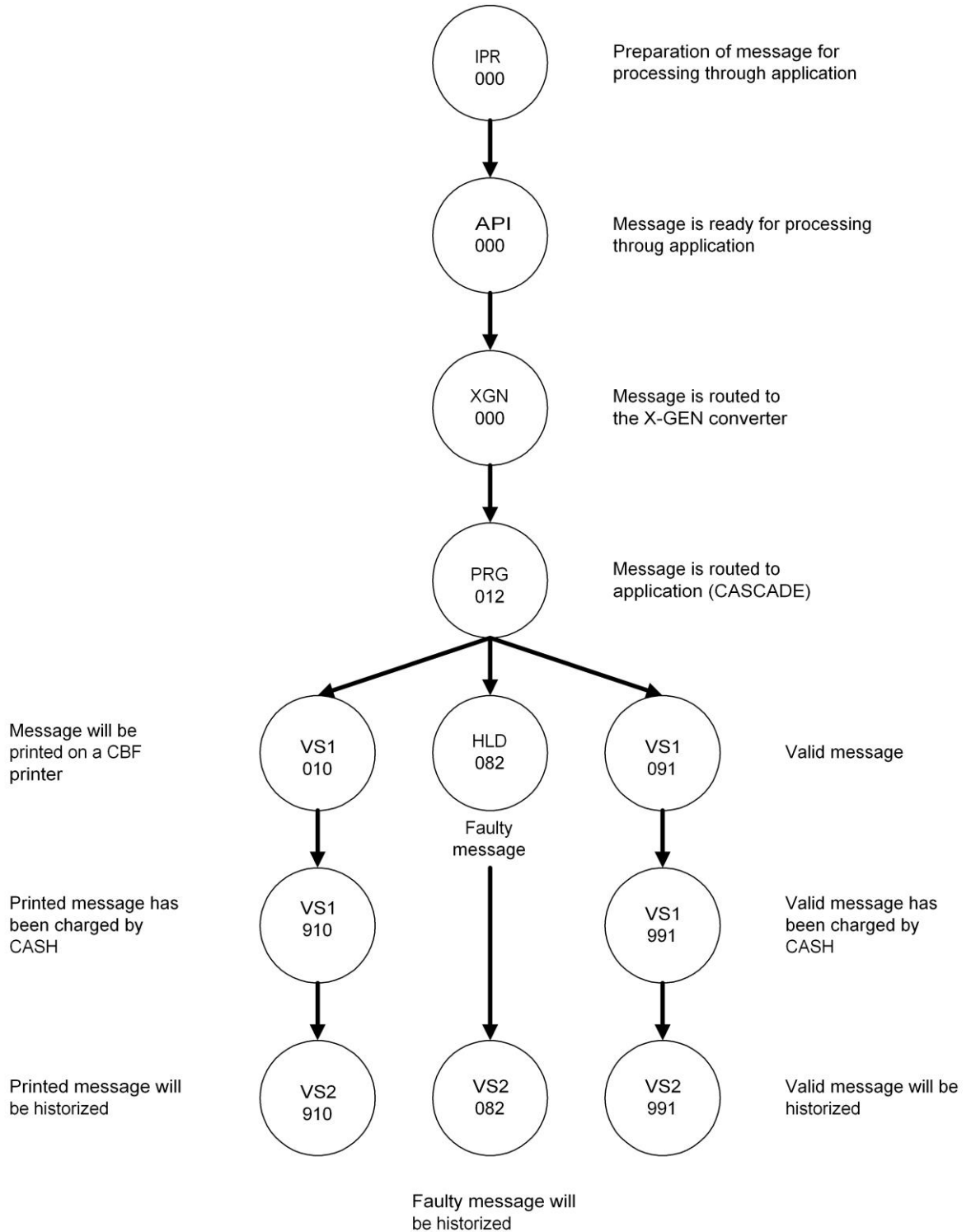
¹⁶ If the status "IPR" is displayed longer than one minute please inform CBF's Client Services Domestic.

¹⁷ If the status "API" is displayed longer than one minute please inform CBF's Client Services Domestic.

¹⁸ If the status "PRG" is displayed longer than one minute please inform CBF's Client Services Domestic.

Status		Meaning
System	Application	
HLD	082	System: Further processing of the message is not possible due to a failure. Application: The message is rejected by the application.
VS1	910	System: Processing of message is finished. Application: Message was printed and has been charged by CASH afterwards.
VS1	991	System: Processing of message is finished. Application: Message was processed successfully by the application and has been charged by CASH afterwards.
VS2	910	System: The message will be historised. Application: Message was printed and has been charged by CASH afterwards.
VS2	991	System: The message will be historised. Application: Message was processed successfully by the application and has been charged by CASH afterwards.
VS2	082	System: The message will be historised Application: The message is rejected by the application.

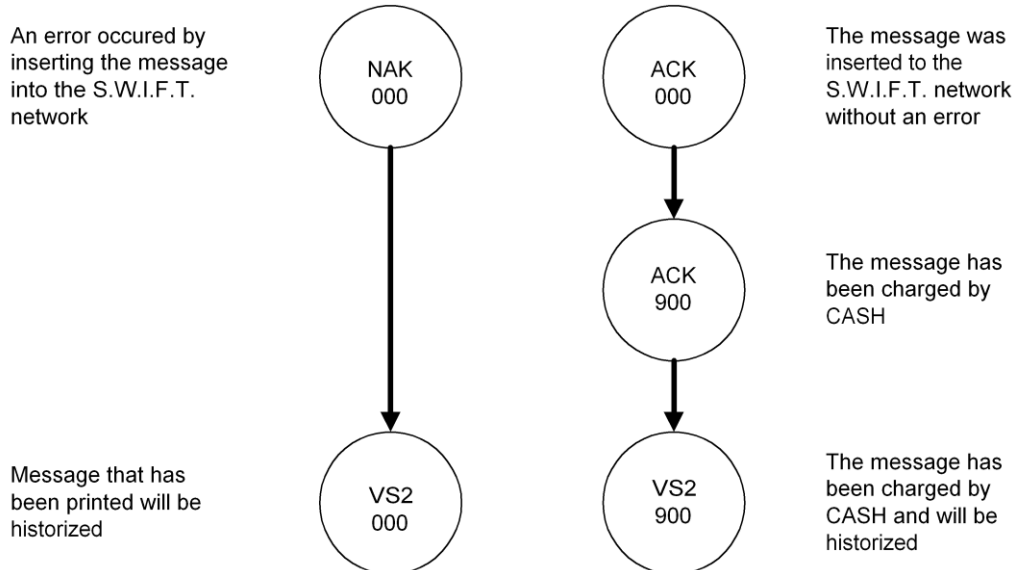
9.2.2 Changes of status for inbound messages



9.2.2.1 Status for outbound messages

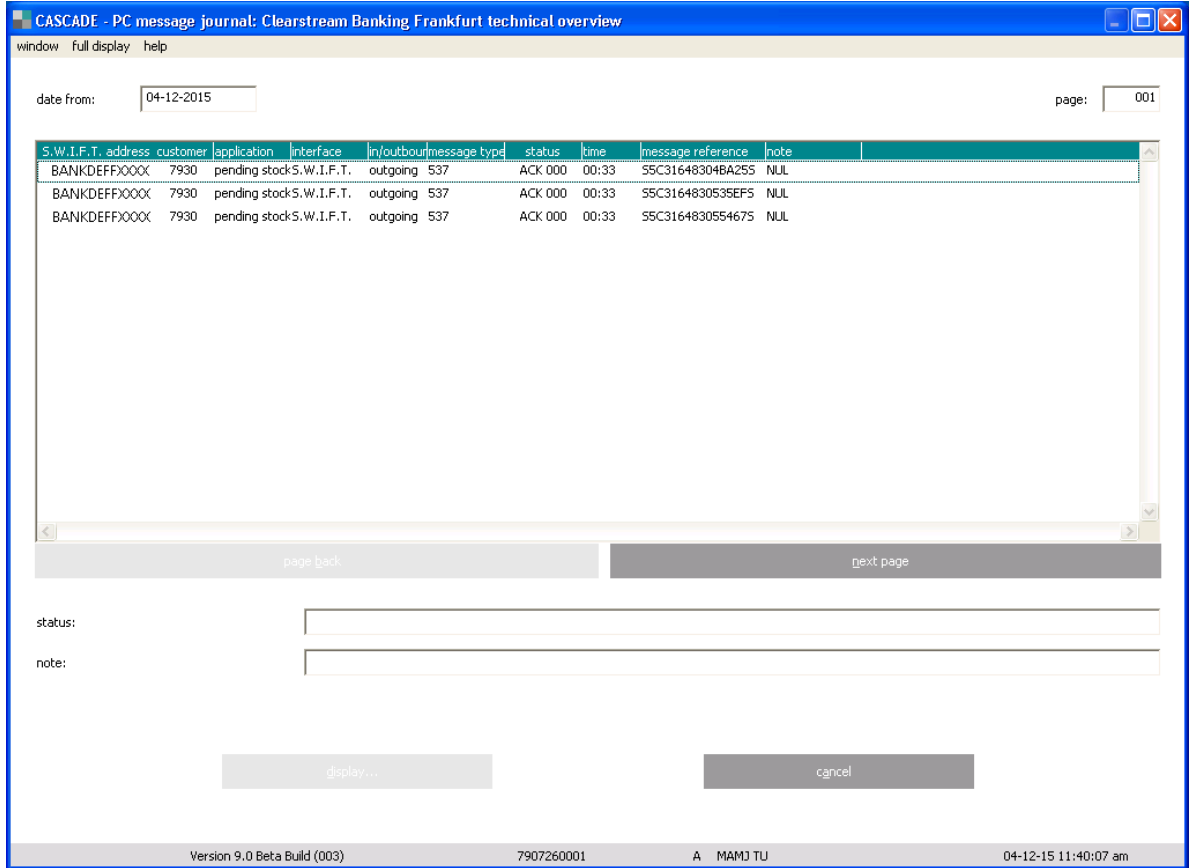
Status		Meaning
System	Application	
NAK	000	System: An error occurred by inserting the message into the SWIFT network. The sending was not successful. The message will be printed on a CBF-printer.
ACK	000	System: The sending of the message was successful, no errors occurred.
ACK	900	System: The sending of the message was successful, no errors occurred. Application: Message has been charged by CASH.
VS2	000	System: The message will be historised.
VS2	900	System: The message will be historised. Application: Message has been charged by CASH.

9.2.3 Changes of status for outbound messages



9.3 List screen – technical overview

SWIFT:



This function is used to display all messages within a certain timeframe (DATE/TIME) for an SWIFT address in the sequence, in which they were inserted into the logging database. The client may only look at its own messages (pre-allocated SWIFT address); however, CBF has access to all messages. The displayed messages are divided into two blocks: first the inbound messages, then the outbound messages are displayed. Within these two blocks, the messages are displayed sorted in the sequence of having been inserted into the logging database.

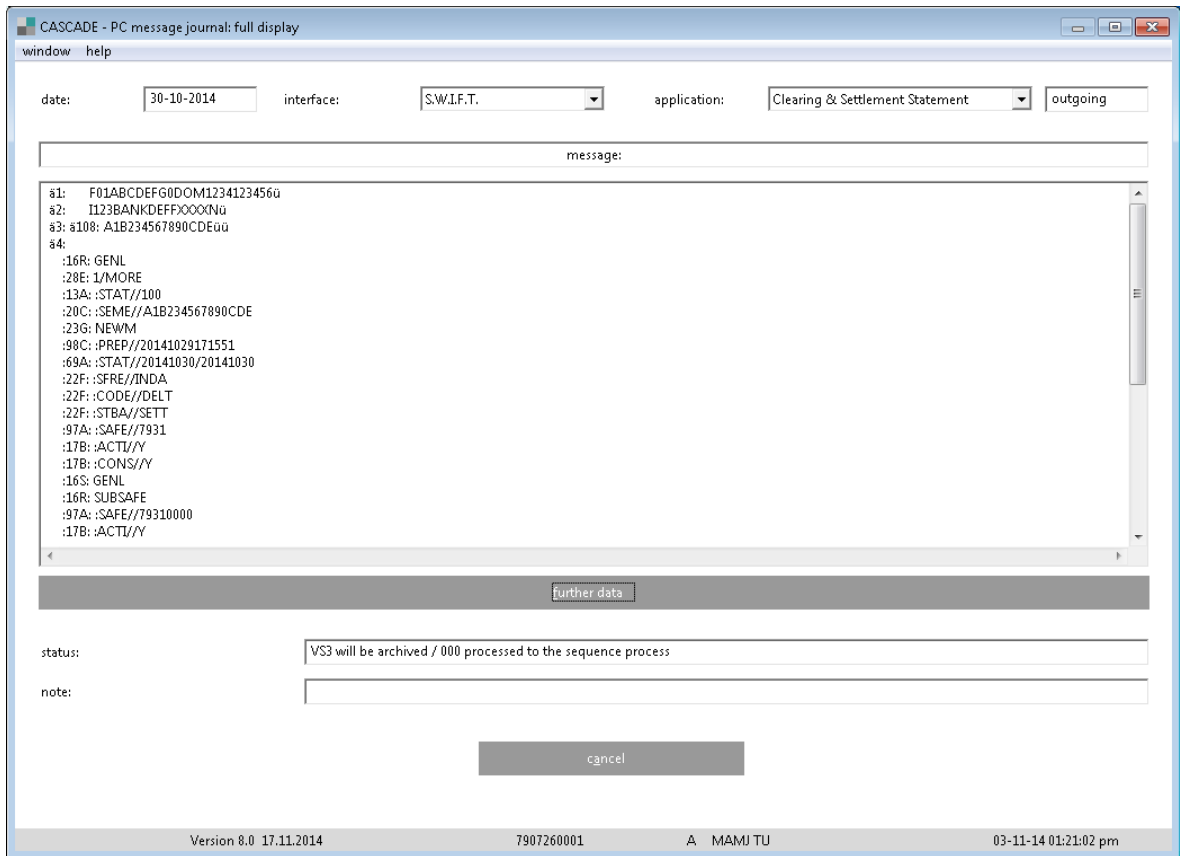
File Transfer:

The screenshot displays the 'CASCADE - PC message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt file transfer block: technical overview' window. The interface includes a menu bar with 'window', 'full display', and 'help'. Below the menu bar, there are input fields for 'date' (03-11-2014), 'interface' (File Transfer), 'application', and 'page' (001). The main area contains a table with the following data:

FT member	customer	cycle	FTB number	from	up to	in/outbound	status	time	valid	rejected	note
7931	7931	001	1046	1	3	incoming	VS1 098	10:46	2	1	
7931	7931	010	1046	1	3	outgoing	SNT 000	10:46	3	0	
7931	7931	011	1046	1	3	outgoing	SNT 000	10:46	3	0	
7931	7931	001	1108	1	3	incoming	VS1 098	11:08	2	1	
7931	7931	010	1108	1	3	outgoing	SNT 000	11:08	3	0	
7931	7931	011	1108	1	3	outgoing	SNT 000	11:08	3	0	

Below the table, there are 'page back' and 'next page' buttons. Further down, there are input fields for 'status:' and 'note:', and 'display...' and 'cancel' buttons. The footer contains the text: 'Version 8.0 17.11.2014', '7907260001', 'A MAMU TU', and '03-11-14 01:07:03 pm'.

9.4 Detailed screen “technical overview”



In the detailed screen “Technical Overview”, the first two lines are filled with the date, the communication type, the application and the input/output information.

All blocks and fields of a stored SWIFT message are displayed in rows in sequence of appearance within the message. This enables the user to receive a general view of the contents of the message. Each row of a field in the message uses a row of the screen. The field tag or block code is displayed only at the beginning of a field or block.

Outbound messages are displayed as CBF enters them into the SWIFT network (with input basic header and input application header). Inbound messages are displayed as CBF receives them out of the SWIFT network (with output basic header and output application header).

9.5 List screen – instruction overview

SWIFT:

S.W.I.F.T. address	customer	application	interface	in/outbound	message type	status	time	operational reference	note
BANKDEFFXXXX	7930	pending stock-excS.W.I.F.T.		outgoing	537	ACK 000	00:33	0020000802010001	NUL
BANKDEFFXXXX	7930	pending stock-excS.W.I.F.T.		outgoing	537	ACK 000	00:33	0020001302010001	NUL
BANKDEFFXXXX	7930	pending stock-excS.W.I.F.T.		outgoing	537	ACK 000	00:33	0020002102010001	NUL

On the “Instruction Overview” screen, messages can be retrieved by the instruction reference. This reference refers to the sender’s reference in field 20 of the message when used with MT 52x, MT 530-MT 533, MT 57x and MT 596; with the MT 592 it refers to the CASCADE reference of the original message in field 21 of the message. With the MT 541-MT 547 it refers to the sender’s reference in field 20C, Qualifier: SEME.

The messages are divided into two blocks: first the inbound messages, then the outbound messages are displayed. Within each block, the messages are displayed sorted in the sequence of having been inserted into the logging database.

File Transfer:

CASCADE - PC message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt operational overview

date: interface: application: page:

process cycle:

S.W.I.F.T. address	customer	FTB number	MSG number/in/outbound	message type/status	time	operational reference	note
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000001 incoming	HEA V51 091	16:46	33591710240001	
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000002 incoming	T10 V51 091	16:46	2009052812345609	NEWM
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000003 incoming	TRA V51 091	16:46		
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000001 outgoing	HEA SNT 000	16:46	NoReference	
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000003 outgoing	TRA SNT 000	16:46	NoReference	
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000001 outgoing	HEA SNT 000	18:19	H0123456789001	
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000002 outgoing	T10 SNT 000	18:19	2009052812345609	
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	1	000003 outgoing	TRA SNT 000	18:19	T0123456789001	
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	4	000010 outgoing	HEA SNT 000	18:19	33591710240004	NUL
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	4	000011 outgoing	NUL SNT 000	18:19	TAXO181926266374	NUL
PARBOEFFXBR	3359	4	000012 outgoing	TRA SNT 000	18:19	33591710240004	

status:

note:

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 003) IM522 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A MAM0 FU 25-10-17 04:50:38 pm

9.6 Detailed screen “instruction overview”

The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC message journal: full display" with a menu bar containing "window" and "help". Below the menu bar are three input fields: "date:" with the value "24-10-2017", "interface:" with a dropdown menu showing "File Transfer", and "application:" with a dropdown menu showing "TaxBox". To the right of these fields is a button labeled "incoming".

Below these fields is a large text area labeled "message:" containing XML data:

```
</RepCrt>
<Rep>
<AcqDt>20180115
</AcqDt>
<AcqTm>121523
</AcqTm>
<HistHoldingInd>true
</HistHoldingInd>
<PrctDtls>
<AcqNom>1000.00
</AcqNom>
<AcqAmtEUR>500.00
</AcqAmtEUR>
<PrctDtls>
<EndRepInd>true
</EndRepInd>
</Rep>
</Payload>
</TaxBoxTransfer>
```

Below the message area is a button labeled "further data".

Below the "further data" button are two input fields: "status:" with the value "V53 will be archived / 091 processed successfully" and "note:" with the value "NEWM".

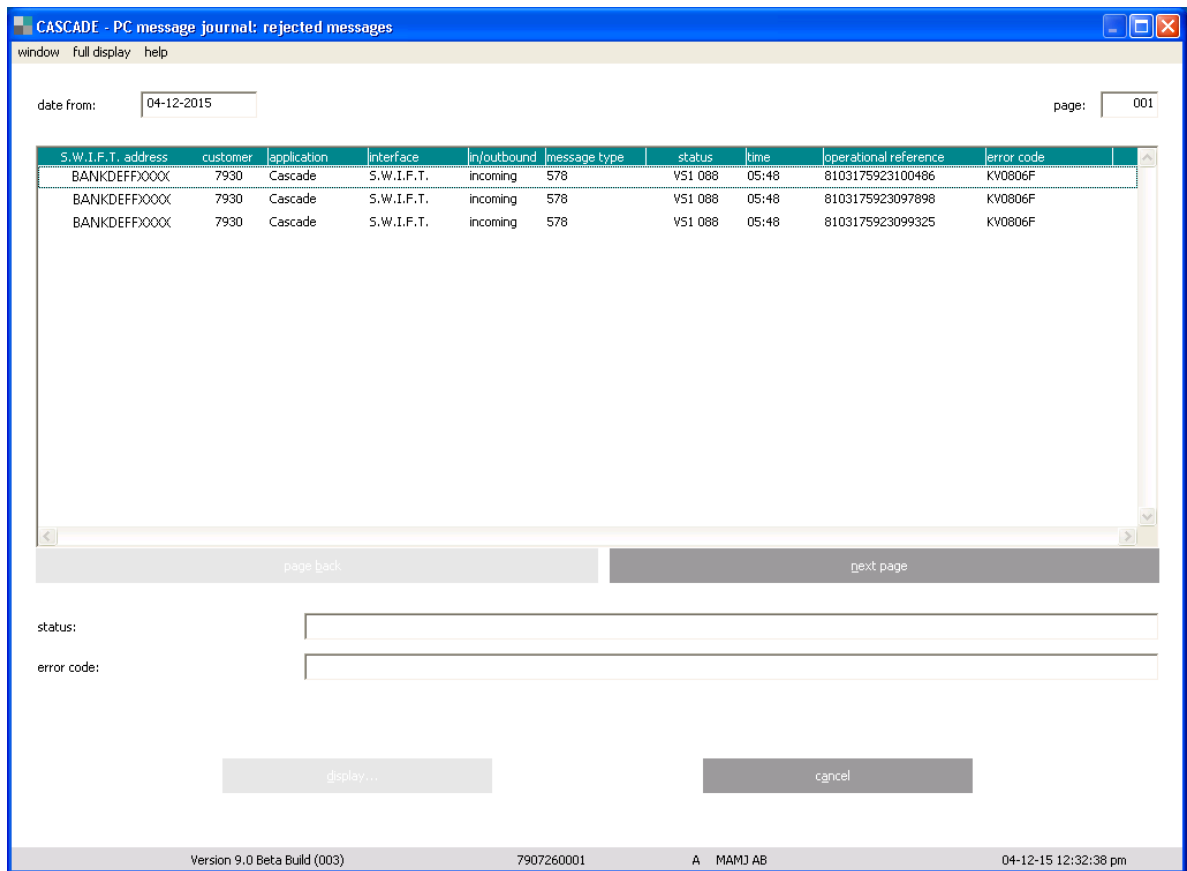
At the bottom center of the window is a button labeled "cancel".

At the very bottom of the window is a status bar with the following text: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 003) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A MAM3 TU 26-10-17 08:01:17 am".

This detailed screen is structured in the same way as the detailed “Technical Overview” screen.

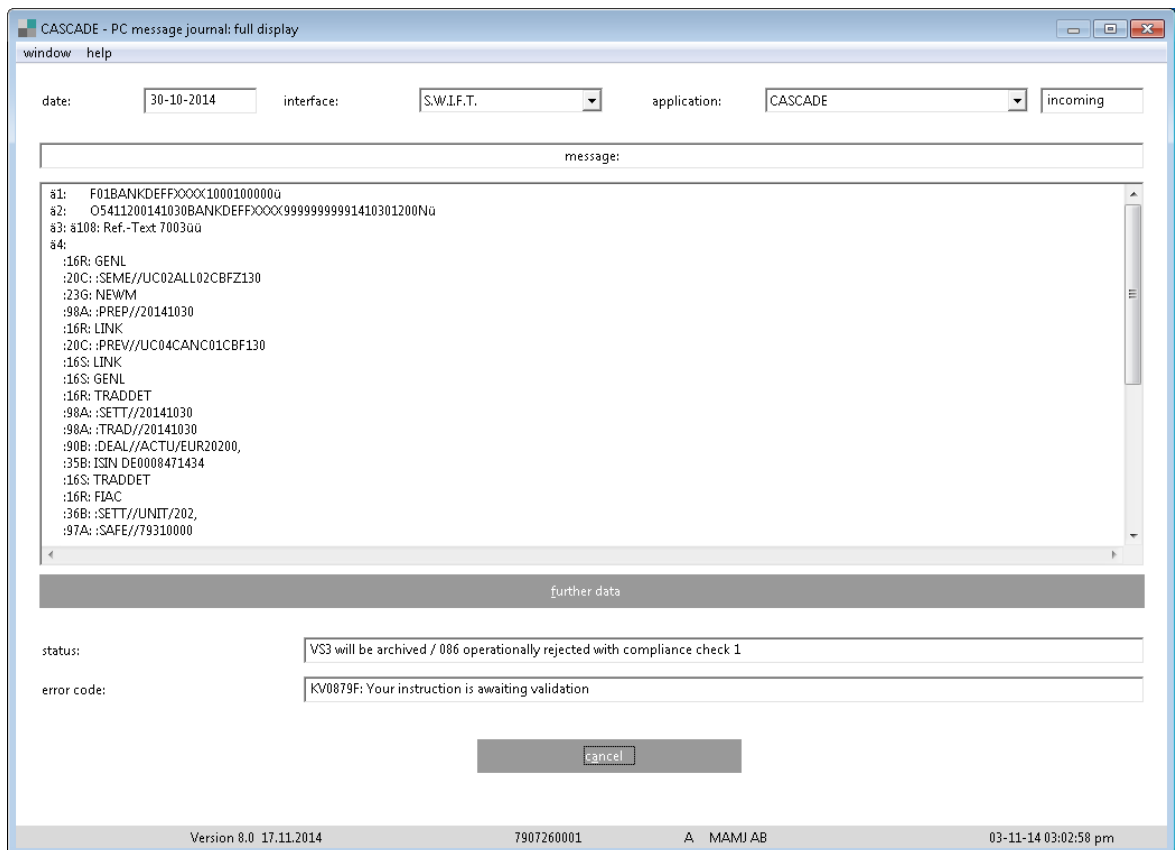
9.7 List screen – rejected messages

SWIFT:



By using this function, the client can see all messages with the system status "HLD". The messages are divided into two blocks: First, the inbound messages, then the outbound messages are displayed. Within each block, the messages are displayed sorted in the sequence of having been inserted into the logging database.

9.8 Detailed screen “rejected messages”



In the detailed “Rejected Messages” screen, the first two lines are filled with the date, the communication type, the application and the input/output information.

The third line is used to display the CASCADE error code with the describing error text.

Apart from that, this detailed screen is structured in the same way as the detailed screen.

10 Registration/re-registration of registered shares

At the CASCADE-RS application, registered shares with restricted transferability can be included in the computerised settlement and administration operations of the collective safe custody system. Without having to transfer the registered shares physically, all movements are performed by means of book entry. The owners of the shares can easily be identified given that the certificate numbers of the shares are registered. There are four sub-types of holdings:

Unregistered Positions: The buyer is the beneficial owner of the shares but has not been registered in the shareholders book yet.

Unregistered Positions-CI: The buyer is the beneficial owner of the shares but has not been registered in the shareholders book yet. These holdings could result from a capital increase.

Positions in Registration: The buyer has been given a classification number and the issuer informed about the re-registration.

Registered Positions: The buyer is the registered shareholder and the shares are kept as registered positions at CBF.

The settlement of registered shares takes place in T2S. Holdings of registered shares are in CASCADE and CASCADE-RS also with T2S. In order to reflect the registration status of registered shares positions also in T2S, positions need to be marked which is done via the T2S earmarking, thus creating specific position types.

The following graphic shows the different CASCADE RS-position types and how they are reflected in T2S with the respective T2S position types:

CASCADE RS Position Type	T2S Position Type	T2S Status
Unregistered Position (Freier Meldebestand – FMB)	AWAS★	„Held Free“ (available for settlement)
Allocated Position (Zugewiesener Meldebestand – ZMB)	RSHB	„Earmarked“ (not available for settlement)
Registered Position (Hauptbestand – HB)		
Unregistered Position CA (freier Meldebestand aus Kapitalmaßnahmen – FMB KE)	RSKE	
Allocated Position CA (Zugewiesener Meldebestand aus Kapitalmaßnahmen – ZMB KE)		

AWAS – AvailableWithNoAdditionalStatus (FMB)

RSHB – Earmarking Registered Shares (ZMB / HB)

RSKE – Earmarking Registered Shares Kapitalmaßnahme (FMB KE / ZMB KE)

* When participating on Auto-Coll, AWAS must be replaced by EXXX or EEUR.

10.1 Entry of re-registration and/or registration data

At entry of re-registration data, a request for re-registration of the shares is sent to the issuer. Re-registration by the issuer means that the shareholder name is changed in the shareholders' register vesting all rights embodied in the shares in the new shareholder; always provided that the issuer agrees to the new entry.

The only difference between the entry of a registration and a re-registration consists in the fact that the former refers to shares resulting from a capital increase. Thus, these shares and their holders are new entries in the book of shareholders.

For the purpose of a re-registration CASCADE-RS sends a settlement restriction message to T2S to change the T2S position type from AWAS, EXXX or EEUR to RSHB. For the purpose of an initial registration CASCADE-RS sends a settlement restriction message to T2S to change the T2S position type from RSKE to RSHB.

The start-up window for entry of registration and/or re-registration:

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC selection: registration' window. It features a menu bar with 'window' and 'help'. The main area is divided into two sections. The 'selection' section contains five radio buttons: 'display' (selected), 'enter', 'modification', 'verify', and 'deletion'. The 'additional selection' section includes an 'account:' field with a sub-field containing '000', a 'securities:' dropdown menu currently set to 'ISIN' with an adjacent text input field, and another dropdown menu showing '-- other --'. Below these are fields for 'instruction no.:', 'customer ref.:' (with a dropdown and a text input), 'name:', and 'shareholder no.:' (with a checkbox for 'new shareholder'). At the bottom are 'ok' and 'cancel' buttons. The status bar at the bottom displays: 'Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE 22-11-18 11:28:10 am'.

Screen field	Explanation
instruction no.	The entered "INSTRUCTION NUMBER " must be smaller than 950,000 and must be clearly defined.
Account	The account no. of the client entering the instruction is pre-set.
Securities	Entry of the securities, stock exchange or ISIN code. The field is pre-set with "other".
Customer ref.	Mandatory field; The bank entering the instruction must enter the positions for registration/re-registration.
Name	Shareholder name limiting the choice
shareholder no.	If the client cannot be found via the customer ref. the positions can be identified through the shareholder no.
new shareholder	By clicking on the mark sense field, another shareholder can be selected even if the customer ref. has already been clearly defined.

Should no shareholder be found with the customer reference entered, the user is shown the basic window for the input of shareholder data. The same window pops up if the user activates the sense mark field "new shareholder". Depending on the "type of person", different entry fields are opened.

Data entry window for natural person:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC registration: enter: personal data". At the top, there are menu options "window" and "help". Below the title bar, there are two dropdown menus: "customer ref.:" and "BIC bank ID code" (with the value "BANKDEFF33XX" displayed). The main area is divided into two sections: "personal data" and "data natural person".

In the "personal data" section, there are radio buttons for "legal" and "natural" (which is selected). Below these are input fields for "last name:", "first name:", and "date of birth:" (split into two boxes).

In the "data natural person" section, there are dropdown menus for "title:", "nationality:" (showing "Germany"), and "occupation:". There are also input fields for "academic title:", "name at birth:", and "place of birth:". At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The taskbar at the bottom of the window shows the following information: "Version 9,5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE EE 22-11-18 11:30:37 am".

Data entry window for legal person:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC registration: enter: personal data". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar, there is a "customer ref.:" label followed by a dropdown menu and a text input field. To the right, there is a "BIC bank ID code" label, a dropdown menu showing "BANKDEFFXXX", and a text input field. The main area is divided into two sections: "personal data" and "data legal person".

personal data

type of person: legal natural

name: [text input field]
[text input field]
[text input field]

foundation date: [text input field] [text input field]

data legal person

business sector: [dropdown menu]

legal entity identifier: [text input field]

registered office: [dropdown menu showing "Germany"]

At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The system tray at the bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE EE 22-11-18 11:30:37 am".

Screen field	Explanation
CUSTOMER REF.	The customer ref. is automatically the same as the reference shown in the preceding windows.
TYPE OF PERSON	The radio button shows whether the shareholder is a natural or a legal person.
NAME	The name of the shareholder must be entered as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • First line: name/company name • Second line: first name/company name (second part) • Third line: for legal persons only: company name (third part)
DATE OF BIRTH/ DATE OF FOUNDATION	Further qualifiers of the shareholder can be entered: a date in the first part and another criterion in the second part.
MR/MS/Company	The form of address has to be entered.
TITLE	Optionally, the title of persons with a graduate may be put in.
NAME AT BIRTH	
PLACE OF BIRTH	Place of birth may only be entered if the securities code number represents an Italian registered share (currently only Unicredit IT0000064854). If it is filled for a German registered share, the error message "place of birth not permitted for this WKN" is shown. If the place of birth is not filled in the case of an Italian registered share, the warning "place of birth should be indicated for this WKN" is shown. This field is mandatory; if there is no place of birth available information "not available" should be entered.
NATIONALITY	The country code can be entered by clicking on a dropdown menu.
OCCUPATION	A dropdown menu shows a selection of occupation codes.
BUSINESS SECTOR	A dropdown menu is displayed for entry of the business sector code.
LEGAL ENTITY IDENTIFIER	
REGISTERED OFFICE	The country codes are shown in a dropdown menu.

After entering all personal data, the user confirms by clicking on "OK" and goes to "address data".

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC registration: enter: address data". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area contains several input fields and a dropdown menu. At the top, there is a "customer ref.:" field, a dropdown menu, and a "BIC bank ID code" dropdown menu with the value "BANKDEFFXX". Below this is an "address:" section with fields for "street:", "postal code:", "city:", "postal code:", "P.O. box:", and a dropdown menu for "Germany". There is also an "e-mail:" field. A "mailing address" section is visible, with a checkbox and two radio buttons labeled "personal address" and "authorised address". Below this are fields for "name:", "street:", "postal code:", "postal code/city:", "P.O. box:", and "e-mail:". At the bottom of the window are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the very bottom shows "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE.EE 22-11-18 11:30:37 am".

Screen field	Explanation
customer ref.	The customer ref. is automatically the same as the reference shown in the preceding windows.
Domicile/ registered office	Entry of the full address of the shareholder. The country can be entered by menu selection.
Personal/ mailing address	If the check-box is activated, further entry fields are opened. The radio button indicates weather a personal or another address is indicated as the mailing address. In this case, all opened address fields must be filled.

When typing in the address, the following fields can be combined.

Field	Possible combination				
Street	X			X	X
Post code (place	X			X	X
Place	X	X	X	X	X
Post code (P.O. Box)		X	X	X	X
P.O. Box		X		X	

After entering the basic shareholder, personal and address data of new shareholders, the user arrives at a further window of registration and/or re-registration. This screen is displayed also if the shareholder's name is already stored as an owner of securities held with CBF on behalf of the client entering the data. The windows look different; thus, the two versions are depicted below. Having keyed in the basic data, the user branches to a screen window, which applies to registrations and re-registrations. One description is given for the two types of action.

10.1.1 Re-registration data

CASCADE - PC re-registration: enter: status

window help

E - entered or modified

instruction no.: 12345

custody type: collective safe custody unit: ST

securities:

ISIN

OK cancel

Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCJU UE 22-11-18 02:31:10 pm

CASCADE - PC re-registration: enter: re-registration data

window help

shareholder no.:

customer ref.:

shareholder name (bank) shareholder name (issuer)

nominal:

re-registration type : standard change of possession

re-registration date : 22-11-18

country: third-party hold

category:

process check cancel

Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCJU UE 22-11-18 02:31:10 pm

Screen field	Explanation
instruction no.	The entered instruction number must be smaller than 950,000 and unique.
Securities	Entry of the securities code, stock exchange or ISIN code.
Custody type	Collective safe custody
unit	The display field is pre-set with "ST".
nominal	Entry of the nominal value.
Re-registration type	The following items can be chosen from a dropdown list: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standard change of possession; • Inheritance; • Other, not from purchase; • Staff shares; • Shareholder correction; • Employee share program.
Re-registration date	The date on which the transaction shall be reported to the issuer.
Third party holdings	If the check-box is activated, third parties keep the positions; that is, the securities are kept by a trustee.
Category	A dropdown list displays the different categories of third-party holdings. The field is opened if the "third-party holdings" field is activated.
Country	A dropdown list contains the countries available. The field is open if the "third-party hold" check-box is activated.

10.1.2 Registration data

The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: registration". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The dialog is divided into two main sections: "selection" and "additional selection".

selection: A group box containing five radio buttons: "display" (selected), "enter", "modification", "verify", and "deletion".

additional selection: A group box containing several input fields and a checkbox:

- "account:": Two text boxes, the second containing "000".
- "securities:": A dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected, followed by a text box containing "I". Below it is a long dropdown menu with "-- other --" selected.
- "instruction no.": A text box.
- "customer ref.": A dropdown menu, a text box, a hyphen, another dropdown menu, and a text box.
- "name:": A text box.
- "shareholder no.": A text box and a checkbox labeled "new shareholder".

At the bottom are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the very bottom shows: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE 22-11-18 11:28:10 am".

The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC registration: enter: status". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". At the top is a dropdown menu with "E - entered or modified" selected.

The dialog contains several input fields and dropdown menus:

- "instruction no.": A text box.
- "custody type:": A dropdown menu with "collective safe custody" selected. To its right is "unit: ST" with a text box.
- "securities:": A dropdown menu with "ISIN" selected, followed by three text boxes. Below these are two more empty text boxes.

At the bottom are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the very bottom shows: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE EE 22-11-18 02:58:03 pm".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

CASCADE - PC registration: enter: registration data

window help

positions bearer shs: shareholder no.:

customer ref.: -

shareholder name (bank) shareholder name (issuer)

nominal: registration date:

rights sec. code:

ex date/start: corp. act. date:

country: third-party hold

category:

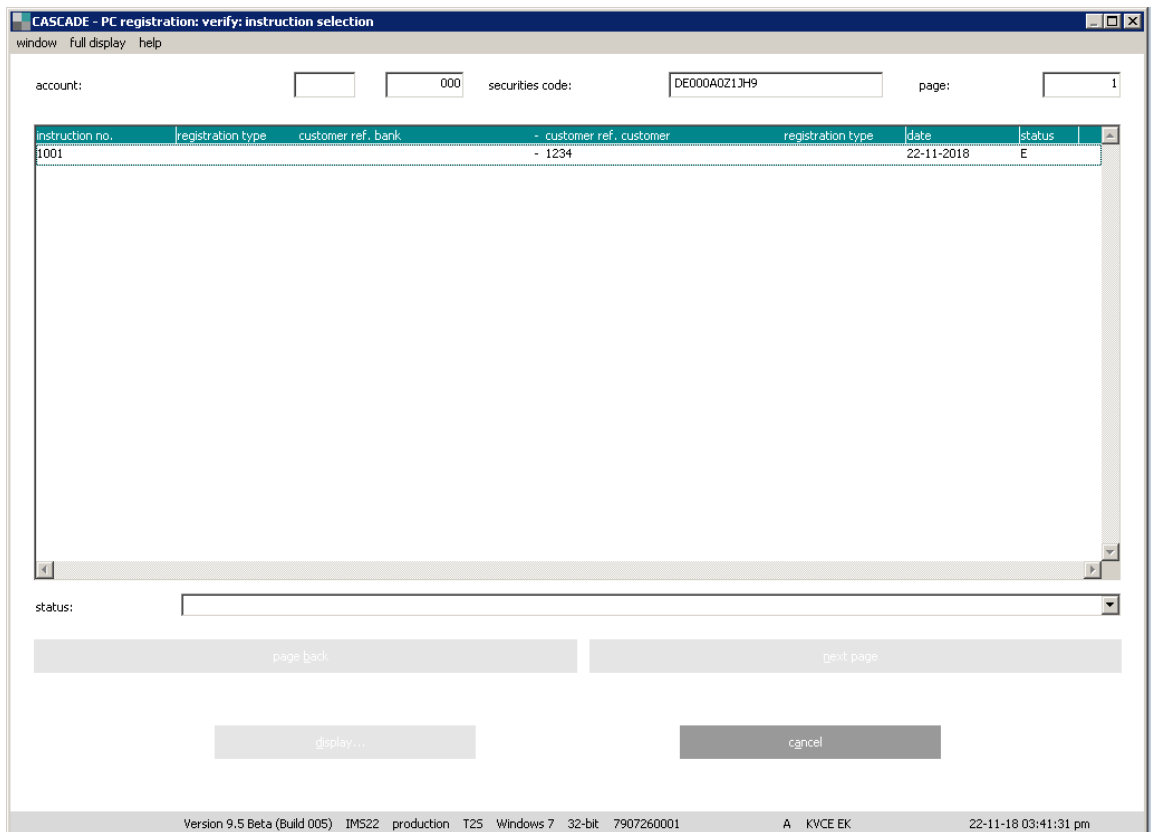
Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCE EE 22-11-18 02:58:03 pm

Screen field	Explanation
securities	Entry of the securities, stock exchange or ISIN code.
Custody type	Collective safe custody
unit	The display field is pre-set with "ST".
nominal	Entry of the nominal value
third-party holdings	If the check box is activated, third parties keep the positions; that is the securities are kept by a trustee.
Rights sec. code	The securities subject to a corporate action (subscription rights, partial rights or warrants of a conditional increase in capital.)
ex date/start	To be indicated if the type of corporate action is not clearly defined only (ex date of the capital increase, start of the exchange period of share options)
corporate action date	At conditional increases in capital only (exercise of share options)
registration date	The date on which the transaction shall be reported to the issuer.
Positions in bearer shares	At subscription for registered shares with restricted transferability resulting from a rights issue on the bearer shares of an issuer, the positions in bearer shares can be entered. As a rule, the issuer processes the entries up to the amount indicated without objection.
Category	A dropdown list displays the different categories of third-party holdings. The field is opened if the "third-party hold" check-box is activated.
Country	A dropdown list contains the countries available. The field is opened if the "third-party holdings" check box is activated.

In the event, the customer reference does not clearly identify the client (several shareholder positions are stored at the same customer reference) a menu is displayed. If not all shareholders can be shown in one window, the user may turn to the next and/or last page by clicking on the respective buttons.

10.2 Verification of re-registration/registration

All registrations/re-registrations entered have to be verified by the CASCADE application system. The verification decides whether an instruction is automatically released for settlement. The instructions for verification must be marked on the list display of all registrations/re-registrations captured.



By clicking on "OK", the user calls up the full display of the respective instruction. He can now verify each data-entry window. Only after having opened and verified all windows, the "verify" button of the basic data window is activated.

If the data entered is incorrect, the user can mark instructions as faulty by clicking on the "invalid" button.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC registration: display: registration data". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- positions bearer shs:
- shareholder no.:
- customer ref.: -
- shareholder name (bank):
- shareholder name (issuer):
- nominal:
- registration date:
- rights sec. code:
- ISIN:
- ex date/start:
- corp. act. date:
- country:
- category:
- third-party hold:
- cancel button:

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260002 A KVCE EI 22-11-18 03:46:55 pm

10.3 Modification/deletion at registration/re-registration

Data entry window for modification:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC registration: modify: registration data". The window contains several input fields and buttons. The fields are organized as follows:

- positions bearer shs: [text input]
- shareholder no.: [text input]
- customer ref.: [dropdown] [text input] - [dropdown] 1234
- shareholder name (bank): [text input]
- shareholder name (issuer): [text input]
- nominal: [text input] 100
- registration date: [text input] 22-11-2018
- rights sec. code: [dropdown] ISIN
- ISIN: [text input] DE000A0Z1JH9
- ex date/start: [text input] 04-07-2018
- corp. act. date: [text input]
- country: [dropdown]
- third-party hold:
- category: [dropdown]

At the bottom of the form area, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KYCE EA 22-11-18 03:33:23 pm".

If the user wishes to modify an instruction, all fields that can be changed are shown to him. After the modification, "process" button takes the user back to the data entry status. After correction, the instruction has to be verified once again.

Data entry window for deletion:

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC registration: reset to delete: registration data". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- positions bearer shs:
- shareholder no.:
- customer ref.: -
- shareholder name (bank):
- shareholder name (issuer):
- nominal:
- registration date:
- rights sec. code:
-
-
- ex date/start:
- corp. act. date:
- country:
- third-party hold
- category:
-
-

The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KWCE EL 22-11-18 03:39:33 pm

Selecting one of the instructions shown in the display takes the user to a window with a “delete” button. By clicking on the button, the instruction is marked as deleted.

10.4 Modification of shareholder data

If required, the stored personal or address data of a holder of registered shares with restricted transferability can be changed via the respective function for modification of the shareholder data of the CASCADE-PC application. Automatically, the issuer will be informed on the changes via its direct EDP link to the system and its shareholders register will be changed accordingly.

The screen for alteration of the shareholder data corresponds to the displays for entry, modification and cancellation, of personal and address data.

The option "shareholder data: multiple change" can only be accessed in the CASCADE-Host environment. Otherwise, the screen functions in "shareholder data: modify selection" remain the same in CASCADE-PC (for example The Security Code field remains mandatory).

The table listing of "shareholder data: modify selection" lists also the security code of the instructions.

10.4.1 Selection

At first, the shareholder data that has to be modified will be selected. The new display corresponds to the menu shown at entry of registration respectively re-registration data.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: shareholders". It features a "selection" section with radio buttons for "display" (selected), "enter", "modification", "verify", and "deletion". Below this is an "additional selection" section with several input fields: "account:" (with a "000" suffix), "securities:" (with a dropdown menu showing "ISIN" and a text input field), and another dropdown menu showing "-- other --". Further down are fields for "instruction no.:", "customer ref.:" (with a dropdown and a hyphen separator), "name:", and "shareholder no.:". At the bottom are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The footer contains version and system information: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCA 22-11-18 03:49:43 pm".

10.4.2 Personal data

If the feedback of the issuer contains shareholder data that is not identical with the data stored in the CASCADE-PC database, an overlay window will be opened showing the personal data kept with the issuer. In this way, the user accesses all data stored.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC shareholder data: enter: personal data". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar is a "customer ref.:" field consisting of two text boxes separated by a hyphen, each with a dropdown arrow. The main area is titled "personal data" and contains the following fields:

- "type of person:" with radio buttons for "legal" (selected) and "natural".
- "name:" with three stacked text input fields.
- "foundation date:" with two stacked text input fields.
- "data legal person" section with:
 - "business sector:" with a dropdown menu.
 - "legal entity identifier:" with a text input field.
 - "registered office:" with a dropdown menu showing "Germany".

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCA AE 22-11-18 03:52:53 pm".

For modification, information, cancellation and verification exactly the same displays are available; thus no separate description of these functions is given. And, just as illustrated above, an overlay window with the information stored at the issuer is displayed, if required.

10.4.3 Address data

The displays for address data are in no way different from the registration respectively re-registration displays. They are not explained here.

The following function codes are available:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection positions instructions". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The dialog is divided into two main sections: "selection" and "additional selection".

The "selection" section contains five radio buttons: "display" (selected), "enter", "modification", "verify", and "deletion".

The "additional selection" section contains several input fields:

- account: [text box] [000]
- security ID: [dropdown menu: ISIN] [text box]
- instruction no.: [text box]
- customer reference: [dropdown menu] [text box] - [dropdown menu] [text box]
- list/query: [dropdown menu: list]
- cycle: [dropdown menu: one-off]

At the bottom of the dialog are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.5 Beta (Build 005) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7907260001 A KVCB 22-11-18 03:56:14 pm".

- Display order (order information);
- Enter order;
- Modify order;
- Verify order;
- Delete order.

Lists and queries may be generated only once on a certain date or regularly. The indicated date is always the value date (that is after RTS processing). The user may enter the requested cycle in several ways:

- One-off;
- Daily ;
- Weekly;
- Monthly;
- Quarterly (positions lists only);
- Half-yearly (position queries only).

Depending on which cycle was selected further data is required:

- If lists or queries are requested only for a certain day, the respective value date has to be entered.
- Daily lists or queries need no further specification and will be generated from the day the instruction is verified.
- Weekly lists or queries require entry of the day: Monday, Tuesday... to Friday.
- Monthly lists can be created for the last trading day of the month (ultimo) or for any day of the month (values "1" to "31").
- If the requested day is a holiday or the weekend, the list is created on the basis of the holding for the preceding business day. Monthly queries will only be created on the last trading day of the month (ultimo)
- Quarterly lists can only be created on ultimo.
- Half-yearly queries can only be created on ultimo.

Instructions may have the following status:

- Entered;
- Verified;
- Marked for deletion;
- Defective;
- In process;
- Executed.

Modification and verification

The entered instructions have to be verified by a second person to follow the four-eye principle. Instructions that were entered incorrectly may be corrected until the instruction is executed for the first time. Instructions with the status "Entered" or "Verified" may be modified. Instructions can be cancelled at anytime.

11 Vaults

CASCADE-PC also offers comprehensive functionality for Vaults transaction processing.

It covers instruction types **16 = Deposit** and **18 = Withdrawal** processing as well as global certificates processing.

As usual, CASCADE-PC replicates the existing host processing by CASCADE and CARAD. The settlement of transactions in CSC securities in central bank money takes place in T2S.

With the usage of the settlement platform T2S the admission process also includes this platform for securities in CSC where CBF is the Issuer CSD. After a new issuance of a security by the issuer in WM the CBF admission process in Wertpapier-Service-System (WSS) follows, if CBF is the Issuer CSD. The admission process includes the setup of securities in WSS followed by the setup in T2S for T2S-eligible securities. The T2S process "Static Data" for securities includes:

- The setup of the security in T2S;
- The setup of CSD links;
- The setup of cross-border links.

As soon as the T2S process "Static Data" for securities is completed successfully, settlement in T2S can take place.

The Vaults transactions processing has been divided in two parts. The module item CBF Vaults allows entering instructions for **New admission/Mark up** of global certificates and **Withdrawal** of global certificates. Additionally, verification, change/deletion and information functionalities for OTC processing cover vaults instructions processing.

The transactions are processed sequentially, as described below:

- **Instruction entry** – New admission/Mark up, Withdrawal
- Unverified instructions – **verification**
- Unverified instructions – **change/deletion**
- Pending instructions – **change/deletion** (mark for modification/mark for reset)

Instructions for security transactions are divided between unverified instructions and pending instructions.

Instructions entered online are initially stored as **unverified instructions**.

After a second person that uses another user ID has checked the instruction (dual control principle), this becomes a **pending instruction**. It is thus deemed for processing by CBF and is processed according to its settlement date.

Instructions that are not verified remain unverified instructions for ten days and are then automatically deleted by the system.

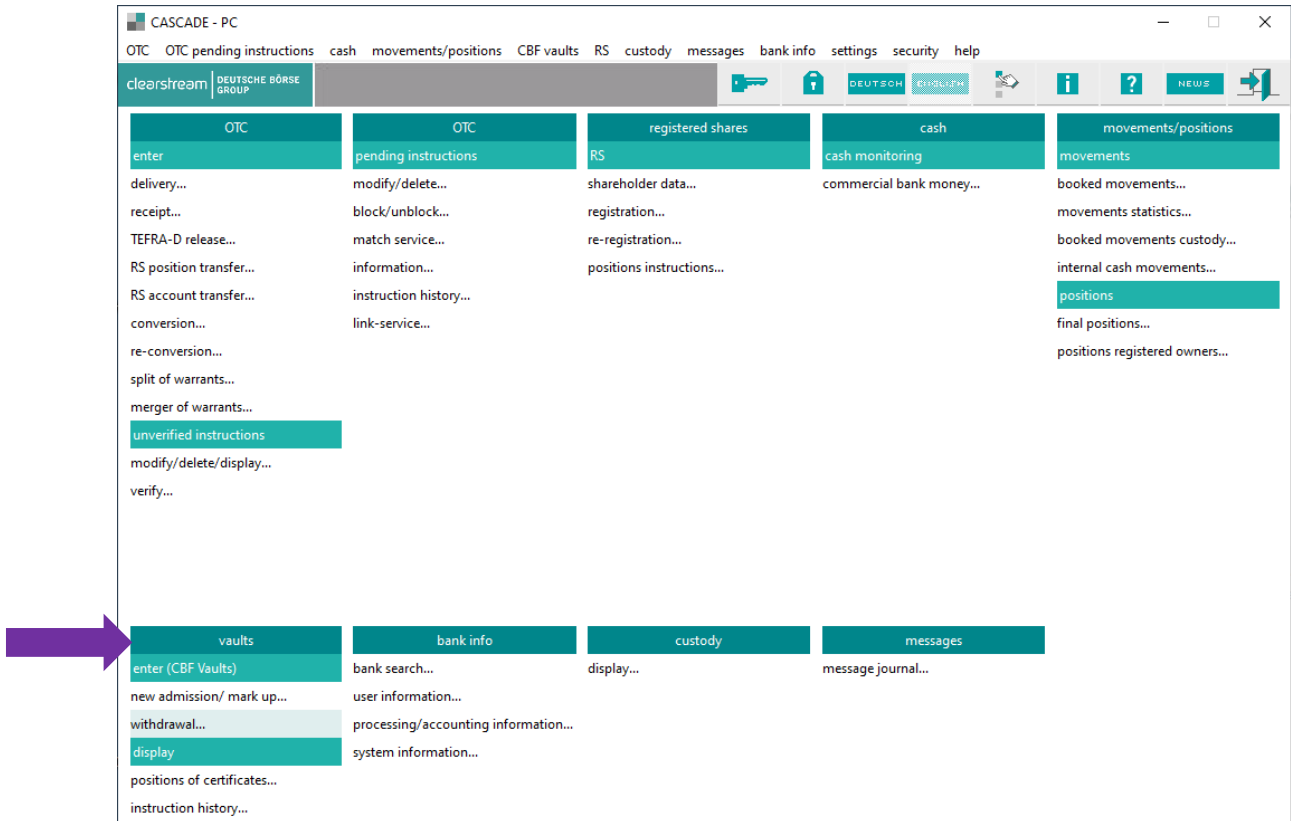
Pending instructions can be modified, deleted or processed.

In addition, CASCADE-PC provides comprehensive information display services, for example, to retrieve information about the processing status of instructions:

- Pending instruction – **information**
- Pending instruction – **instruction history**
- Movements – **booked movements**
- Positions – **final positions**

CASCADE-PC User Manual

After the application has been started and entry of personal security data is complete, the main menu is displayed as follows:



11.1 Instruction entry

Entry is defined as the initial entry of instructions in the entry status.

Clients can currently use the following functions for entering instructions for securities transactions:

- New admission/mark up of global certificates;
- Withdrawal of global certificates.

To simplify entry for a deposit, the functionalities for new admission/increase in the issue volume of global certificates and the mark up of global certificates are consolidated in the function New admission/Mark up of global certificates. It is also possible to combine the new admission of a global certificate with a simultaneous mark up of the certificate.

11.1.1 Directive 2014/91/EU

With 18 March 2016, Germany has put into effect legal updates to cover requirements from Directive 2014/91/EU. These updates will declare investment funds bearer units to be invalid when they are not safekept in collective custody by 31 December 2016. Furthermore, bearer units safekept in collective custody must not be physically delivered out of collective custody as from 1 January 2017.

As a consequence and to avoid any human error and subsequent legal issues for CBF and third parties, CBF has to provide a technical solution to avoid any physical deliveries of individual certificates into and out of collective safe custody (CSC). Reasons are that physical certificates delivered into CSC as from 1 January 2017 would be invalid and therefore not eligible in CSC, physical certificates delivered out of CSC as from 1 January 2017 will become invalid and will not be safekept in the Verwahrstelle's trustee account either (as the new law requires).

Criterion to identify affected ISINs is value 5000 in WSS field GD198B.

Physical deliveries of fixed amount GSCs and/or up-to GSCs into/out of CSC must remain possible, of course.

This technical solution blocks in fact all holdings in funds individual certificates from physical delivery, including relocation ("Umlegung") between CSC and Reserved stock ("Vorratslager").

This technical solution also blocks all holdings in funds individual certificates from relocation ("Umlegung") between CSC and Third Party Vaults ("Fremdtresor").

The technical solution for deposit instructions takes effect since 1 January 2017. Withdrawal instructions are already blocked technically since the CBF Release in November 2016.

11.1.2 Entry New Admission/Mark up (deposit)

The following deposit types can be entered:

- New admission of global certificate;
- New admission of global certificate (up to) ;
- New admission of global certificate validated (up to) ;
- Valuation (mark up).

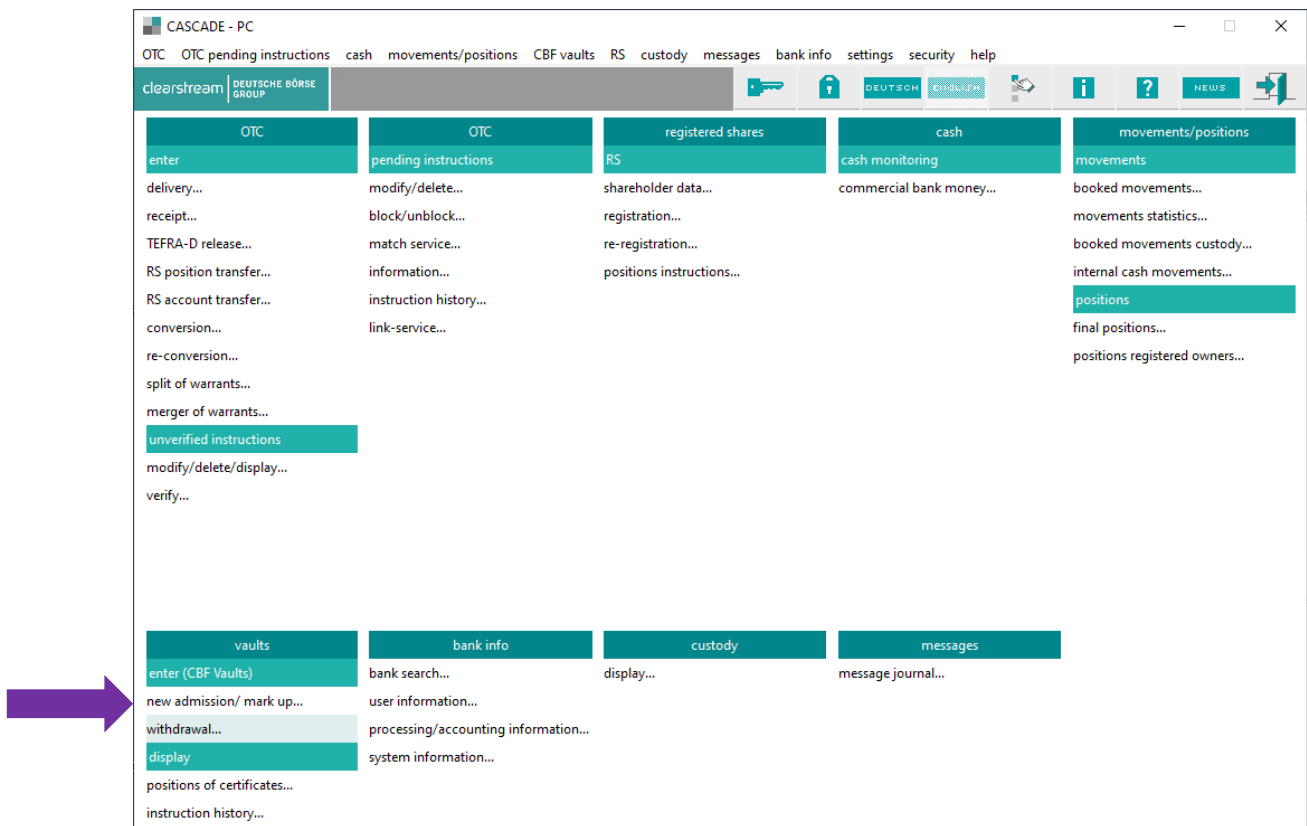
The data for a new admission/mark up for entry in the CASCADE application consists of the following:

- Entry-relevant instruction data (the instructions details page 1);
- Other subsequent data relevant for securities (the instructions details page 2);
- Certificate numbers (the instructions details page 3) for global certificates.

Note:

1. The entry of the deposit instruction is independent of the selected deposit method.
2. For mark ups, the system verifies that the client has only specified the bank (principal account) that is authorised as a co-issuing bank or a paying agent for the class. At the same time, the bank specified by the client must be the party that enters the instruction. The mark ups for which the authorisation check is relevant are determined by the securities groups.
3. For the new admission of a global certificate with simultaneous mark up (deposit type 4), an authorisation check is not made yet with respect to the principle paying agent/co-issuing bank as the principle paying agent or the co-issuing bank may not be determined at this time. However, if this certificate is to be marked up/revaluated again, the authorisation check immediately applies.
4. If a global certificate is deposited at CBF with the deposit type 4 “New admission global certificate with mark up”, then an additional mark up/revaluation is only possible once the instruction has been received by the CBF vault together with the new admission.
5. If it is already foreseeable that, in addition to the new admission of a global certificate, it is to be valued or revaluated several times on the same working day, then we recommend that you perform the new admission in the deposit type “3 – new administration global certificate” with the up-to nominal “0” and that you perform subsequent mark ups in the deposit type “5 – Mark up”. This way all instructions can be entered and booked on the same workday.

The **new deposit instruction** can be entered under **vaults / new admission/ mark up**.



The **entry-relevant instruction data** includes all information required to enter the deposit instruction in CASCADE-PC.

For the **entry fields descriptions** please refer to section [16.3](#) Appendix Generally Applicable Field Descriptions and Formal Checks.

Furthermore, the following combinations of entry data are allowed:

Delivery type	Nominal	Up to nominal	Certificate numbers	Org no	Deposit reason
2	Must be greater than 0	Must be equal to 0	Can be entered	Required field and may not yet be present in CARAD	1,5,8
3	Must be equal to 0	Must be greater than 0	No certificate numbers may be entered	A required field and may not yet be present in CARAD	1,5,8
4	Must be greater than 0, but no more than equal to the Up-To nominal	Must be greater than 0	Can be entered	A required field and may not yet be present in CARAD	1,5,8
5	Must be greater than 0	Must be equal to 0	Can be entered		1

11.1.2.1 Entry New Admission of global certificate validated (up to)

The following **fields** are defined as **mandatory** for a new admission of global certificate validated (up to): instruction number, file no (primanote), credit account, ISIN, nominal value of certificate, deposit type, up-to nominal, delivery type 4, organisation number, deposit reason.

The instruction details page 1 | Entry-relevant instruction data

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement recording". The form contains the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651660
- file no.: 651
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. G5 -TGL BIS-ZU-
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN (dropdown), DE0005035505, ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 1,000
- unit: ST
- security type: coupon sheet and principle separated (dropdown)
- nom. value of certificate: 1,000
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody (dropdown)
- UpTo-nominal: 100,000
- delivery-type: 4 - new admission validated certificate up-to (dropdown)
- organisation number: 124
- position sub-type: (dropdown)
- settlement date: 12-12-2017
- deposit reason: 1 - from issuance (dropdown)
- customer reference: (dropdown) - (dropdown)
- deposit of: (text field)
- address: (text field)
- progress status: 100 deposit was entered completely

At the bottom of the form, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel". A purple arrow points to the "check" button.

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW NV 12-12-17 01:29:52 pm

To control correctness and completeness of an instruction before further processing click the “check” button.

In addition to the entry-relevant information, other data specific to securities must be entered.

The instruction details page 2 – Other subsequent data relevant for securities (optional)

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement recording" with a menu bar containing "window" and "help". The main area contains the following fields and options:

- instruction no.: 651660
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- securities: ISIN dropdown, DE0005035505
- custody option: 9 - Collective custody
- special characteristic: 23 - technical global certificate without coupon sheet (deliverable)
- deviating denomination: no deviant securities description
- next coupon/ LEG: 57
- last coupon/ LEG: 6
- evidence type: 1 - delivery-in of physical certificates
- coporate action: (grouped box containing)
 - rights sec. code: ISIN dropdown, empty field
 - ex date start: empty field
 - date-KE: empty field
- text: empty text area

At the bottom, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom displays: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW NV 12-12-17 01:29:52 pm".

The data already entered must be saved by clicking “OK”. The entry-relevant instruction data page (page 1) will be consequently displayed. After clicking the “Process” button, the instruction will be saved in entry (unverified status).

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement recording' window. The interface includes the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651660
- file no.: 651
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. GS -TGL B15-ZU-
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 1,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 1,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: 100,000 delivery-type: 4 - new admission validated certificate up-to
- organisation number: 124 position sub-type:
- settlement date: 12-12-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance
- customer reference:
- deposit of:
- address:
- progress status: 100 deposit was entered completely

Buttons: process, check

Dialog box: **** question ****
E00057: instruction processed successfully. Clear all input fields?
Yes No

Footer: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IM522 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW NV 12-12-17 01:32:57 pm

If the **new** instruction with the same data will be entered, click “Yes”. To return to the main menu click “No”.

For the subsequent processing (to be accepted by CBF), an instruction needs **to be verified**. If incorrect data is entered the instruction can be **changed** (refer to section 12.3.2) or **deleted** (refer to section 12.3.3).

Dependency checks

For all custody types the denomination entered for the ISIN including the entered litera must be present.

SERIES ISIN/BODY TEXT CERTIFICATE NUMBERS (LITERA)

REPLACEMENT CERTIFICATE/BODY TEXT CERTIFICATE NUMBERS

A replacement certificate can only be entered if at least one certificate number has been entered in the corresponding line.

REPLACEMENT CERTIFICATE/ISIN/BODY TEXT/CERTIFICATE NUMBERS

If the ISIN entered relates to a subscription right, then the replacement certificate mark is not permitted.

11.1.2.2 Valuation (Mark up)

The following fields are defined as **mandatory** for a mark up new admission of global certificate validated (up to):

- instruction number
- file no (primanote)
- credit account
- ISIN
- nominal value of certificate
- deposit type
- delivery type 5
- organisation number
- deposit reason.

The instruction details page 1 – Entry-relevant instruction data

The screenshot displays the 'CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement recording' software interface. The window title is 'CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement recording'. The interface contains various input fields and dropdown menus for entering deposit details. Fields include: instruction no. (651663), file no. (651), sub-instruction type (new admission/ mark up), debit account (7960, 200, CBF TR. B. GS -TGL BIS-ZU-), credit account (7003, 000, DEUTSCHE BANK AG), securities (ISIN, DE0005035505, ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS), nominal (5,000), unit (ST), security type (coupon sheet and principle separated), nom. value of certificate (5,000), deposit type (01 - collective custody), UpTo-nominal, delivery-type (5- valuation), organisation number (10), position sub-type, settlement date (12-12-2017), deposit reason (1 - from issuance), customer reference, deposit of, address, and progress status (100, deposit was entered completely). At the bottom, there are buttons for 'process', 'check', and 'cancel'. The status bar at the bottom shows 'Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW NV 12-12-17 01:36:34 pm'.

Page 2 and 3 are optional only if a deviation address or special certificates numbers are requested.

To control correctness and completeness of an instruction before further processing click the “check” button. After clicking the “process” button, the instruction will be saved in entry (unverified status).

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement recording' window. The interface includes the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: 651663
- file no.: 651
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. GS -TGL BIS-ZU-
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN dropdown, DE0005035505, ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 5,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 5,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: delivery-type: 5- valuation
- organisation number: 10 position sub-type:
- settlement date: 12-12-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance
- customer reference: -
- deposit of:
- address:
- progress status: 100 deposit was entered completely

Buttons: process, check

Dialog box: **** question ****
E00057: instruction processed successfully. Clear all input fields?
Yes No

System tray: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW NV 12-12-17 01:37:59 pm

If the **new** instruction with the same data will be entered, click “Yes”. To return to the main menu click “No”.

For the subsequent processing (to be accepted by CBF) an instruction needs **to be verified**. If incorrect data is entered the instruction be can be **changed** (refer to section 12.3.2) or **deleted** (refer to section 12.3.3).

11.1.3 Entry of instructions for physical withdrawal or revaluation/partial reduction of issues (withdrawal)

The following instructions are entered here:

- Withdrawal of global or individual certificates;
- Mark down;
- Partial reduction;
- Re-valuation agent;
- Re-valuation with reduction
- Reduction of Rahmennominale.

The data for a withdrawal instruction for entry in the CASCADE-PC application consists of the following:

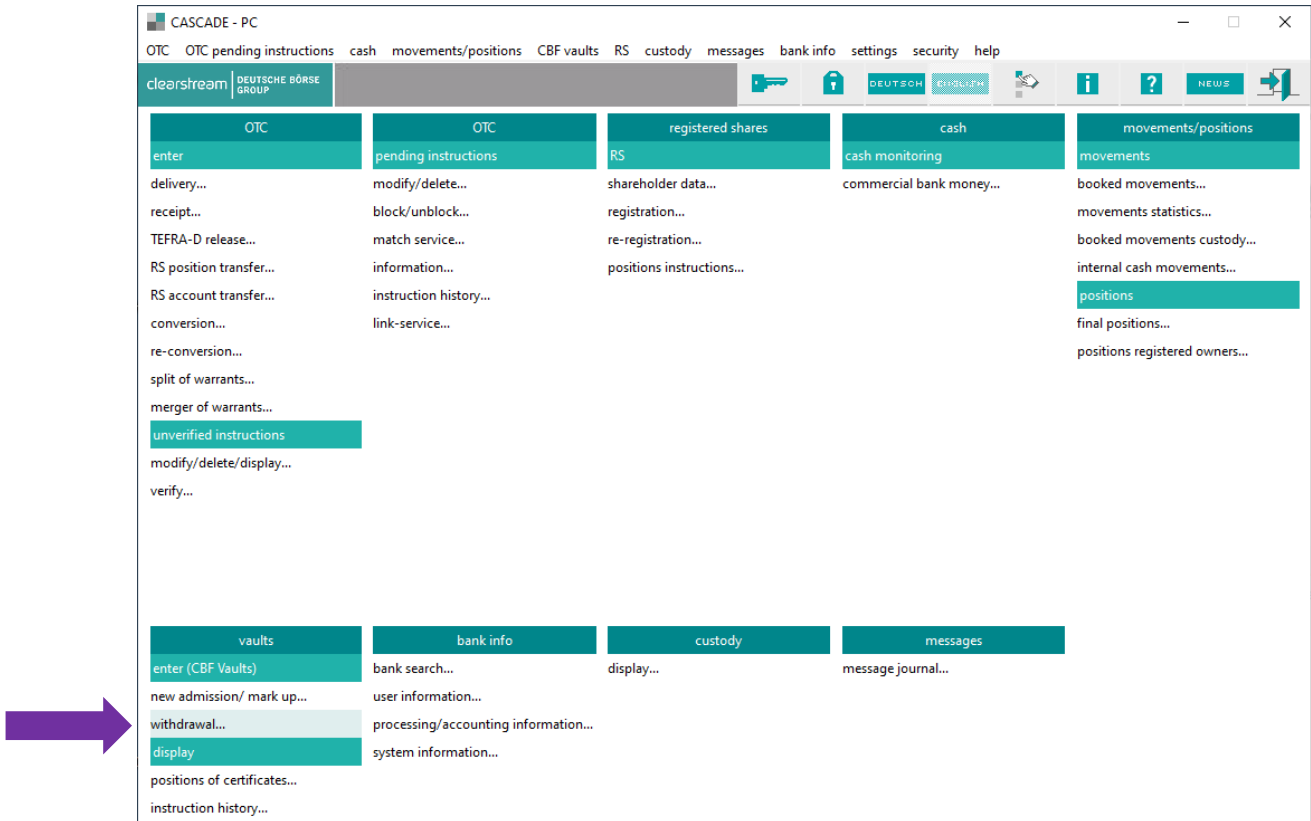
- Entry-relevant instruction data (the instructions details page 1);
- Address data, shipping and insurance data (the instructions details page 2);
- Denomination wishes and text additions for the withdrawal actions 2 and 3 as well as the withdrawal action 1 and global certificate = N (the instructions details page 3);
- Certificate wishes and text additions for the withdrawal action 1 with global certificate mark = Y.

Note:

In the event of revaluation without the withdrawal of the global certificate, the system verifies that the client bank (principal account) is specified that is authorised as a co-issuing bank and/or paying agent for the class in the securities master data in WSS. At the same time, the bank specified by the client must be the party that enters the instruction.

The revaluations without the withdrawal of the global certificate for which the authorisation check is relevant are defined by the securities groups.

The **new withdrawal instruction** can be entered under CBF **Vaults menu/ Withdrawal**.



The **entry-relevant instruction** data includes all information required to enter the withdrawal instruction in CASCADE-PC.

11.1.3.1 Mark down

The following fields are defined as **mandatory** for a mark down: file no (primanote), instruction number, debit account, ISIN, nominal, nominal value of certificate, global certificates Yes, withdrawal of global certificate Yes, withdrawal act 2.

The instruction details page 1 – Entry-relevant instruction data

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter' window. It features a grid of input fields and dropdown menus. The 'instruction no.' is 651664, 'file no.' is 651, and 'deposit type' is '01 - collective custody'. The 'debit account' is '7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG' and the 'credit account' is '7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS'. The 'securities' field is set to 'ISIN DE0008474040 DWS INTER-RENTA LD'. The 'nominal' is '5,000' and the 'unit' is 'ST'. The 'nom. value of certificate' is '5,000'. The 'settlement date' is '12-12-2017'. The 'global certificate' is set to 'yes'. The 'withdrawal act' is '2 - mark down'. The 'progress status' is '100 withdrawal is input completely'. At the bottom, there are three buttons: 'process', 'check', and 'cancel'. The status bar at the bottom indicates 'Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW AL 12-12-17 01:49:32 pm'.

Dependency checks

Refer to Entry of instructions for physical withdrawal.

WITHDRAWAL ACTION

This field is always preset to the value "1" (withdrawal). In the event of revaluation instructions, the value "2" is to be entered in the "WITHDRAWAL ACTION" field. In general, the "GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N)" field must be changed to "Y" for a revaluation instruction. Furthermore, the withdrawal of a global certificate can occur through the entry of "Y" in the "WITHDRAWAL GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N)" field.

The instruction details page 2 – Address data and shipping (optional)

The screenshot shows a Windows dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter". The dialog contains several input fields and dropdown menus for entering address and shipping information. The fields are organized into sections: "instruction no.:", "securities:", "name:", "street:", "country/postal code/place:", "personal address", "address number:", "BIC-CODE:", "name:", "name affix:", "street:", "country/postal code/place:", "loc. code major customer:", "postal code/PO box:", and "info text:". The "personal address" section is highlighted with a yellow background. The "info text" section has three empty text boxes. At the bottom, there are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The Windows taskbar at the bottom shows the system tray with icons for help, window, and help, and the status bar displays "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEV AL 12-12-17 01:49:32 pm".

instruction no.:	651664	deposit type:	01 - collective custody
securities:	ISIN	DE0008474040	
name:			
street:			
country/postal code/place:			
personal address			
address number:		BIC-CODE:	
name:	DEUTSCHE BANK AG TSP SECURITIES	loc. code major customer:	60262
name affix:		postal code/PO box:	
street:	ALFRED-HERRHAUSEN-ALLEE 16-24		
country/postal code/place:	D	65760	ESCHBORN
info text:			

The entry is necessary in case of requested deviation address securities delivery. The deviating address for dispatch needs to be marked "Yes" (The instruction details – page 1).

The instruction details page 3 – denomination wishes (optional)

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter". The window contains several input fields and a table. The fields are: instruction no. (651664), deposit type (01 - collective custody), securities (ISIN dropdown with DE0008474040), organisation number, collective number, total nominal value (5,000), and total nominal value (sum). Below these is a table with columns for number/literal and denomination. At the bottom, there are text input fields and "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The status bar at the bottom shows "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEV AL 12-12-17 01:49:32 pm".

number/literal	denomination	number/literal	denomination

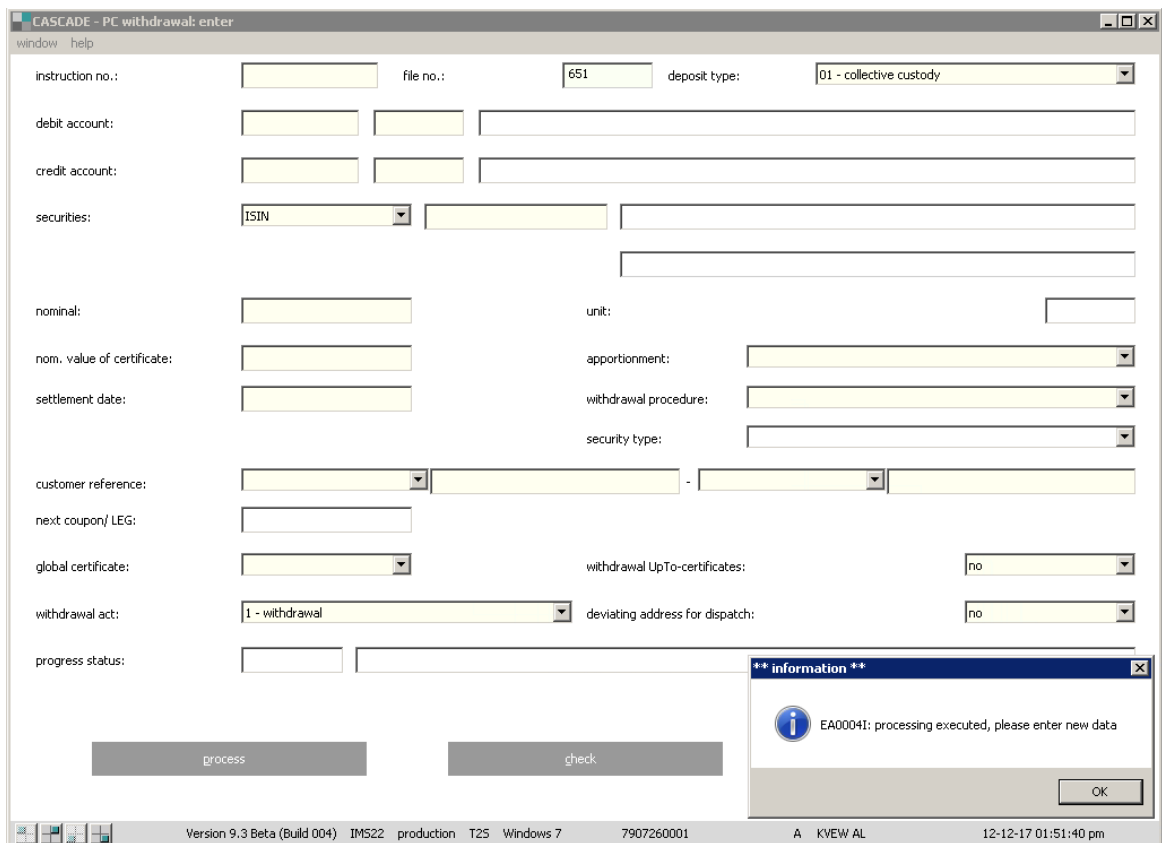
If certificates physically represent the withdrawal, the person entering the instruction can skip this screen without making any entries.

Otherwise, the entries are considered a desired specification for the subsequent certificate allocation.

The following entry options exist for the person entering the instruction:

- Entry of an individual organisation or collective number if exactly one collective certificate to be specifically identified is to be withdrawn.
Or alternatively
- Entry of an interval (from-to) for organisation or collective numbers if only the collective certificates stored within this restriction (including starting and end number) are to be considered in automatic allocation.
Or alternatively
- Entry of 1 to 15 different certificate nominals and the number of collective certificates, which are to be withdrawn with the respective nominal.
And/or
- As all instruction data has been validly entered, the instruction can be saved by clicking "OK".

After clicking on the "process" button, the instruction will be saved in entry (unverified status).



For the subsequent processing (to be accepted by CBF), instruction needs **to be verified**. If incorrect data is entered the instruction can be **changed** (refer to section 12.3.2) or **deleted** (refer to section 12.3.3).

11.1.3.2 Reduction of Up to – certificate nominal

The following fields are defined as **mandatory** for a reduction of nominal value of a certificate:

- file no (primanote);
- instruction number;
- debit account;
- ISIN;
- nominal;
- nominal value of certificate;
- global certificates Yes;
- withdrawal of global certificate No;
- withdrawal act “6”.

The instruction details page 1 – Entry-relevant instruction data

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter' window. The form contains the following fields and values:

instruction no.:	651001	file no.:	651	deposit type:	01 - collective custody
debit account:	7003 000	DEUTSCHE BANK AG			
credit account:	7960 000	CBF TRESORBESTAND GS			
securities:	ISIN	DE000A0BLTE5	BAYVK R1-FONDS		
nominal:	0	unit:	ST		
nom. value of certificate:	0	apportionment:			
settlement date:	31-05-2019	withdrawal procedure:			
customer reference:		security type:			
next coupon/ LEG:					
global certificate:	yes	withdrawal UpTo-certificates:	no		
withdrawal act:	6 - reduced nominal value of up-to certificate	deviating address for dispatch:	no		
progress status:	10	withdrawal is not input completely			

Buttons: process, check, cancel

Footer: Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T25 Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KVEW AL 31-05-19 02:20:25 pm

Dependency checks

NOMINAL

For REDUCED NOMINAL VALUE OF UP TO-CERTIFICATE the instruction nominal must be “0”.

NOMINAL VAULE OF CERTIFICATE

For REDUCED NOMINAL VALUE OF UP TO-CERTIFICATE the instruction nominal value of certificate must be “0”.

SETTLEMENT DATE

Entry of SETTLEMENT DATE in the future is not possible.

WITHDRAWAL ACTION

WITHDRAWAL ACTION = "6 Reduction of up-to nominal" is only valid with GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N) = "Y" and WITDRAWAL UP TO – CERTIFICATE (Y/N) = „N“.

This withdrawal action is only valid for deposit type "1".

The instruction details page 2 – Address data and shipping (optional)

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter". The form contains the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651001
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- securities: ISIN DE000A0BLTE5
- name: (empty)
- street: (empty)
- country/postal code/place: (empty)
- personal address section:
 - address number: (empty)
 - BIC-CODE: (empty)
 - name: DEUTSCHE BANK AG TSP SECURITIES
 - loc.code major customer: 60262
 - name affix: (empty)
 - postal code/PO box: (empty)
 - street: ALFRED-HERRHAUSEN-ALLEE 16-24
 - country/postal code/place: DE 65760 ESCHBORN
- info text: (empty)

At the bottom of the form are two buttons: "gk" and "cancel". The Windows taskbar at the bottom shows "Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T25 Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KVEW AL 31-05-19 02:20:25 pm".

The entry is necessary in case of requested deviation address securities delivery. The deviating address for dispatch needs to be marked "Yes" (The instruction details – page 1).

The instruction details page 3 – denomination wishes (optional)

The following entry fields are mandatory for entering the instruction:

- Entry of an “ORGANISATION” or “COLLECTIVE NUMBER” of certificate to be reduced;
- Entry of “REDUCED NOMINAL VALUE OF UP TO CERTIFICATE.” This field represents the value which the “NOMINAL VALUE OF CERTIFICATE” has to be reduced by.
- As all instruction data has been validly entered, the instruction can be saved by clicking “OK”.

After clicking on the “process” button, the instruction will be saved in entry (unverified status).

For the subsequent processing (to be accepted by CBF), instruction needs **to be verified**. If incorrect data is entered, the instruction can be **changed** (refer to section 12.3.2) or **deleted** (refer to section 12.3.3).

Note:

1. It is possible to reduce the "NOMINAL VALUE OF CERTIFICATE" without mark down for CARAD holdings in CSC depository ("HLG01 GS-Verwahrung").
2. Entering the withdrawal type "6" instruction the system verifies that the client has only specified the bank (principal account) that is authorised as a co-issuing bank or a paying agent for the class. At the same time, the bank specified by the client must be the party that enters the instruction.
3. For Withdrawal Action = "6 REDUCED NOMINAL VALUE OF CERTIFICATE", the instruction nominal must be "0". Due to instruction nominal = "0" this instruction is not T2S relevant.
4. TEFRA D: For reduction of up-to nominal instructions, this must be done for a "pair" of certificates. It means that the "Up-to nominal" of both the temporary and final up-to certificate must be reduced by the same value. Therefore two separate instructions have to be created, one for each up-to certificate.
5. For TEFRA D securities, no certificate numbers are allowed. The fields "number" (litera) and "denomination" must remain empty.

11.1.3.3 Withdrawal of physical certificates

The following fields are defined as **mandatory** for a mark down: file no (primanote), instruction number, debit account, ISIN, nominal, nominal value of certificate, global certificates, withdrawal of global certificate, withdrawal.

Withdrawal action field is always preset to the value "1" (withdrawal). This indicator means that a physical withdrawal of certificates is to take place. Furthermore, the withdrawal of a global certificate can occur through the entry of "Y" in the "WITHDRAWAL GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N)" field.

The instruction details page 1 – Entry-relevant instruction data

instruction no.:	651665	file no.:	651	deposit type:	01 - collective custody
debit account:	7003 000	DEUTSCHE BANK AG			
credit account:	7960 000	CBF TRESORBESTAND GS			
securities:	ISIN	DE0005035505	ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS		
nominal:	10	unit:	ST		
nom. value of certificate:	10	apportionment:			
settlement date:	12-12-2017	withdrawal procedure:			
customer reference:					
next coupon/ LEG:	57	security type:	coupon sheet and principle separated		
global certificate:	no	withdrawal UpTo-certificates:	no		
withdrawal act:	1 - withdrawal	deviating address for dispatch:	no		
progress status:	100	withdrawal is input completely			

process check cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW AL 12-12-17 02:03:09 pm

Dependency checks

DEBIT/CREDIT ACCOUNT

The debit account and credit account may not be identical.

If the debit account is a special processing client account, then the credit account must also be a special processing vault account.

DEBIT ACCOUNT/USER ID

The first four digits of the bank number entered must correspond to the first four digits of the USER ID. Branches can only make entries benefiting the head office (except if the credit account is an account type for "Creating partial positions, only client positions").

CREDIT ACCOUNT/DEBIT ACCOUNT/DEPOSIT TYPE

If the debit account is a client account from the area buffer storage for funds, then the credit account must correspond to it and only buffer storage bank is possible as a deposit type (CSC).

NOMINAL/NOM CERTIFICATE

If the field nominal certificate is edited, the nominal field is determined and edited by the system. If entries have been made in both fields, the content is verified by the system.

REALLOCATION/ISIN/DEBIT ACCOUNT

If the DEBIT ACCOUNT entered, is an account balance in funds in the buffer storage, then the reallocation reasons.

- 1 buffer storage in CSC
- 2 CSC in buffer storage

may be specified. The entry of the corresponding receipt postings is performed automatically.

GLOBAL CERTIFICATE

For global certificate "Y" (YES), the uniqueness of the global certificate is checked against CARAD.

The instruction details page 2 – Address data, shipping and insurance data

The screenshot shows a software dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter". The dialog contains several input fields for address and personal information. The "instruction no." is 651665 and the "deposit type" is "01 - collective custody". The "securities" field is set to "ISIN" with the value "DE0005035505". The "personal address" section includes fields for "address number", "BIC-CODE", "name" (DEUTSCHE BANK AG TSP SECURITIES), "loc. code major customer" (60262), "name affix", "postal code/PO box", "street" (ALFRED-HERRHAUSEN-ALLEE 16-24), and "country/postal code/place" (D, 65760, ESCHBORN). There are also three empty "info text" lines and "ok" and "cancel" buttons at the bottom. The status bar at the bottom indicates "Version 9.3 Beta (build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW AL 12-12-17 02:03:09 pm".

instruction no.:	651665	deposit type:	01 - collective custody
securities:	ISIN	DE0005035505	
name:			
street:			
country/postal code/place:			
personal address			
address number:		BIC-CODE:	
name:	DEUTSCHE BANK AG TSP SECURITIES	loc. code major customer:	60262
name affix:		postal code/PO box:	
street:	ALFRED-HERRHAUSEN-ALLEE 16-24		
country/postal code/place:	D	65760	ESCHBORN
info text:			
ok		cancel	

Version 9.3 Beta (build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW AL 12-12-17 02:03:09 pm

The instruction details page 3 – Denomination wishes and text additions

The CBF client may specify the denomination in which the withdrawal is to be handled in this subsequent screen. All entries of the bank on this screen are optional entries and are interpreted as the desired specification for subsequent certificate allocation from CARAD.

Individual certificates

Possible entries for individual certificates:

LIT (litera) is an input field for individual certificates and is verified when the denomination for the ISIN is entered.

NUMBER OF CERTIFICATES*DENOMINATION (input of max. 10 denomination values possible).

The system checks to make sure the information does not exceed the nominal amount of the instruction. At the same time, the denominations stored in CARAD are directly checked against the desired denominations.

The person entering the instruction can enter information for the certificate manager in the free-form field.

Global certificates

Possible entries for global certificates:

LIT (Litera) is merely a display field with global certificates and is preset to "*" when entering the denomination. This means that the allocation of certificate numbers with or without litera occurs expressly according to the LIFO principle.

There are no changes with respect to the input options for the remaining screen fields. All entries of the bank on this screen are optional entries and are interpreted as the desired specification for subsequent allocation.

As a result, the client can

- enter a certain organisation number/collective number if the revaluation relates exactly to this global certificate
and also
- specify a combination of a number of certificate numbers per denomination (no more than 10)
and/or
- enter information for the certificate manager in the free-format text field.

If the organisation/collective number is not entered, a check is made to determine whether the sum of the valued positions of all global certificates kept in CARAD for the class is greater than or equal to the instruction nominal (nominal certificate).

If an organisation/collective number is entered, a check is made to determine whether a global certificate with exactly this organisation/collective number exists in CARAD and whether its valued positions are greater than or equal to the nominal certificate of the instruction.

Such checks ensure, at least at the time of the instruction entry, that sufficiently valued positions exist for this revaluation instruction. Entries are only permitted in the denomination wish table if an organisation/collective number has also been specified. Furthermore, a check is made to ensure that the sum of the resulting partial amounts from the number of certificates * denomination corresponds with the nominal certificate. A check against the denominations of the global certificate deposited with the CARAD position does not occur in the process.

To finish the instruction processing click the “processing” button.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter' window. The form includes the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.: [text box]
- file no.: 651
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- debit account: [text box]
- credit account: [text box]
- securities: ISIN [text box]
- nominal: [text box]
- unit: [text box]
- nom. value of certificate: [text box]
- apportionment: [dropdown menu]
- settlement date: [text box]
- withdrawal procedure: [dropdown menu]
- security type: [dropdown menu]
- customer reference: [text box]
- next coupon/ LEG: [text box]
- global certificate: [dropdown menu]
- withdrawal UpTo-certificates: no
- withdrawal act: 1 - withdrawal
- deviating address for dispatch: no
- progress status: [text box]

Buttons: process, check

Information dialog: EA00041: processing executed, please enter new data

System tray: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEW AL 12-12-17 02:09:29 pm

11.1.3.4 Withdrawal – internal transfer between vaults segments

The following fields are defined as **mandatory** for a mark down: file no (primanote), instruction number, deposit type, debit account, ISIN, nominal, nominal value of certificate, apportionment (vault the securities to be transferred to), global certificates, withdrawal of global certificate, withdrawal.

The instruction details page 1 – Entry-relevant instruction data

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: enter" with a menu bar containing "window" and "help". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:** 1234576
- file no.:** (empty)
- deposit type:** 01 - collective custody
- debit account:** (empty)
- credit account:** 7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS
- securities:** German sec. code: 847102, FONDIS A
- ISIN:** DE0008471020
- nominal:** 100
- unit:** ST
- nom. value of certificate:** 100
- apportionment:** 02 - collective safe custody in supply
- settlement date:** 25-04-2013
- withdrawal procedure:** (empty)
- security type:** coupon sheet and principle separated
- customer reference:** (empty)
- next coupon/ LEG:** (empty)
- global certificate:** no
- withdrawal UpTo-certificates:** no
- withdrawal act:** 1 - withdrawal
- deviating address for dispatch:** no
- progress status:** 100 withdrawal is input completely

At the bottom of the window, there are three buttons: "process", "check", and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom displays: "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)", "7907230003", "A KVEW AL", and "25-04-13 12:37:19 pm".

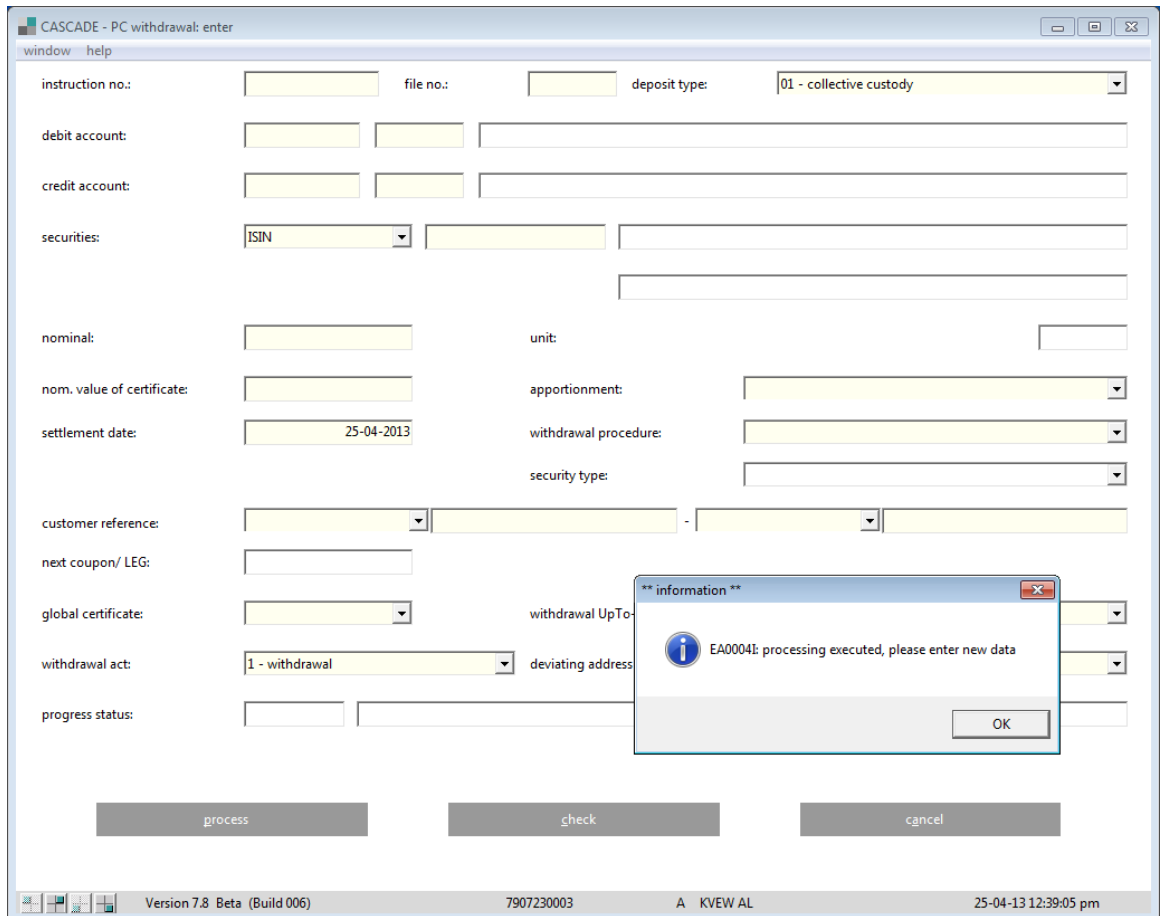
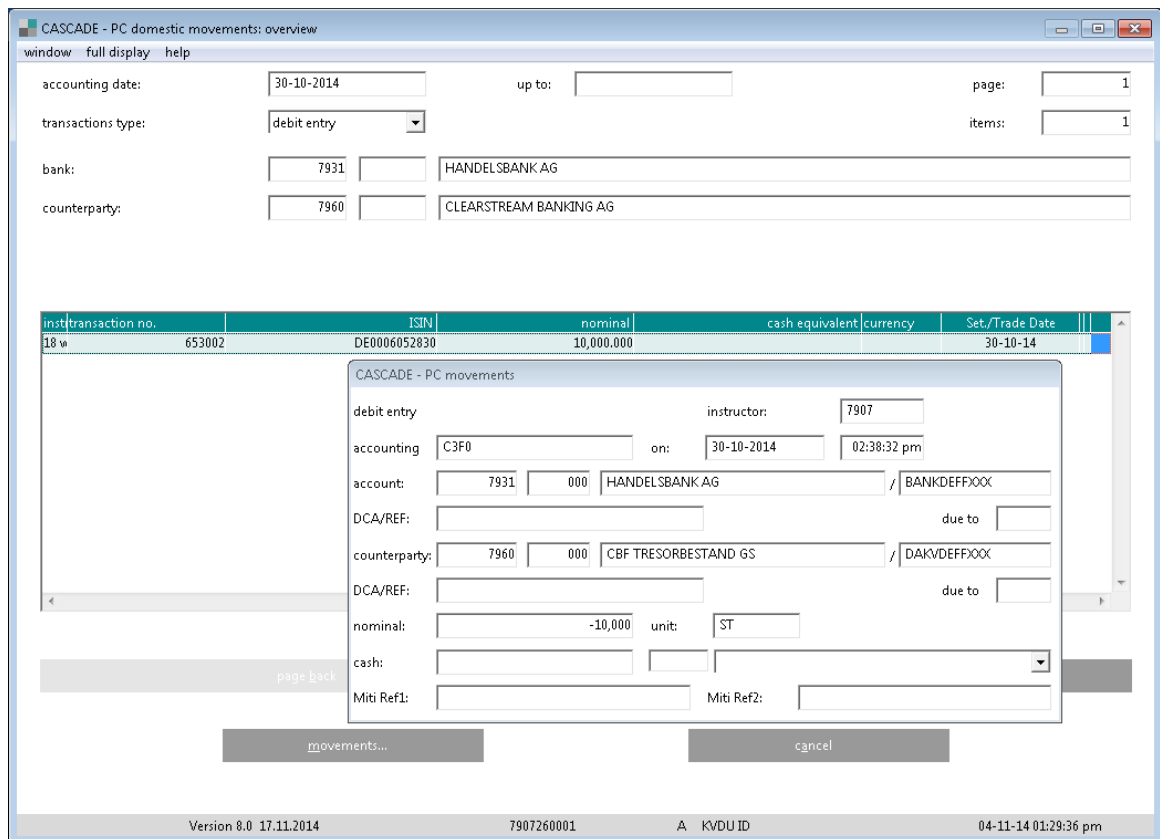


Fig. 12.21 withdrawal – internal transfer between vaults segments (2/2)

The securities transfer confirmation can be found in **Movements / Booked movements**.



The matching instruction is generated automatically.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC domestic movements: overview' window. At the top, there are input fields for 'accounting date' (30-10-2014), 'up to', 'page' (1), 'transactions type' (credit entry), and 'items' (1). Below this, the 'bank' is set to '7960 CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG'. A table below shows transaction details:

counterparty	inst	transaction no.	ISIN	nominal	cash equivalent	currency	Set./Trade Date
7931	18 v	653002	DE0006052830	10,000.000			30-10-14

A modal dialog box titled 'CASCADE - PC movements' is open, showing details for a credit entry. The dialog includes fields for 'instructor' (7907), 'accounting' (C3F0), 'on' (30-10-2014 02:38:32 pm), 'account' (7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS / DAKVDEFFXXX), 'DCA/REF', 'counterparty' (7931 000 HANDELSBANK AG / BANKDEFFXXX), 'DCA/REF', 'nominal' (10,000), 'unit' (ST), 'cash', 'Miti Ref1', and 'Miti Ref2'. Buttons for 'movements...' and 'cancel' are at the bottom of the dialog.

At the bottom of the main window, the status bar shows 'Version 8.0 17.11.2014', '7907260001', 'A KVDUI D', and '04-11-14 01:40:36 pm'.

11.1.4 Validations in mark-up/mark-down instructions (AA16 / AA18) related to T2S

CBF already provides static data of ISINs in T2S on a daily basis since T2S Wave 1 (22 July 2015). Due to the implementation of new EDT services in production prior to the migration of CBF to T2S, Vaults processing of mark-up/mark-down instructions (AA16 / AA18) has been enhanced.

The following validations apply and have to be valid for T2S-relevant instructions for “Laufende Einlieferung” und “Neuzulassung” (incl. “Neuzulassung” with nominal = 0):

- The security has to be active in T2S (with the exception of Maltese securities).
- For the following fields in WSS-WM und WSS-CBF, to ensure the quality of the static data, the field must be identical in both systems if filled in one system:
 - “kleinste Stückelung”;
 - “Mindestbetrag”;
 - “Inkrement”;
 - “Verwahrart”.
- If T2S confirmed values are available, the nominal is validated against these values. If not and the ISIN is available in WSS-CBF, the validation is against “kleinste Stückelung” and “kleinste übertragbare Einheit” in WSS-CBF, otherwise against “kleinste Stückelung” and “kleinste übertragbare Einheit” in WSS-WM.
- Nominal \geq “T2S confirmed Minimum Denomination”
- Nominal must be dividable by “T2S confirmed Multiple Quantity” without remainder.
- The value of the field “Einheit Effektennotiz” must be equal to the field “T2S confirmed Quantity Type” in WSS-CBF.
- Instructions that are transferred to T2S will be rejected as long as no active Security CSD Issuer Link exists with CBF as Issuer CSD.
- If the settlement date of the instruction is before the date the security was created in T2S or after the maturity date of the security, the instruction is rejected by T2S.
- If the settlement date of the instruction is before the “ValidFrom” date or after the “ValidTo” date of the Security CSD Link the instruction is rejected by T2S.
- The settlement date has to be a business day.

The following validations apply and have to be valid for T2S-relevant instructions for “Valutierung” and securities withdrawals as well as for instructions that are not T2S-relevant:

- If T2S confirmed values are available, the nominal is validated against these values. If not and the ISIN is available in WSS-CBF, the validation is against “kleinste Stückelung” and “kleinste übertragbare Einheit” in WSS-CBF, otherwise against “kleinste Stückelung” and “kleinste übertragbare Einheit” in WSS-WM.
- The settlement date has to be a business day.

Negative validations will cause the following error messages:

Validation	Error message
Deviation „Kleinste Stückelung“	Stammdatendiskrepanz WM-CBF: -Kleinste Stückelung
Deviation „Mindestbetrag“	Stammdatendiskrepanz WM-CBF: -Mindestbetrag
Deviation „Inkrement“	Stammdatendiskrepanz WM-CBF: -Inkrement
Deviation „Verwahrart“	Stammdatendiskrepanz WM-CBF: -Verwahrart
Validation „T2S confirmed Minimum Denomination“	NOM-URK darf nicht kleiner als der Mindestbetrag aus CBF-WSS sein
Validation „T2S confirmed Multiple Quantity“	NOM-URK nicht durch kleinstes Vielfaches aus CBF-WSS darstellbar
Validation „T2S confirmed Quantity Type“	Stammdaten-Diskrepanz WM-CBF: - Einheit Effektennotiz
Validation „Rahmennominale“	RAHMENNOMINALE darf nicht kleiner dem Mindestbetrag in CBF-WSS sein RAHMENNOMINALE nicht durch kl. Vielfache aus CBF-WSS darstellbar
Validation „Security CSD Link“	Kein aktiver Security CSD Issuer Link verfügbar
Validation „Settlement Date vs ValidFrom Date ISIN“	Settlement-Day muss innerhalb Gültigkeitsfrist ISIN aus CBF-WSS liegen
Validation „Settlement Date vs ValidFrom Date Security CSD Link“	Settlement-Day muss innerhalb Gültigkeitsfrist CSD Link liegen
Validation Settlement Date vs T2S Business Day	Settlement-Day ist kein T2S- / T2S-Business-Day
Validation „Kleinste Stückelung“ (old WM validation)	NOM-URK muss ein Vielfaches der kleinsten Stückelung sein
Validation „kleinste übertragbare Einheit“ (old WM validation)	NOM-URK muss ein Vielfaches d. kl. Übertragbaren Einh. Sein
ISIN in CBF available and exists on T2S	Gattung (noch) nicht in CBF-WSS hinterlegt Gattung ist (noch) nicht auf T2S vorhanden Gattung in CBF-WSS gelöscht

11.1.5 Instruction templates

For more instructions with the majority of same input data, the instructions can be uploaded via template by clicking "window – load template". After this, a pre-filled instruction, "the Template" is uploaded which can be adjusted before processing the instruction. There can also be more templates prepared for the future usage – by filling an instruction and going to "window – save as a template". After the template was saved, it appears in the list and can be used when entering a new transaction via template.

For the respective templates for deposit and withdrawal instructions, please refer to section 4.1.10.

11.2 TEFRA D bonds

11.2.1 Depositing the certificates

TEFRA D bonds are unique in that these securities may not be purchased by U.S. residents in the first 40 days following their issue. For this reason, the issuance is first transferred to a blocked account xxxx/671 and then has to be approved for "non-US resident clients" and transferred to the corresponding main account of the bank.

To render this process on the system as well, the issuer must deposit two up-to nominals in the instruction type 16 (new admission up-to nominal). Both up-to nominals contain the global nominal amounts = issue volume.

The first (preliminary) global certificate receives deposit type 4= NEW ADMISSION UP-TO NOMINAL VA, the odd organisation number with the deposit reason 11 ("Sperre Temp.URK TD"). The preliminary RU must be issued with Issued Nominal = Issuance Nominal and Nominal Up/To = Issuance Nominal.

The second (final) global certificate receives deposit type 3 = NEW ADMISSION UP-TO NOMINAL, the even organisation number and is deposited with the deposit reason = 12 ("Sperre Final.URK TD. The final RU must be issued with Issued Nominal = "0" and Nominal Up/To = Issuance Nominal.

Both Rus must be prevented for Mark Up/Mark Down via AA16/AA18.

11.2.2 Reallocation after the end of the TEFRA D period

At the end of the TEFRA D period (Tefra D-Frist-Ende + 3 BA) the Released Nominal of the temporary RU will be transferred automatically to the final RU. There will be no change of the amount on any client account, but the transfer will be reflected with the amount "0" in CASCADE.

After the processing of the relocation the temporary RU represents Issued Nominal = Not-Released Nominal and Nominal Up/To = Issuance Nominal.

The final RU represents Issued Nominal = Released Nominal and Nominal Up/To = Issuance Nominal.

Both Rus will still be blocked for Mark Up/Mark Down via AA16/AA18 instruction.

11.3 Change/deletion (EB)

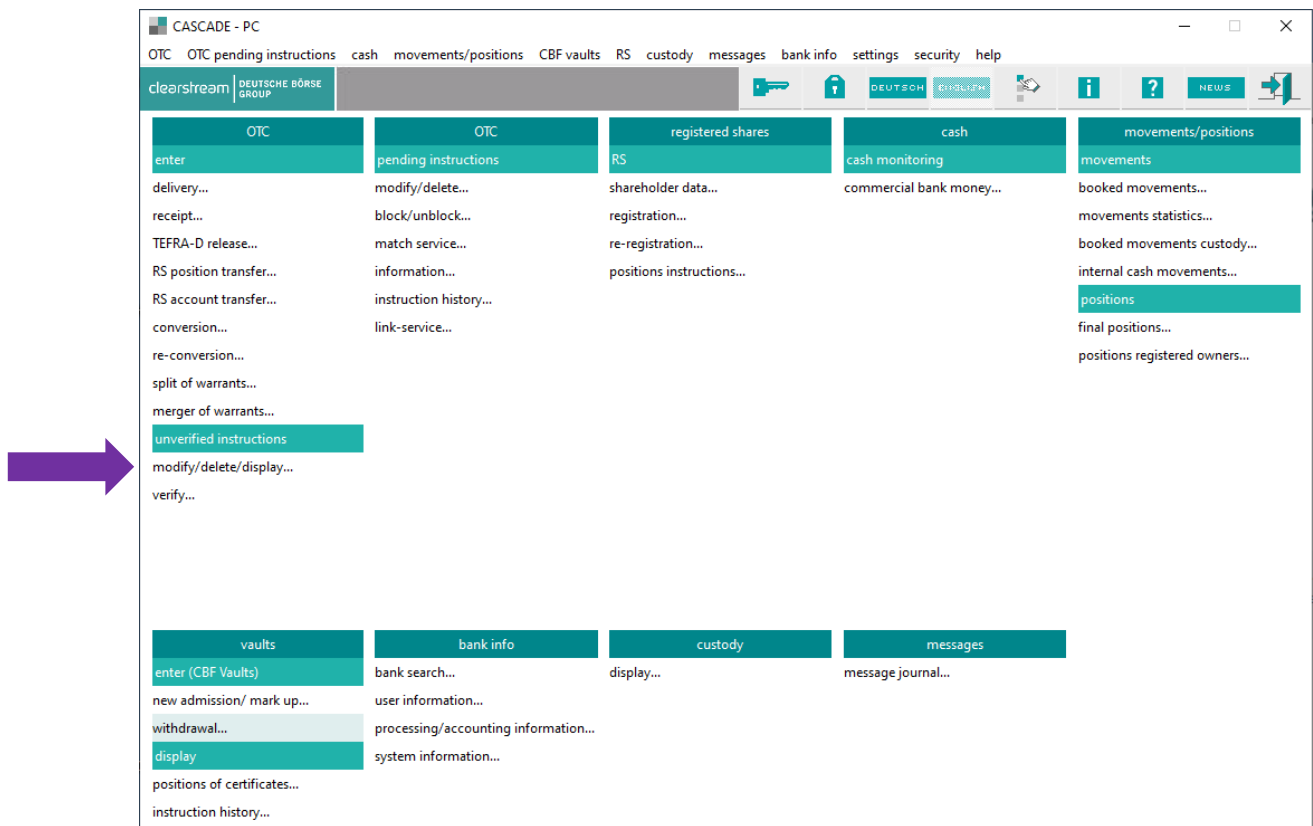
The user needs to know the instruction number to be changed. An instruction can only be edited in the entry status if it has not yet been checked during the verification. Existing data can be edited by overwriting the old field content and new data can be added by completing blank fields.

With this process, instructions generated and marked for editing in the instructions status are subsequently processed in the entry status (refer to section 12.1).

The following instructions can be edited:

- An instruction that has not yet been verified;
- An instruction generated for editing from the instruction status.

The edit functionality to show the instruction details can be retrieved under **unverified instructions / modify/delete/display**.



11.3.1 Modification menu

The following selections are possible:

- All instructions
Displays all instructions of new admission and withdrawal.
- All invalid instructions
Displays all erroneous instructions.
- Instruction number
Only one instruction will be displayed. All orders of the file number will be displayed
- File number
Displays all instructions of the file number.
- Debit Bank
Displays all instructions of the debit bank.
- Credit Bank
Displays all instructions of the credit bank.

The entry of an ISIN for all function codes is also permitted and restricts the instructions for processing to a specific class.

11.3.2 Modification – editing instructions via the instruction number

Example select: Unverified Instructions / instruction number

The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: modify / delete/display: unverified instructions". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main content area is divided into two sections: "selection" and "additional selection".

selection

- all instructions
- all invalid instructions
- instruction no.
- file no.
- debit bank
- credit bank

Below the selection options, there are two input fields:

instruction no.: instructor:

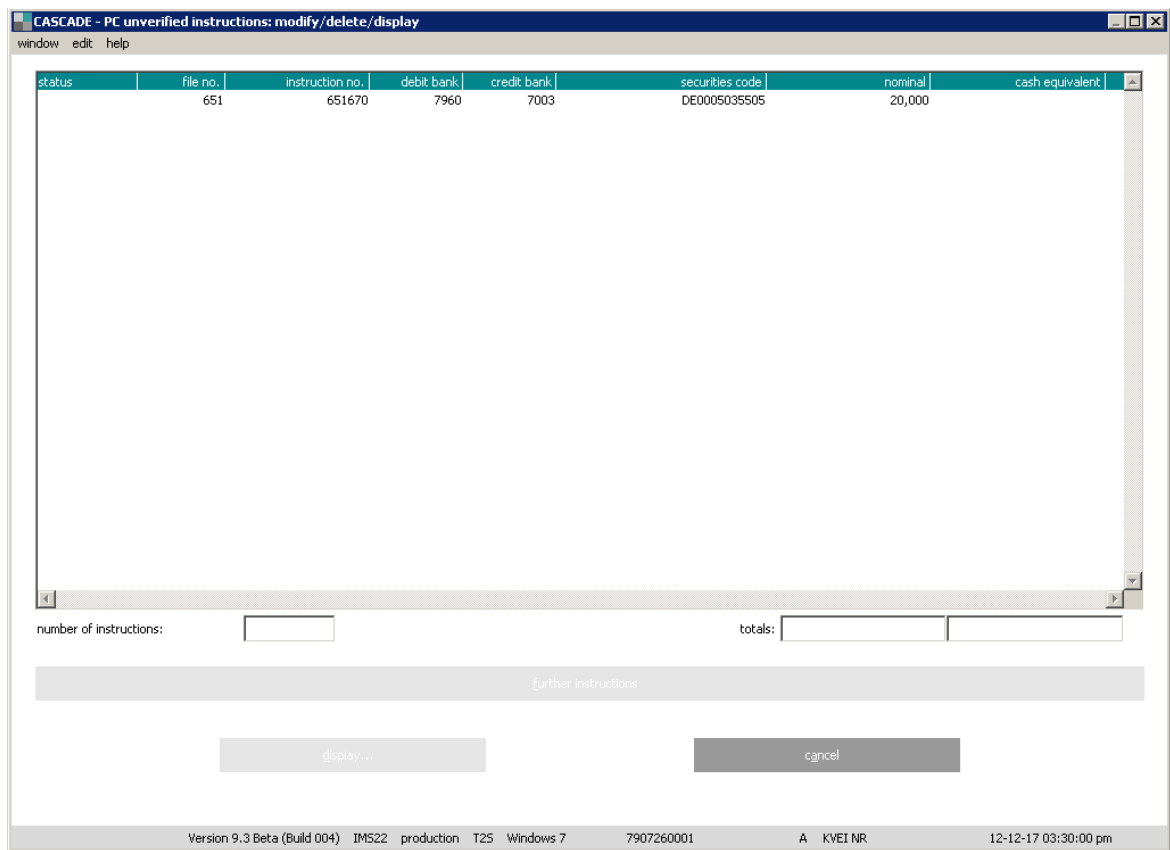
additional selection

securities code:

At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The status bar at the bottom of the window contains the following text: "Version 9:3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 7907260001 A KYEI NR 12-12-17 03:29:17 pm"

After clicking "OK", the respective instruction will be displayed in tabular form.



The selection sub-menu can be called by right mouse click on the instruction. After selecting "modify" the instruction details will be shown and can be amended.

Instruction details page 1 – change of nominal value of the certificate

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement update' window. The interface includes the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651670
- file no.: 651
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. GS -TGL BIS-ZU-
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 10,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 10,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: 2,000,000 delivery-type: 4 - new admission validated certificate up-to
- organisation number: 125 position sub-type:
- settlement date: 03-03-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance
- customer reference:
- deposit of:
- address:
- progress status: 100 deposit was entered completely

Buttons: process, check, cancel

Status bar: Version 9.1a 21.11.2016 IMS24 production T2S 7907230003 A KVEB AN 03-03-17 03:43:21 pm

To control the completeness and correctness of the instruction data click the “check” button. To finish the instruction processing click “process”.

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement update' window. The interface includes the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651670
- file no.: 651
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. GS -TGL BIS-ZU-
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 10,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 10,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: 2,000,000 delivery-type: 4 - new admission validated certificate up-to
- organisation number: 125 position sub-type:
- settlement date: 12-12-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance
- customer reference:
- deposit of:
- address:
- progress status: 100 deposit was entered completely

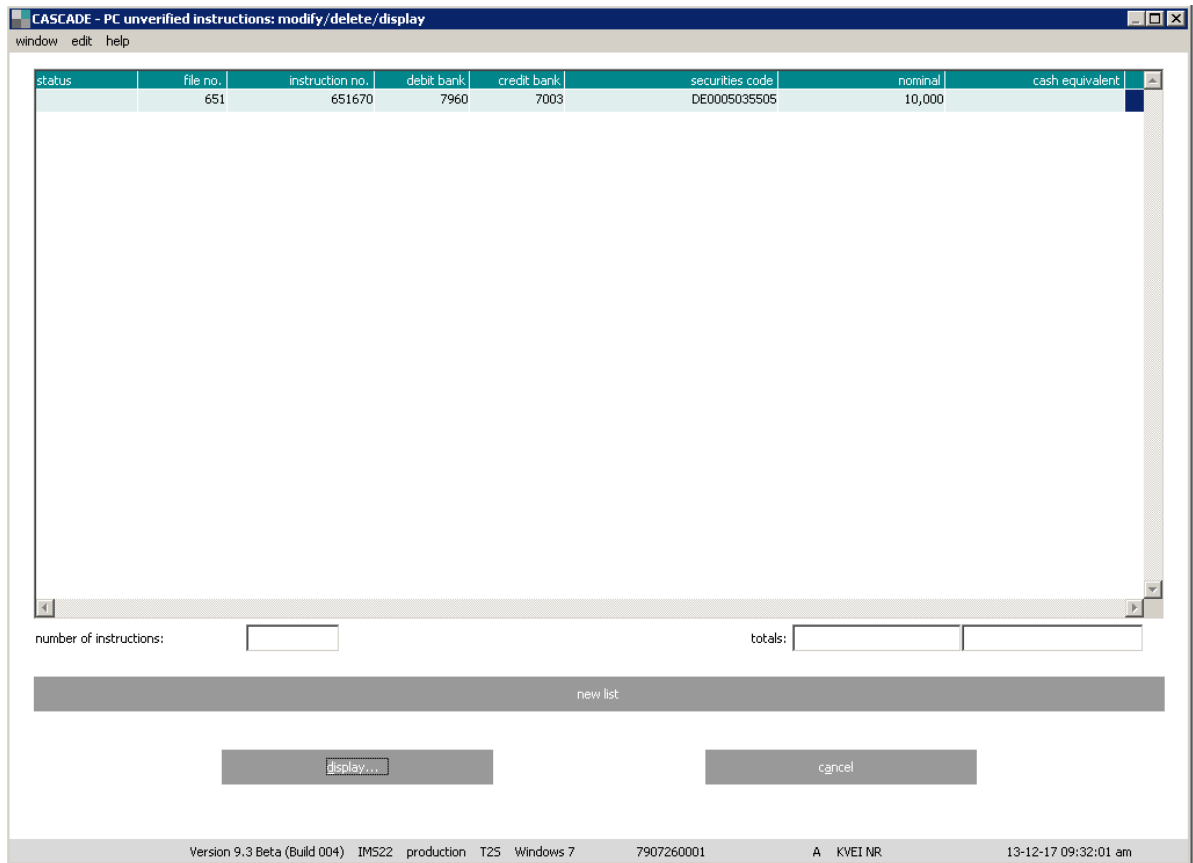
Buttons: process, check

Information dialog box: ** information ** EA00031: processing of preceding instruction executed OK

Footer: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001

CASCADE-PC User Manual

If the instruction had been already verified and consequently marked up for change, the instruction will be displayed with the modification status. Further processing follows up unverified instructions processing.



Consequently, the instruction must be verified reflecting the four eyes principle. Once the verification is complete, it is transferred as a new instruction to the CASCADE instruction status.

Note: Editing mark SAMMELURKUNDE (J/N) (GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N))

If a global certificate was incorrectly entered instead of the individual certificates (or vice-versa) in the scope of a deposit instruction, it is possible to change the mark SAMMELURKUNDE J/N without having to delete the entire instruction.

To change this mark, it is however necessary to first delete the entered certificate numbers and/or classification number.

After the mark has been changed, the certificate numbers can be entered again immediately.

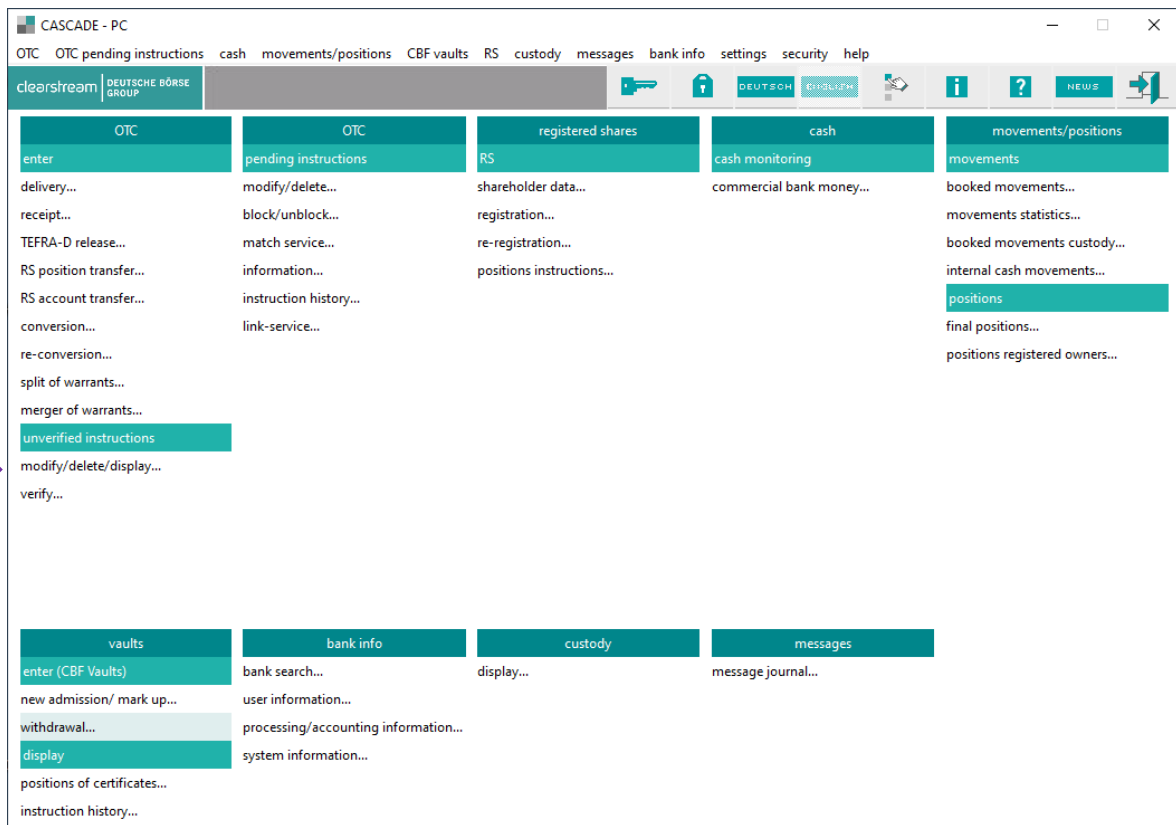
11.3.3 Deleting an instruction via the instruction number

The user needs to know the instruction number to be deleted. The instruction number can be found under Pending instructions / Information / All instructions by type / Deposit.

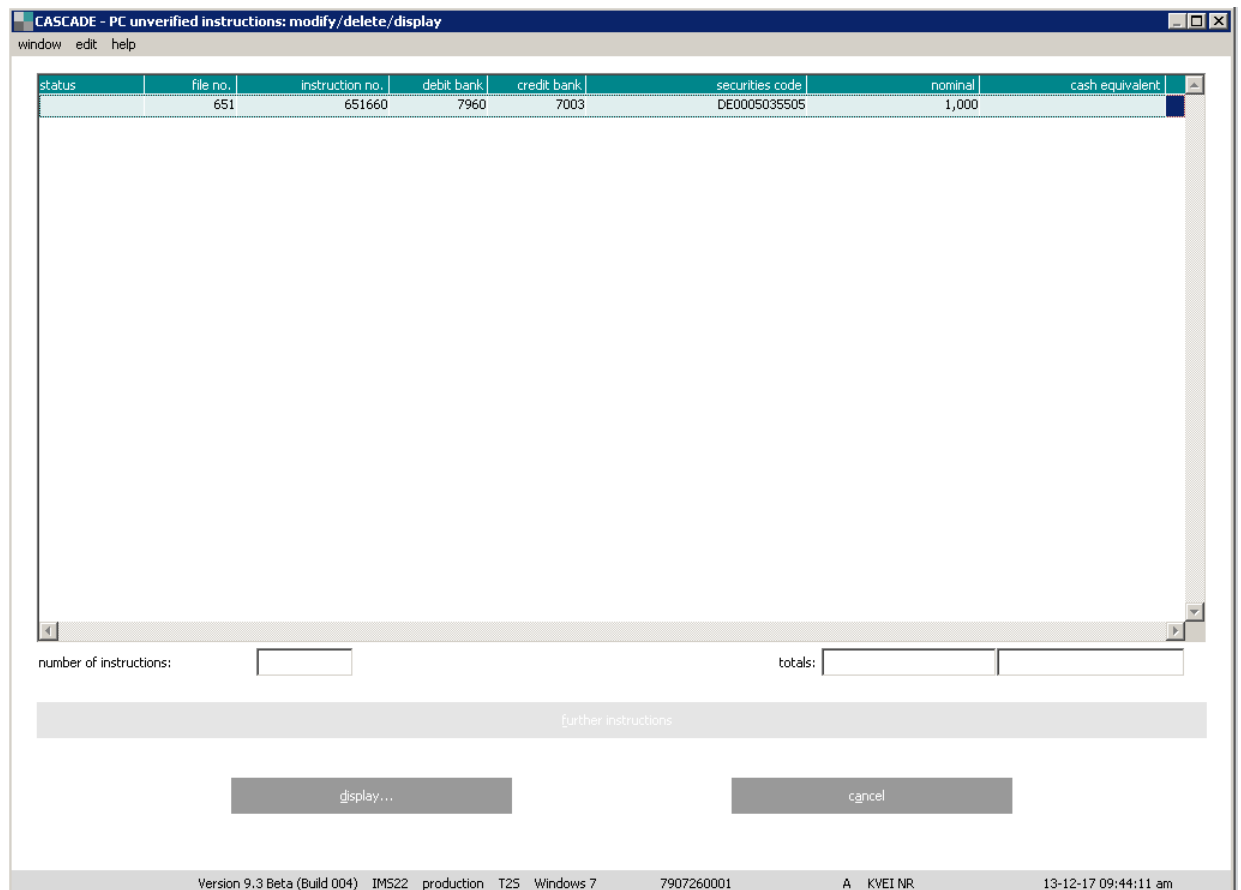
An instruction can only be deleted in the entry status if it has not yet been verified or the instruction was deferred by CBF.

The edit functionality to show the instruction details can be retrieved under **unverified instructions / modify/delete/display** menu.

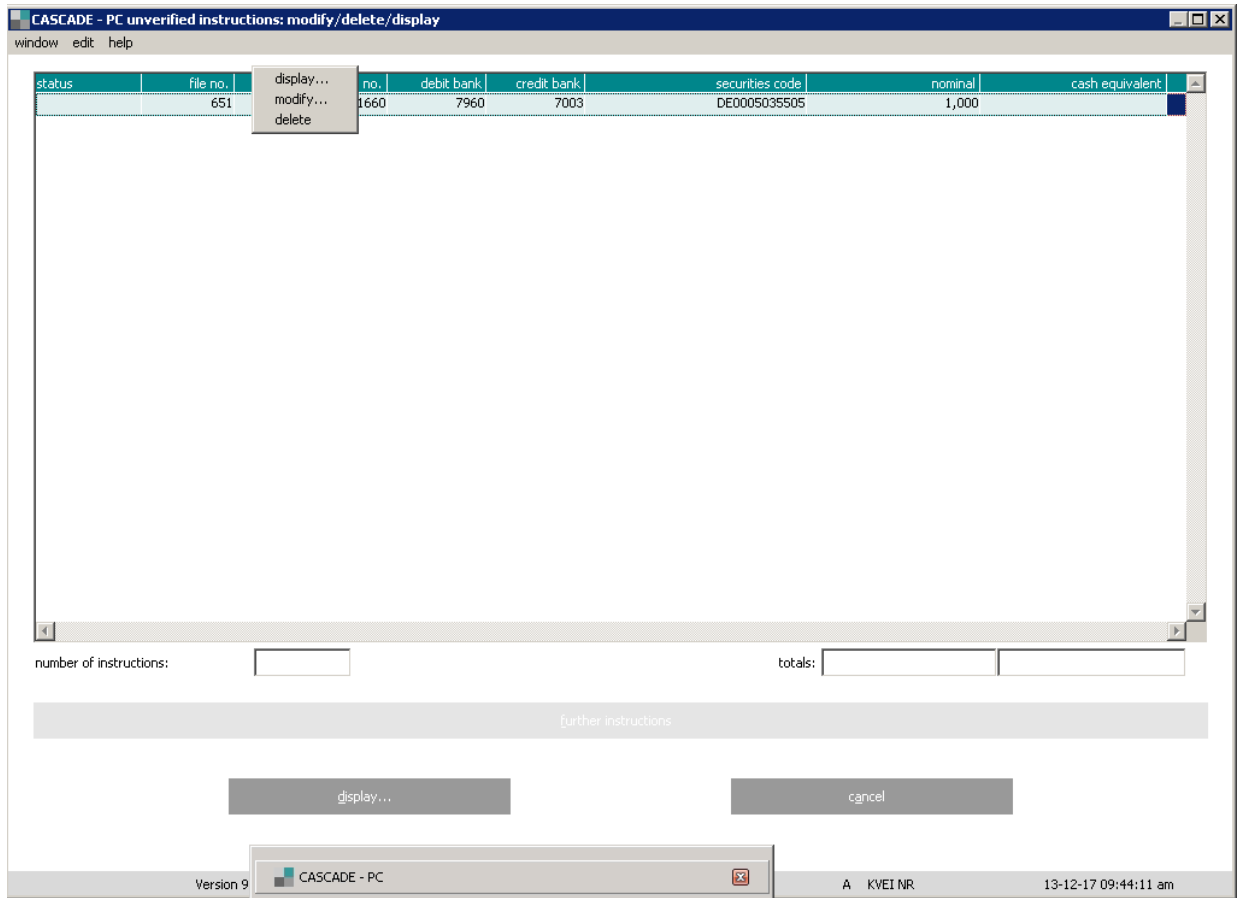
CASCADE-PC User Manual



The instruction will be displayed as follows:

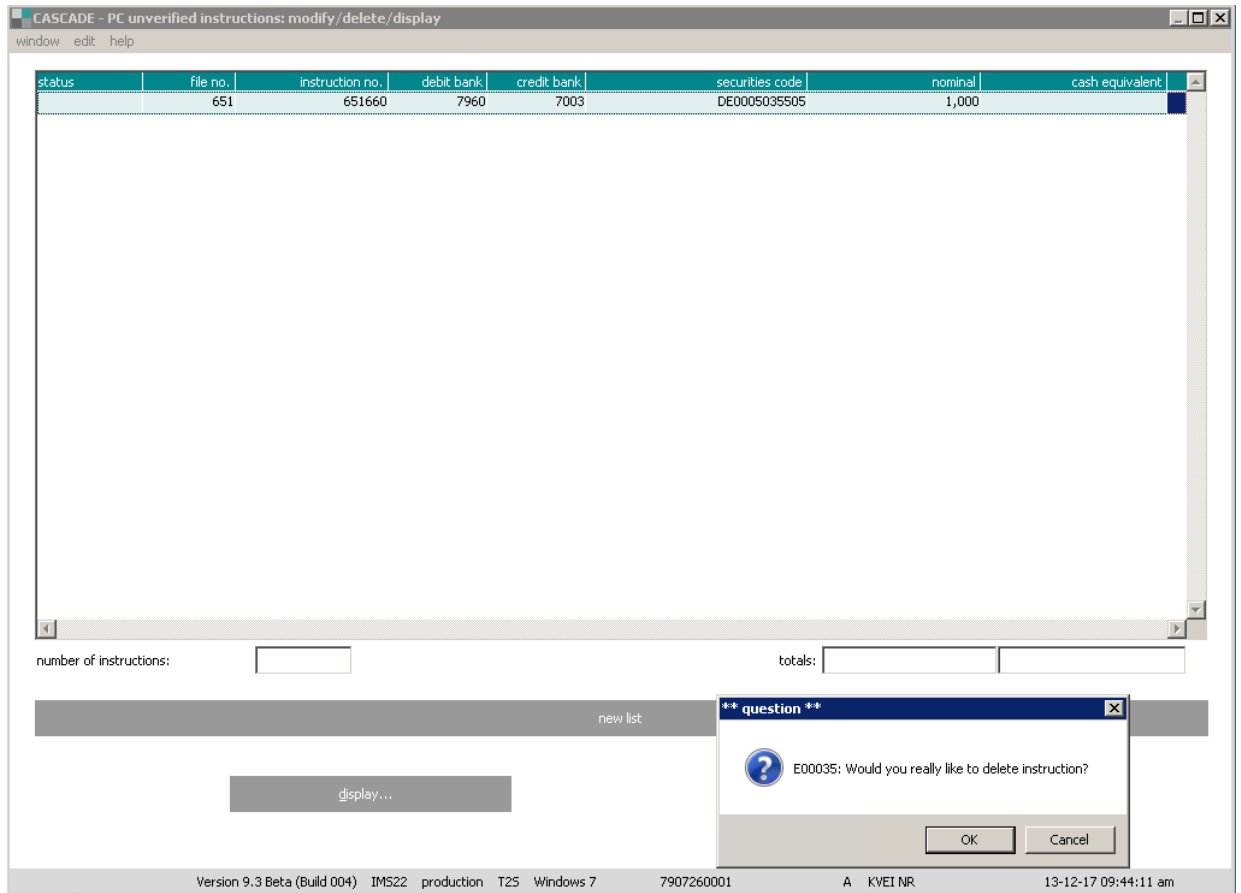


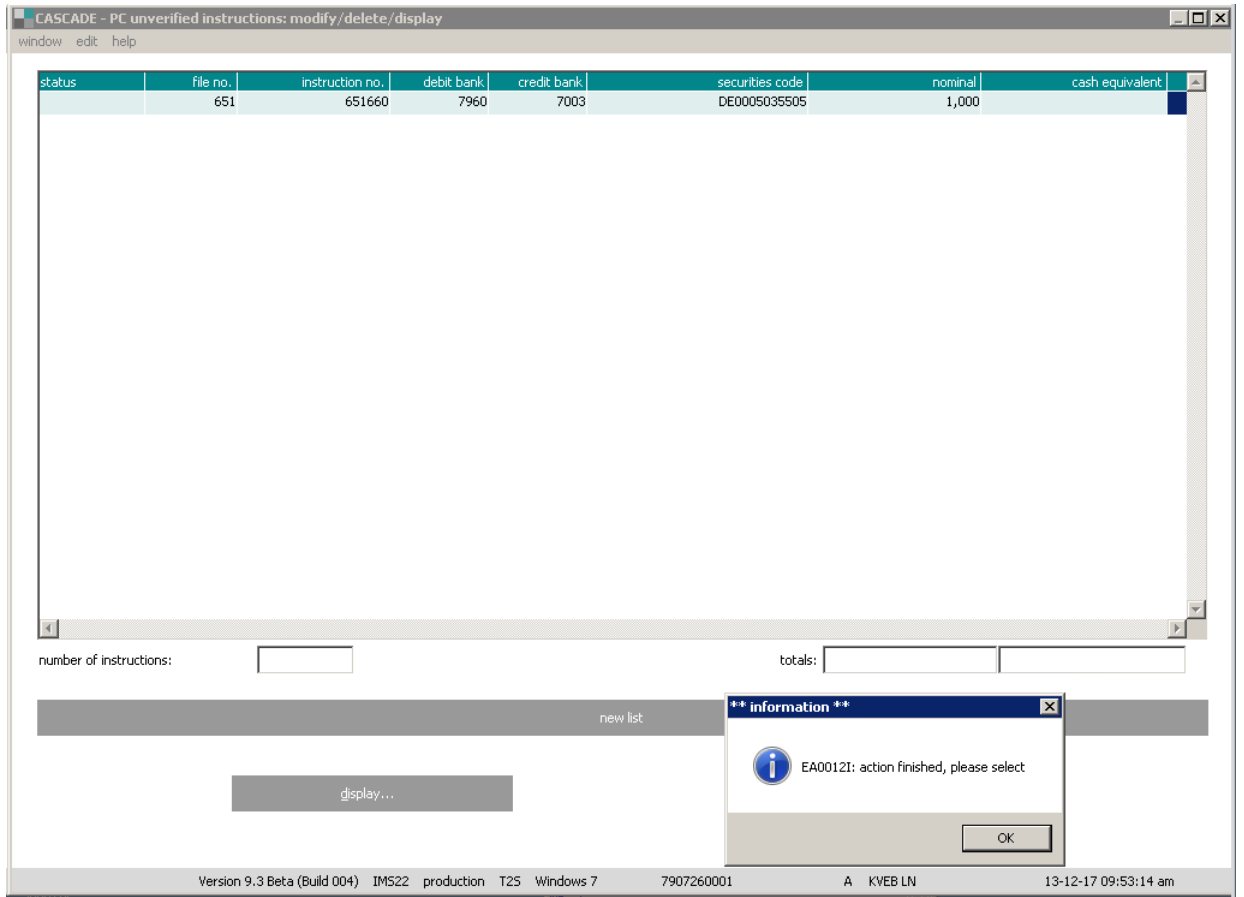
The user can select the instruction and click the right mouse button to see the sub menu.



CASCADE-PC User Manual

After selecting “delete” the instruction status will be “deleted”.

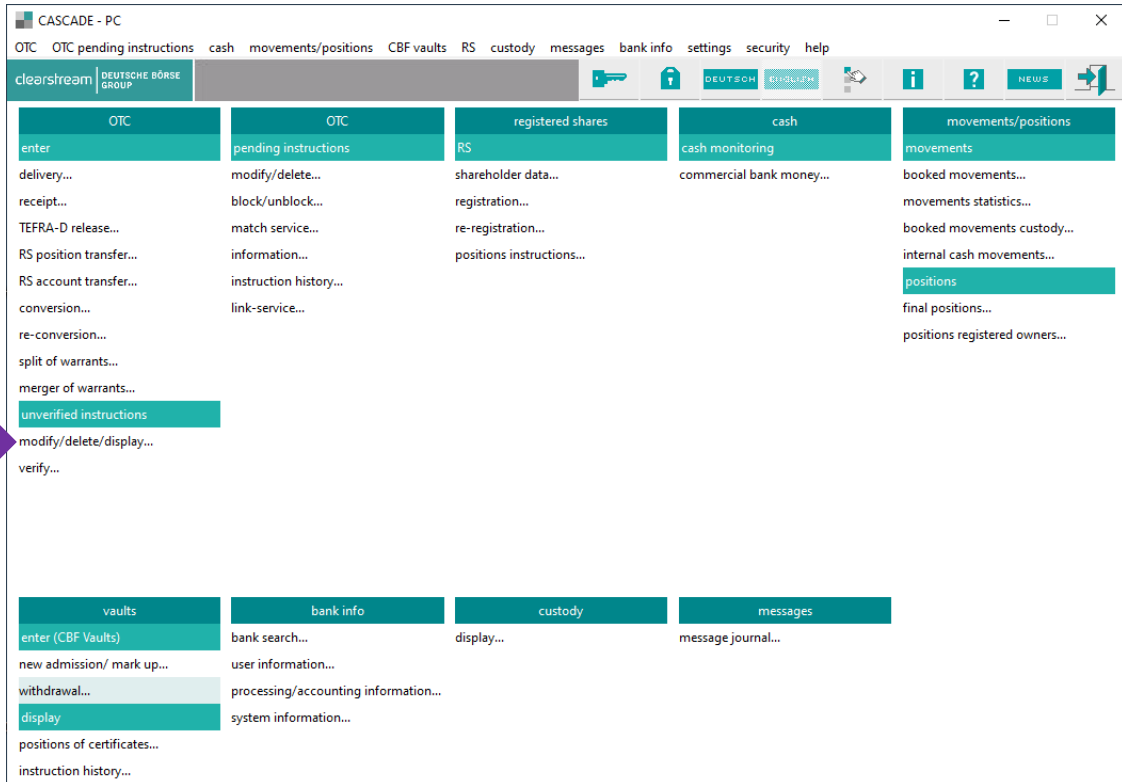




11.4 Information (EI)

Participants can inform themselves regarding deposit and withdrawal instructions that they placed using the information service in the entry status. It is not possible to edit or delete in this status.

The information menu is accessed from the OTC main menu via **unverified instructions / modify/delete/display**.



The following instruction types can be viewed:

- Unverified instructions;
- Erroneous instructions;
- Generated from the instruction status for editing;
- Generated from the instruction status for deletion.

Note:

1. A tabular display of instructions that corresponds to the function code is provided first for all queries. The current status of the instruction is displayed, since no history is kept in the entry status.
2. Previously verified instructions are transferred to the CBF CASCADE instructions status from the depositor's remote entry status and are no longer displayed by the information service in the entry status.
3. If an instruction is selected that contains certificate numbers that now have stop instructions, CASCADE displays them highlighted with the reason for the stop instruction in the error 1 field. The number of stop instructions, which are specified on the notification line on the main screen for instruction data relevant for booking, are also printed in the event of an online printout.

11.4.1 Information menu

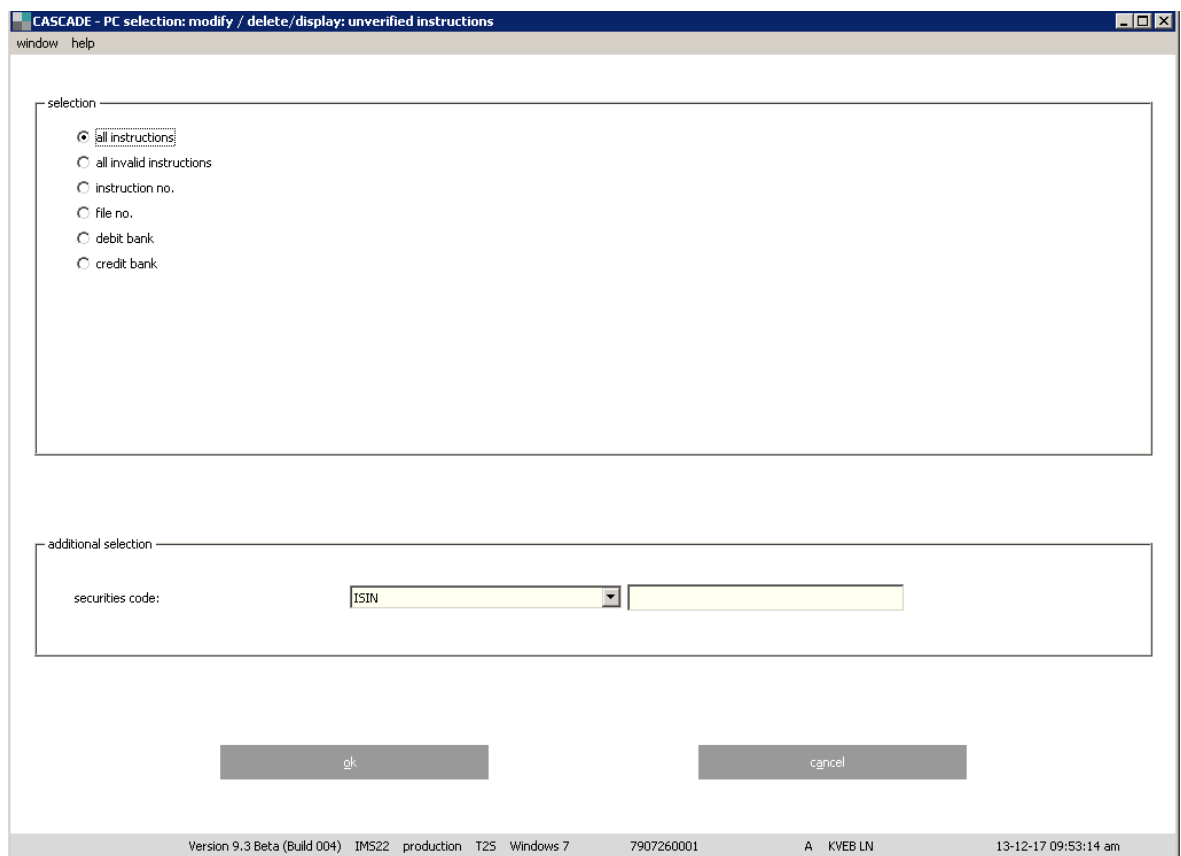
The following selections are possible:

- All instructions
Displays all instructions of new admission and withdrawal
- All invalid instructions
Displays all erroneous instructions-
- Instruction number
Only one instruction is displayed. Displays all orders of the file number
- File number
Displays all instructions of the file number
- Debit Bank
Displays all instructions of the debit bank.
- Credit Bank
Displays all instructions of the credit bank

The entry of an ISIN for all function codes is also permitted and restricts instructions for processing to a specific class.

11.4.2 Information

Example selection: Unverified Instructions/all instructions



CASCADE-PC User Manual

After selection criteria confirmation, the list of respective instructions will be displayed.

The screenshot displays the 'CASCADE - PC unverified instructions: modify/delete/display' window. It features a table with the following columns: status, file no., instruction no., debit bank, credit bank, securities code, nominal, and cash equivalent. Below the table, there are input fields for 'number of instructions' (set to 8) and 'totals' (set to 1,322,010). A 'display...' button and a 'cancel' button are visible at the bottom of the window. The status bar at the bottom shows 'Version 9', 'CASCADE - PC', 'A KVEI AA', and the date/time '13-12-17 10:08:43 am'.

status	file no.	instruction no.	debit bank	credit bank	securities code	nominal	cash equivalent
deletion	0	9445559	7003	7004	DE0005085708	2,000	
	651	651664	7003	7960	DE0008474040	5,000	
	651	651665	7003	7960	DE0005035505	10	
	651	651663	7960	7003	DE0005035505	5,000	
	651	651670	7960	7003	DE0005035505	10,000	
	651	651861	7961	7004	DE0008471020	200,000	
	651	651901	7961	7980	CH0373609384	100,000	
	651	651905	7961	7980	CH0373948469	1,000,000	

number of instructions: totals:

display... cancel

Version 9 CASCADE - PC A KVEI AA 13-12-17 10:08:43 am

The requested instruction can be marked by a left mouse button click and instruction details will be displayed after clicking the “display” button. The details can be also retrieved by double clicking on the selected instruction.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: display". The window contains the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651665
- file no.: 651
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- debit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- credit account: 7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND G5
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 10 unit: ST
- nom. value of certificate: 10
- apportionment: (empty dropdown)
- settlement date: 12-12-2017
- withdrawal procedure: (empty dropdown)
- security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- customer reference: (empty dropdowns)
- next coupon/ LEG: 57
- global certificate: no
- withdrawal UpTo-certificates: no
- withdrawal act: 1 - withdrawal
- deviating address for dispatch: no
- progress status: 100 withdrawal is input completely

At the bottom center of the window is an "cancel" button. The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IM522 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEI NR 13-12-17 10:10:13 am

Example select: Unverified instructions/instruction no.

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: modify / delete/display: unverified instructions". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". It is divided into two main sections: "selection" and "additional selection".

selection

- all instructions
- all invalid instructions
- instruction no.
- file no.
- debit bank
- credit bank

Below the radio buttons, there are two input fields:

instruction no.: instructor:

additional selection

securities code:

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The status bar at the very bottom of the window contains the following text: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEI NR 13-12-17 10:10:13 am"

To retrieve the detail, mark the instruction and click the “display” button.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: display". The window contains a form with the following fields and values:

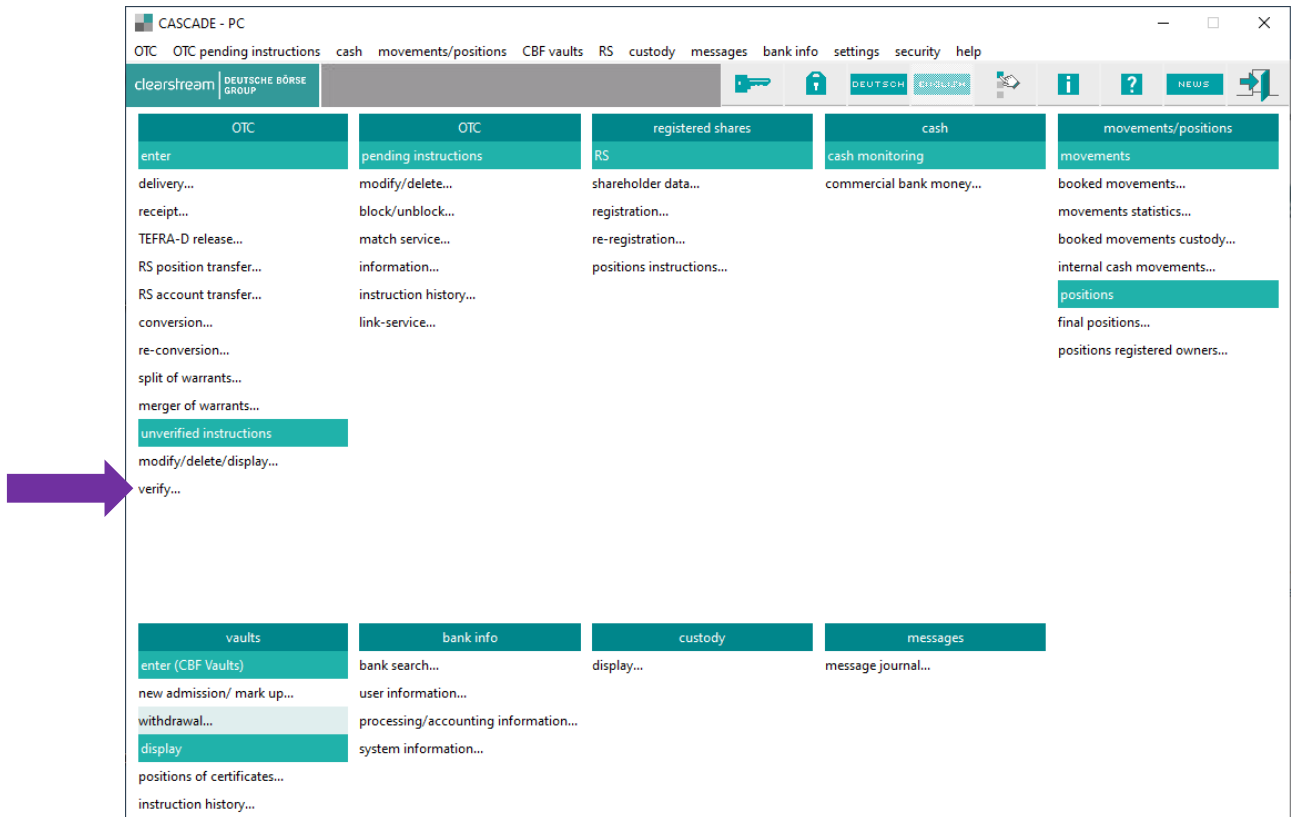
instruction no.:	651664	file no.:	651	deposit type:	01 - collective custody
debit account:	7003	000	DEUTSCHE BANK AG		
credit account:	7960	000	CBF TRESORBESTAND GS		
securities:	ISIN	DE0008474040	DWS INTER-RENTA LD		
nominal:	5,000	unit:	ST		
nom. value of certificate:	5,000	apportionment:			
settlement date:	12-12-2017	withdrawal procedure:			
customer reference:		security type:			
next coupon/ LEG:					
global certificate:	yes	withdrawal UpTo-certificates:	no		
withdrawal act:	2 - mark down	deviating address for dispatch:	no		
progress status:	100	withdrawal is input completely			

At the bottom center of the window is a "cancel" button. The taskbar at the bottom shows the following information: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEI NR 13-12-17 10:17:18 am

11.5 Verification

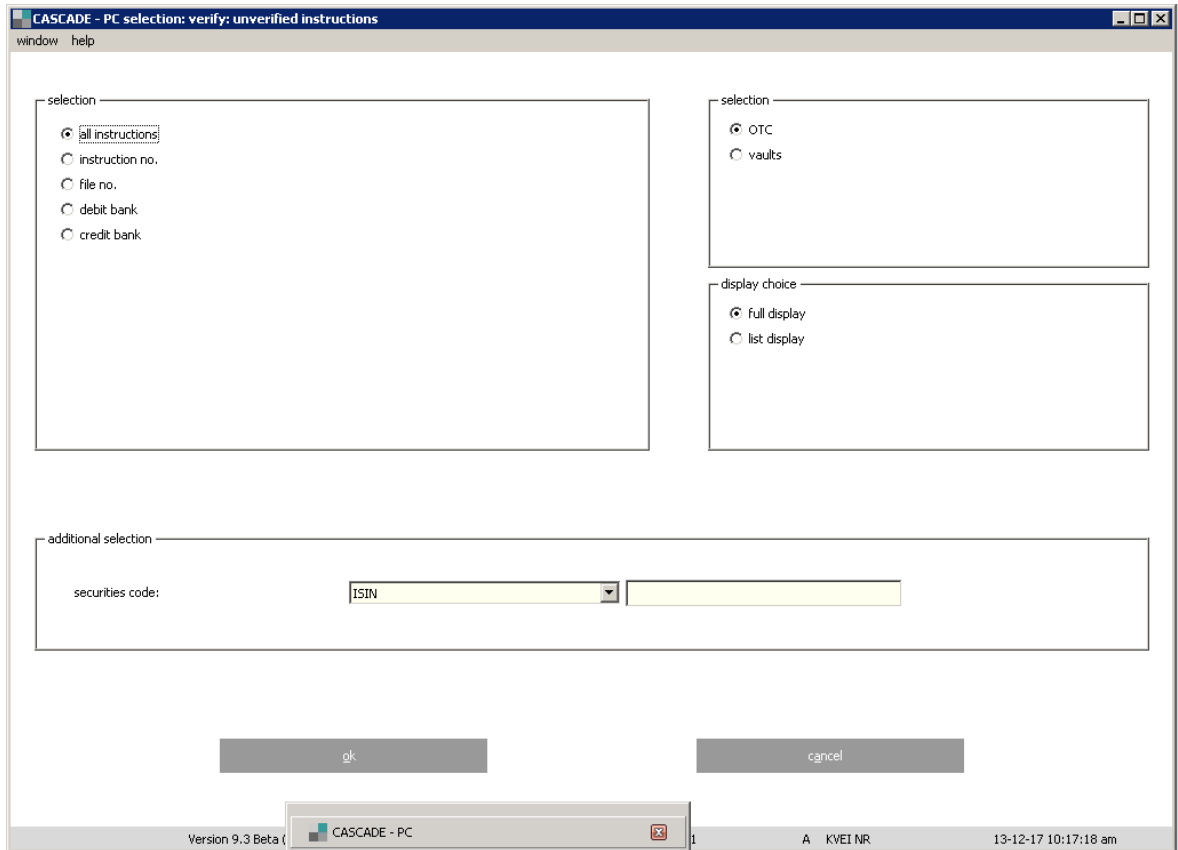
To issue instructions entered to CBF with binding effect, the application of the security checking principle requires at least two users, that is, deposits and withdrawals entered by an user in the system are verified by a second user. The system ensures that the verifier has a different user ID than the user entering the data.

The verification menu is accessed from the OTC main menu via **unverified instructions / verify**.



11.5.1 Verification menu

The instructions can then be released as either an individual or batch verification depending on the searched criteria selected.



The following selections are possible:

- All instructions/Vaults/ list display
Displays all instructions of new admission and withdrawal.
- Instruction number/Vaults/full display or list display
One instruction displayed, only.
- File number/Vaults/list display
Displays all instructions of the file number
- Debit Bank/Vaults/list display
Displays all instructions of the debit bank
- Credit Bank/Vaults/list display
Displays all instructions of the credit bank

The entry of an ISIN for all function codes is also permitted and restricts instructions for processing to a specific class.

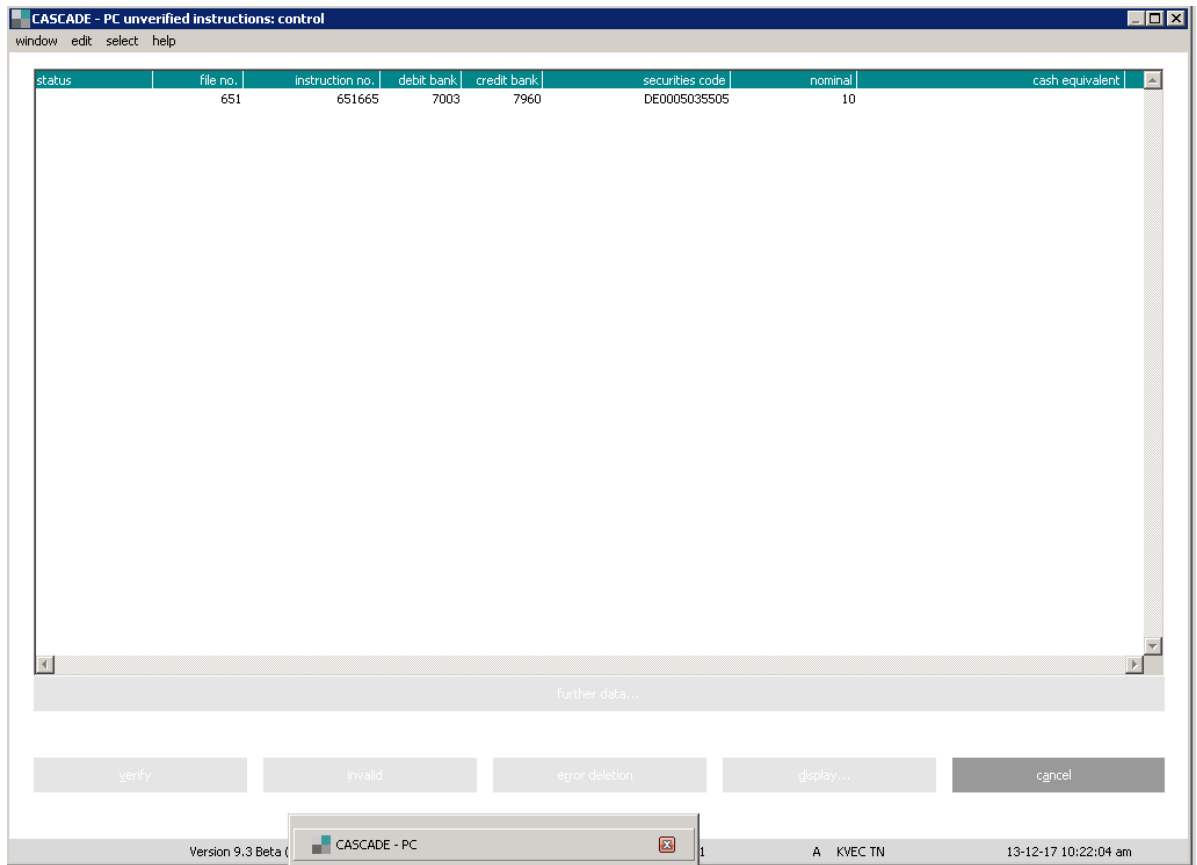
11.5.2 Verification

Example selection: Instruction number/Vaults/list display

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: verify: unverified instructions". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". It is divided into several sections:

- selection:** A group box containing five radio buttons: "all instructions", "instruction no." (selected), "file no.", "debit bank", and "credit bank". Below this is a text input field labeled "instruction no.:" containing the value "251668".
- selection:** A second group box containing two radio buttons: "OTC" and "vaults" (selected).
- display choice:** A group box containing two radio buttons: "full display" and "list display" (selected).
- additional selection:** A group box containing a text input field labeled "securities code:" with a dropdown menu showing "ISIN" and an empty text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The taskbar at the bottom shows the application name "CASCADE - PC", version "Version 9.3 Beta", and the date and time "13-12-17 10:17:18 am".



The user can mark the instruction using the right-mouse click and call up sub-menu. The instruction details will be displayed after clicking on the menu bar "Display".

The instruction details can be retrieved also by double-clicking the left-mouse button.

Instruction details page 1

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: display". The window contains a form with the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651665
- file no.: 651
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- debit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- credit account: 7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 10
- unit: ST
- nom. value of certificate: 10
- apportionment: (empty)
- settlement date: 12-12-2017
- withdrawal procedure: (empty)
- security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- customer reference: (empty)
- next coupon/ LEG: 57
- global certificate: no
- withdrawal UpTo-certificates: no
- withdrawal act: 1 - withdrawal
- deviating address for dispatch: no
- progress status: 100 withdrawal is input completely

At the bottom of the window, there is a "cancel" button and a status bar with the following text: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEI NR 13-12-17 10:47:29 am".

The instruction details page 2

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: display" with a menu bar containing "window" and "help". The window is divided into several sections for data entry:

- Instruction no.:** 651665
- deposit type:** 01 - collective custody
- securities:** ISIN: DE0005035505
- name:** (empty)
- street:** (empty)
- country/postal code/place:** (empty)

A section titled "personal address" contains the following fields:

- address number:** (empty)
- BIC-CODE:** (empty)
- name:** DEUTSCHE BANK AG TSP SECURITIES
- loc.code major customer:** 60262
- name affix:** (empty)
- postal code/PO box:** (empty)
- street:** ALFRED-HERRHAUSEN-ALLEE 16-24
- country/postal code/place:** D | 65760 | ESCHBORN

Below the personal address section is an "info text:" field with three empty lines. At the bottom center is a "cancel" button. The taskbar at the bottom shows the following information: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEI NR 13-12-17 10:47:29 am

The instruction details page 3

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC withdrawal: display". The window contains the following fields and controls:

- instruction no.:
- deposit type:
- securities:
- organisation number:
- total nominal value:
- collective number:
- total nominal value (sum):

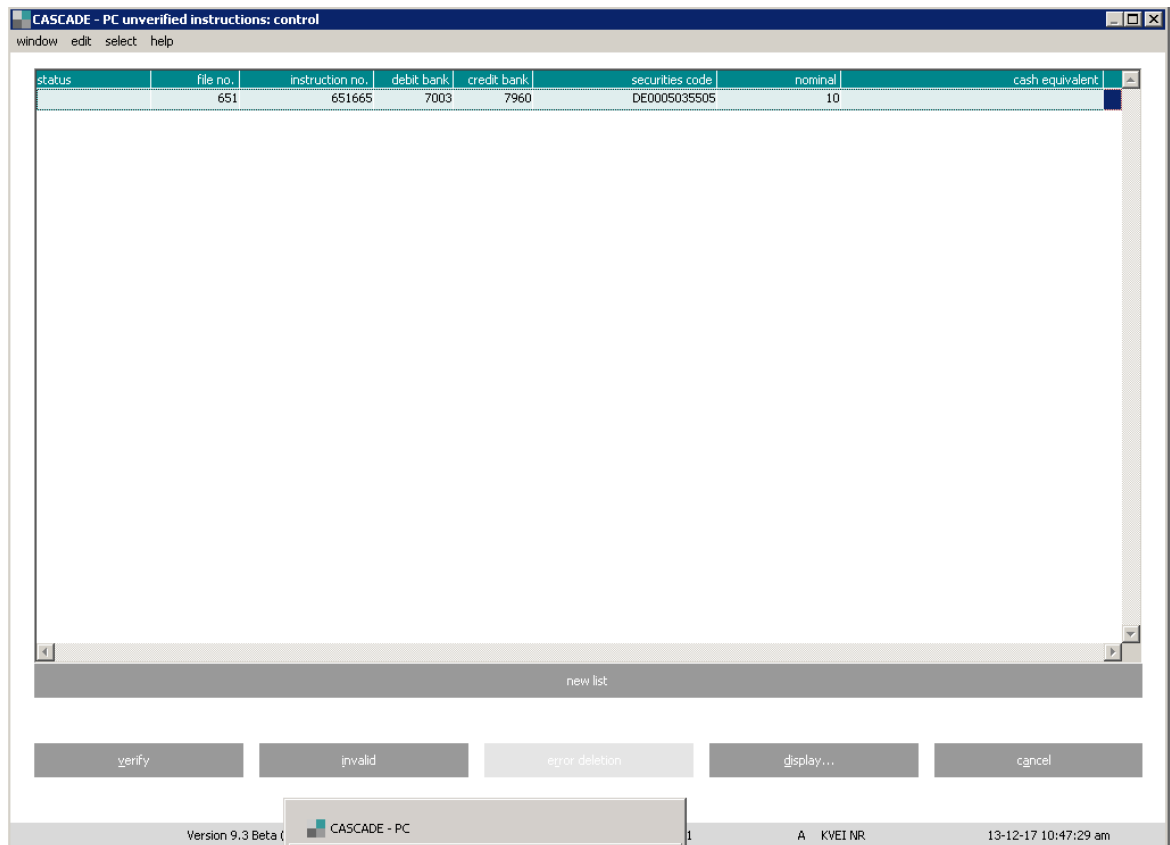
Below these fields is a table with a green header:

number	literal	denomination	number	literal	denomination
10*		1			

At the bottom of the window, there is a "text:" label followed by three empty text input fields and a central "cancel" button.

The Windows taskbar at the bottom shows: IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEI NR 13-12-17 10:47:29 am

After checking all instruction details click “Cancel” to return to the list of instructions.



To verify the instruction click “Verify”.

If an instruction is invalid, press click “invalid”.

Example selection: all instructions/Vaults/list display

Verification using a tabular display means that all instructions found based on the selection criteria (vaults, all instructions, list display) entered are displayed consecutively, including all saved data (sorted by the date and time of entry) in tabular form. This form of verification is appropriate if there are sufficient instruction data relevant for booking for the verification.

status	file no.	instruction no.	debit bank	credit bank	securities code	nominal	cash equivalent
	651	651664	7003	7960	DE0008474040	5,000	
	651	651665	7003	7960	DE0005035505	10	
	651	651663	7960	7003	DE0005035505	5,000	
	651	651670	7960	7003	DE0005035505	10,000	
	651	651861	7961	7004	DE0008471020	200,000	
	651	651901	7961	7980	CH0373609384	100,000	
	651	651905	7961	7980	CH0373948469	1,000,000	

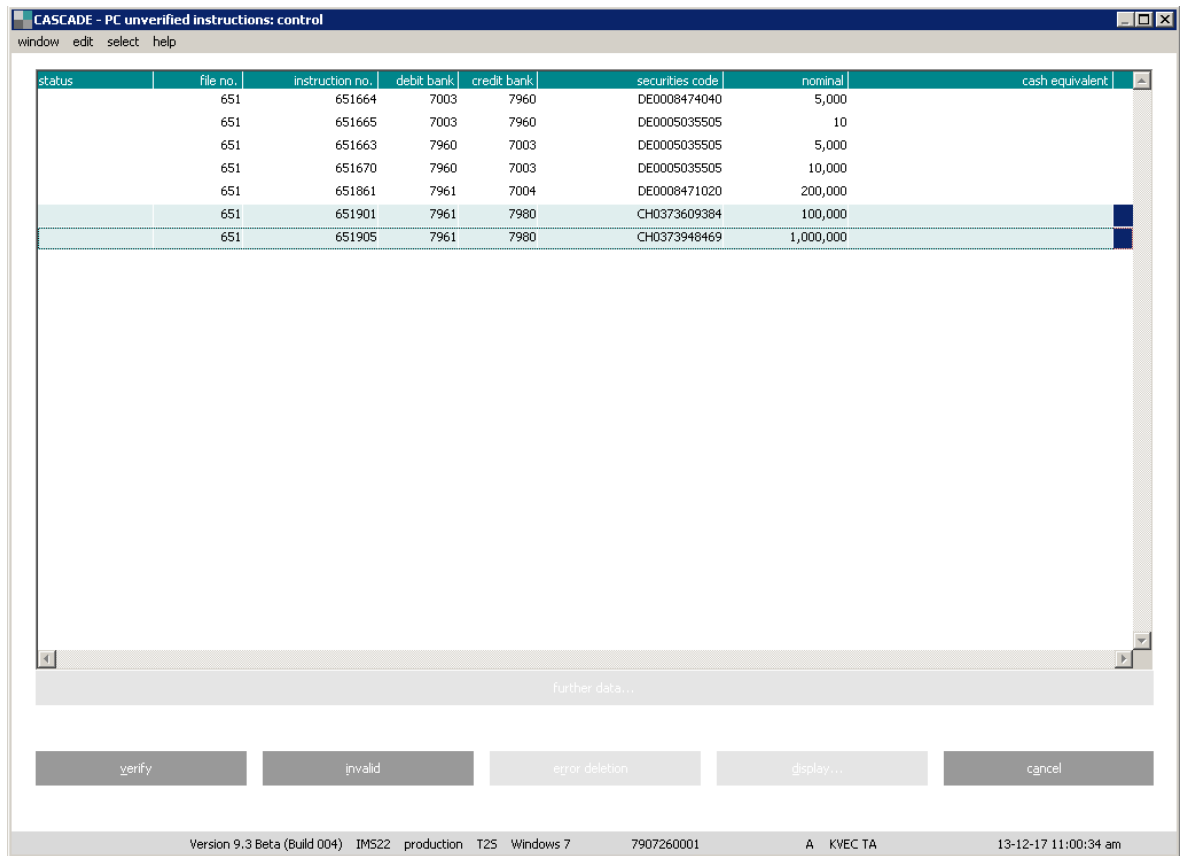
Further data...

verify invalid error deletion display... cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVEC TA 14-12-17 10:04:17 am

The user can mark the instruction by clicking the right mouse button to call up the sub-menu.

If the details of the checked instructions are correct, the instructions can be selected and verified via batch.



After clicking the “Verify” button, the selected instructions will be verified.

Note:

1. A verified deposit instruction is automatically blocked for disposal and booking at Clearstream Banking Frankfurt when switching to instruction status. The custodian releases the instruction following successful verification of the certificates.
2. In the event of blocked certificates, a corresponding notice is issued for the certificates with blocked certificates belonging to the instruction in the detailed verification display. It is not possible to verify an instruction that contains blocked certificates.
3. Only complete deposits can be verified.
4. Mark ups are no longer processed by the CBF checkpoints by default for certain classes to be booked, but are booked directly with the control (full view/compact view). This is possible as an automatic authorisation check is performed for this. The definition is the same as the one for the authorisation check.

The process is different for each instruction specification:

Deposit

- Example:
- Deposit type 2 = Verification to dispo/ booking of CBF checkpoints.
 - Deposit type 3 = Verification to dispo/ booking of CBF checkpoints
 - Deposit type 5 = automatically booking for specified securities (authorisation WP-Grp.)

Withdrawal

Example: Withdrawal of a Global Certificate (Global Certificate "J") = Verification to dispo/ booking of CBF checkpoints.

Withdrawal of a global certificate (global certificate "N") = automatically booking.

Withdrawal action 2 (Revalutierung) = automatically booking for specified securities (authorisation WP-Grp.)

Special case:

An instruction returned by the CBF checkpoint cannot be directly deleted and must be edited and then verified. If the certificates are returned by CBF, the instruction can be generated for deletion.

An instruction deferred by a CBF checkpoint cannot undergo repeat verification immediately again. This is only possible after the editing has been completed.

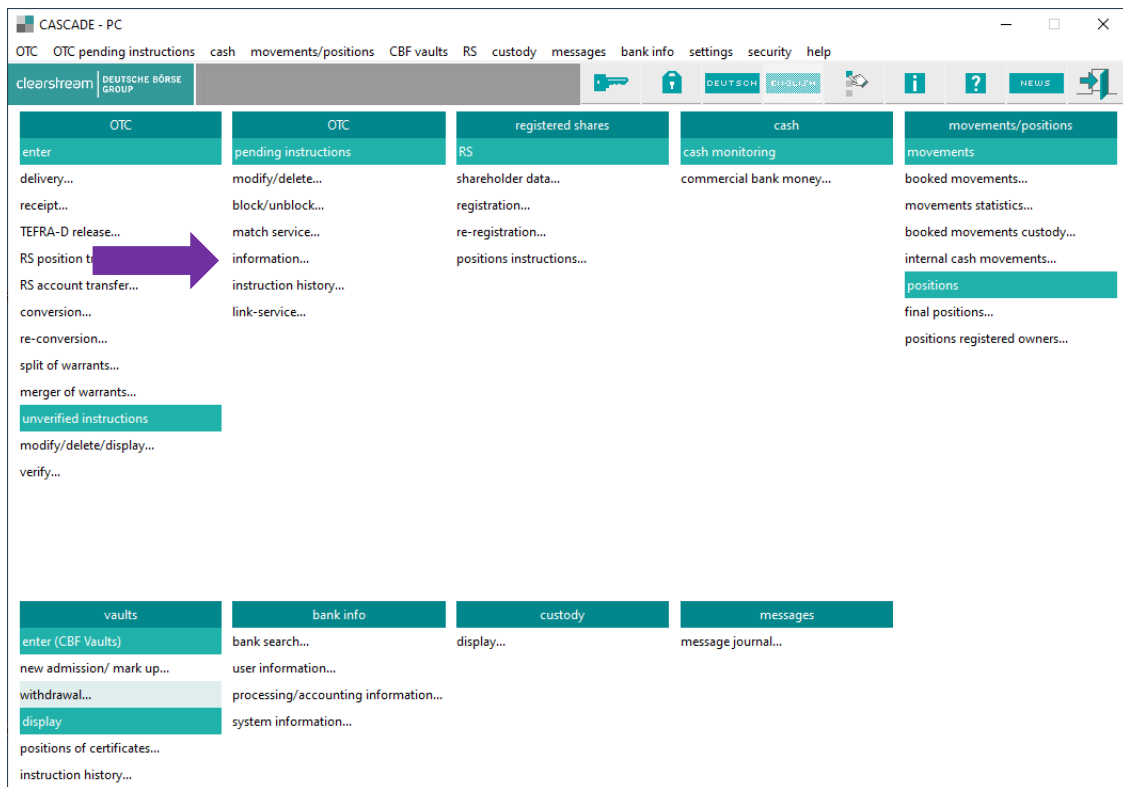
Once the verification is complete, the instruction moves from the entry status to the instruction status.

11.5.3 Automatic deletion of deposit instructions in the entry status

Instructions in the entry status are automatically deleted following ten business days.

11.6 Information (AI)

The information menu is accessed from the OTC main menu via **pending instructions / information**.



The information request provides the following options:

- Compact display of instructions based on the specified selection criteria;
- Detailed display of an instruction with comprehensive status display for processing and disposal.

Information menu

The following selections are possible:

- All instructions by type/Own instructions:
Displays all instructions of new admission and withdrawal.
- Instruction number/Own instructions:
Displays only one instruction.
- Instructions rejected in process/Own instructions:
Display all erroneous instructions of new admission and withdrawal.
- Delivery instructions/Own instructions
- Receipt instructions/Own instructions
- Instruction history/Own instructions

For the vaults processing only the following selection criteria are valid: All instructions by type, instruction number and instruction history.

11.6.1 Compact display of instructions based on the selection criteria

Example: All instructions by type / Own instructions

Displays all instructions of new admission and withdrawal.

Information page 1 – compact display

The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: display: pending instructions". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar are two radio buttons: "own instructions" (selected) and "counterparty instructions".

The main area is divided into two sections:

- selection:** A list of radio buttons for filtering instructions:
 - all instructions by type
 - instruction no.
 - reference
 - instructions rejected in process
 - delivery instructions
 - receipt instructions
 - instruction history
 - all orders to ISIN
 - custody PFoD
- instruction type:** A dropdown menu currently showing "delivery".

The **additional selection** section contains several input fields:

- own account no.:** An empty text input field.
- settlement date:** A text input field containing "11-12-2020".
- counterparty:** An empty text input field.
- currency:** A dropdown menu.
- securities:** A dropdown menu currently showing "ISIN" and an empty text input field to its right.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

After confirming selection criteria by clicking the "OK" button the list of all instructions will be displayed. The user can mark the instruction by double clicking. The instructions rejected in process, delivery/receipt instructions and instruction history are used for OTC instructions only.

Information page 2 – compact display

CASCADE - PC pending instructions: information

credit bank: page:

currency:

number	instr	RTS-D	instruction no.	debit account	securities code	nominal	cash equivalent	settlement date
1	10	:16 de	11017	7961	DE000AA2KGK8	100		02-10
1	10	:16 de	110017	7961	DE000AA2KGK8	100		05-10
1	11	:16 de	651833	7960	DE000A0BKP93	0		11-05
1	10	:16 de	651834	7960	DE000A0BKP93	200		11-05
1	10	:16 de	651832	7960	DE000A0BKP93	200,000		11-05
4	116	de	217002	7967	DE0005011001	50		02-10
1	11	:16 de	51278	7965	DE0005035505	100		04-04
1	10	:16 de	651663	7960	DE0005035505	5,000		12-12
1	116	de	651829	7960	DE0005035505	2,000,000		05-05
1	10	:16 de	559102	7960	DE0005194005	100,000,000		08-11

number of instructions: totals:

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVAI AA 14-12-17 11:26:44 am

The instruction details will be displayed after clicking on the "Display" menu bar. The instructions details can be retrieved also by double clicking the left mouse button.

Information page 3 – compact display

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC Deposit new admission settlement information order balance". The window contains the following fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651663
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. GS -TGL B15-ZU-
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 5,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 5,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: 0 delivery-type: 5- valuation
- organisation number: 10 position sub-type:
- settlement date: 12-12-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance
- customer reference:
- deposit of:
- address:
- deposit number: 2903
- progress status: 200 deposit was accepted by physical deposit service
- processing status: 005 not submitted, instruction blocked

A "cancel" button is located at the bottom center of the window. The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 7907260001 A KVAI AA 14-12-17 11:27:24 am

Clicking the “cancel” button will display the previous page. From the first page the user will be redirected to the instructions list screen.

11.6.2 Detailed display of an instruction with comprehensive status display for processing and disposal

Example: Information/Instruction number

Detailed display of an instruction page 1 – instruction number

CASCADE - PC selection: display: pending instructions

own instructions counterparty instructions

selection

- all instructions by type
- instruction no.
- reference
- instructions rejected in process
- delivery instructions
- receipt instructions
- instruction history
- all orders to ISIN
- custody PFoD

instruction no.:

additional selection

own account no.:

counterparty:

securities:

settlement date:

currency:

ok cancel

Detailed display of an instruction page 2 – instruction number

The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC pending instructions: information". At the top, there are input fields for "debit bank:" (value: 7960) and "page:" (value: 1). Below these is a "currency:" dropdown menu. The main area contains a table with the following data:

multiplier	instr	RTS-D	instruction no.	credit account	securities code	nominal	cash equivalent	settlement date
1	10	de	651669	7003	DE0005035505	10,000		14-12

Below the table, there are input fields for "number of instructions:" and "totals:". At the bottom, there are four buttons: "page back", "next page", "display...", and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom shows: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVAI AN 14-12-17 11:34:00 am".

The instruction details will be displayed after clicking on the "Display" menu bar. The instructions details can be retrieved also by double-clicking the left mouse button.

Detailed display of an instruction page 3 – instruction number

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC Deposit new admission settlement information order balance". The window contains the following fields and values:

instruction no.:	651669	sub-instruction type:	new admission/ mark up
debit account:	7960 200	CBF TR. B. GS -TGL BIS-ZU-	
credit account:	7003 000	DEUTSCHE BANK AG	
securities:	ISIN DE0005035505	ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS	
nominal:	10,000	unit:	ST
nom. value of certificate:	10,000	deposit type:	01 - collective custody
UpTo-nominal:	100,000	delivery-type:	4 - new admission validated certificate up-to
organisation number:	4	position sub-type:	
settlement date:	14-12-2017	deposit reason:	1 - from issuance
customer reference:			
deposit of:			
address:			
deposit number:			
progress status:	100	deposit was entered completely	
processing status:	005	not submitted, instruction blocked	

At the bottom of the window, there is a "cancel" button and a status bar with the following information: Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907260001 A KVAI AN 14-12-17 11:34:36 am

11.6.3 Historical instructions (HA)

If a current instruction is to be edited or deleted, it is marked in the instruction status and then transferred to the entry status. The instruction becomes invalid in the instruction status as a result. At the same time, it is saved as a historical instruction in its entirety, including all status characteristics it had when marked. The historical display covers all both deposit and withdrawal types.

11.6.4 Information on the detailed display

Current and historical instructions can also be retrieved in the detailed display. Clients can branch to the detailed display via the screen with the compact tabular display. This selection is the same for all function codes. Instructions that have been selected by this point are displayed with the fields that are relevant for booking.

Historical instruction page 1 – detail display

CASCADE - PC Deposit new admission settlement information history

instruction no.: 651669 release: 7907 sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up

debit account: 7960 200 CBF TR. B. GS -TGL BIS-ZU-

credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG

securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS

nominal: 10,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated

nom. value of certificate: 10,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody

UpTo-nominal: 100,000 delivery-type: 4 - new admission validated certificate up-to

organisation number: 3 position sub-type:

settlement date: 23-02-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance

customer reference:

deposit of:

address:

deposit number: 75

progress status: 700 deposit for booking was released by physical deposit service

processing status: 010 submitted

cancel

Version 9.1a 21.11.2016 IMS24 production T2S 7907230003 A KVAI HA 23-02-17 11:18:21 am

Historical instruction page 2 – detail display

CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement information

window help

instruction no.: deposit type:

securities:

custody option:

special characteristic:

deviating denomination:

next coupon/LEG: last coupon/LEG:

evidence type:

coporate action

rights sec. code:

ex date start: date-KE:

text:

Version 9.1a 21.11.2016 IMS24 production T2S 7907230003 A KVAI HA 23-02-17 12:59:06 pm

Historical instruction page 3 – detail display

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC deposit new admission settlement information". The window contains several input fields and a table area.

Fields and values:

- instruction no.: 651669
- total nominal value: 10,000
- securities: ISIN (dropdown) DE0005035505
- total nominal value (sum): 0
- increments: (empty field)

Table headers:

number/literal	denomination	certificate numbers (for securitised certificates)	replacement certificate
----------------	--------------	--	-------------------------

Navigation buttons: "page back", "next page", and "cancel".

Footer information:

Version 9.1a 21.11.2016 IMS24 production T2S 7907230003 A KVAI HA 23-02-17 12:59:06 pm

Historical instruction page 4 – detail display

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC delivery: full display: further data". The window contains a form with the following fields and values:

instruction no.:	39501	cash posting text:	
custody type:	collective safe custody	<input type="checkbox"/> issue start	
ref. no.:			
price:			
T2S actor BIC:	DAKVDEFFOPS	T2S actor reference:	C141150942F28B2
priority:		reason code:	
MITI reference:	2104190328524511	already matched:	yes
ext. settlement date:		partial settlement indicator:	
ISO transaction code:			
T2S-acceptance:	19-04-2021 03:10:45 pm	T2S-matched:	19-04-2021 03:10:45 pm
instruction ref.:		partial rights:	
coupon information/record date:			
transfer reason:			
ca-option-number:		ca-option-key:	
KADI cycle-number:		KADI event type:	
rights sec. code:	ISIN		
<input type="checkbox"/> blocked for staff	<input type="checkbox"/> return transfer	blocking date:	
text:			

At the bottom center of the form is a "cancel" button.

Additional information regarding the processing and disposal status of an instruction is shown in the instruction status.

11.7 Mark for editing/deletion (change/deletion)

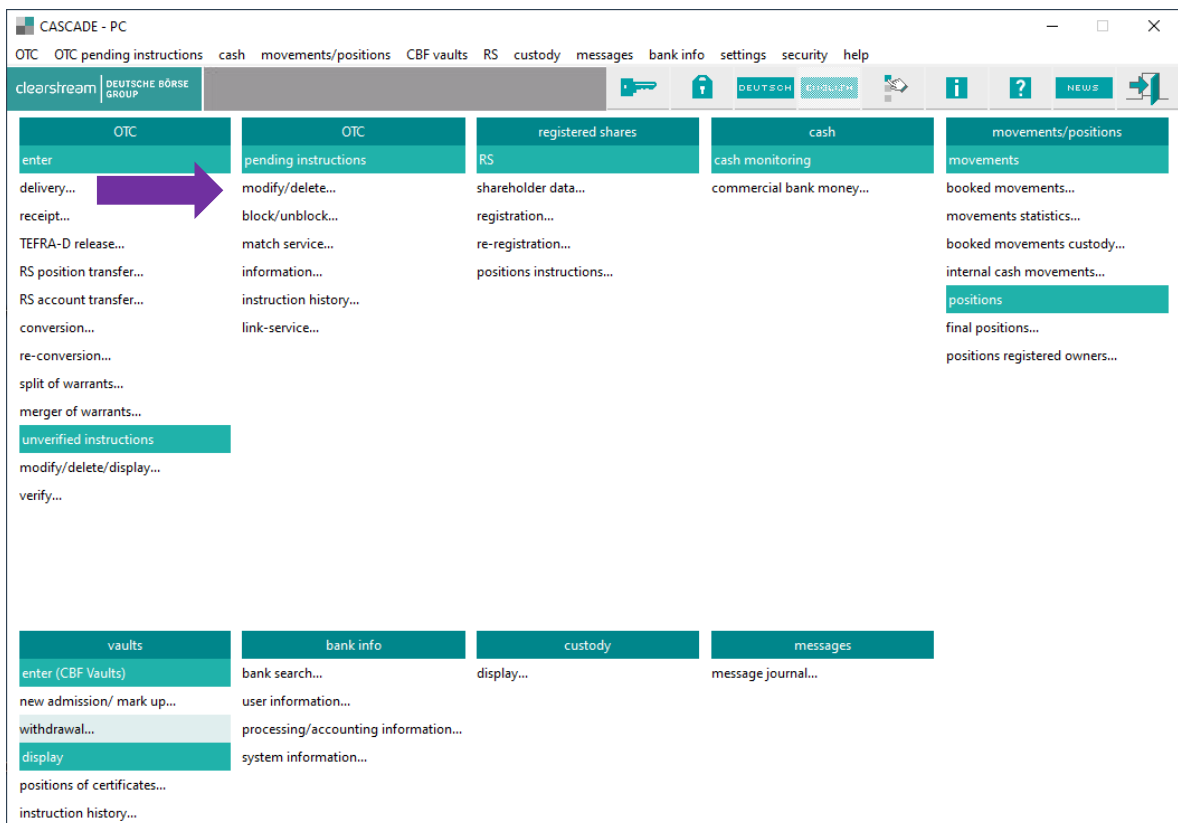
11.7.1 Mark for editing

Deposit and withdrawal instructions that are already in the CASCADE instruction status, can still be edited under certain circumstances. Deposits can be processed for editing and/or deletion by the person making the entry up to the processing status "Accepted by CBF". Withdrawals can be processed for editing and/or deletion by the person making the entry up to booking.

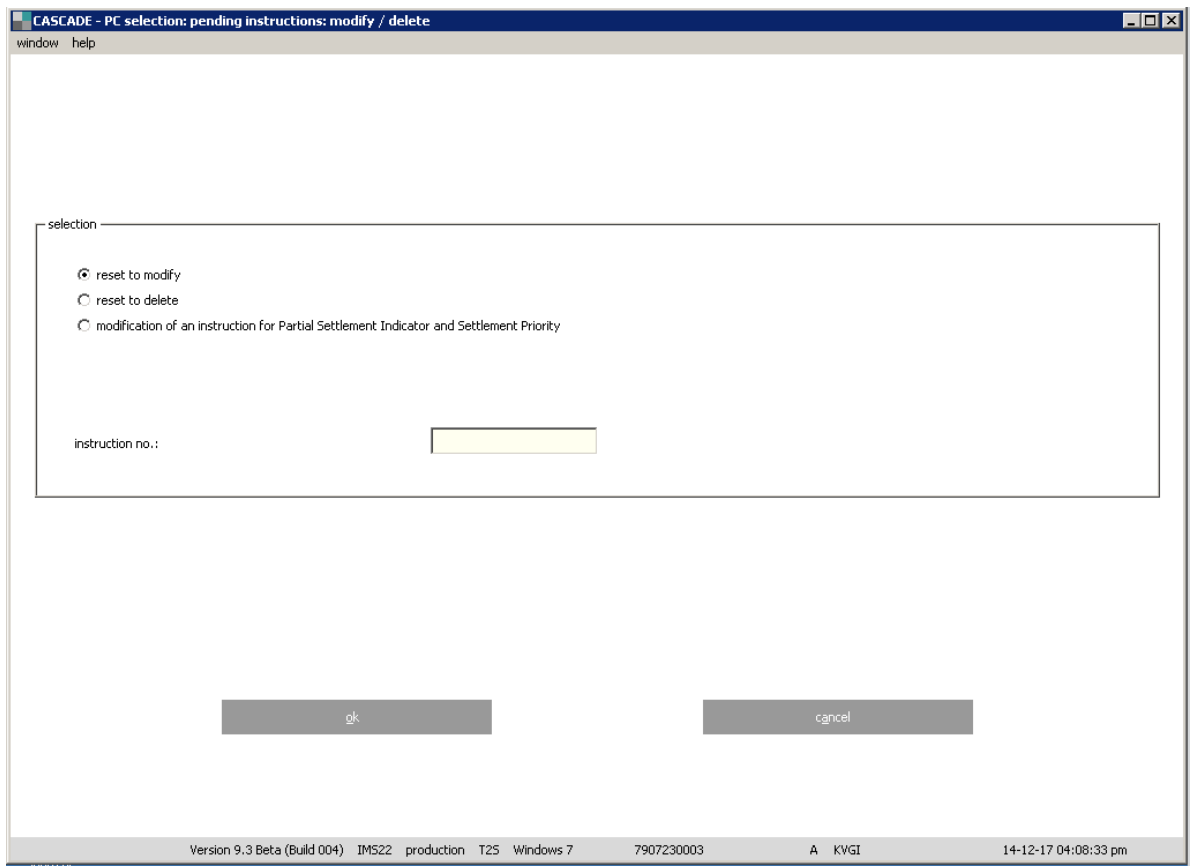
However, it is not possible to make changes directly in instruction status. Instructions are only marked in the instruction status and consequently transferred to the entry status of the user. This method is required to assure compliance with the security checking principle requiring at least two persons when changing the instruction status. The following steps are performed in this process:

- The instruction to be edited is marked in the instruction status.
- The marked instruction is removed from the instruction status and saved in the history of the instruction status.
- Generation of the marked instruction in the entry status;
- Editing of the generated instruction in the remote control status;
- Verification of the edited instruction in the entry status;
- Transfer of the edited instruction as a new instruction from the recording status to the instruction status.

To mark an instruction for editing, its instruction number must be known. The instruction to be marked for editing will be found under **OTC / pending instructions / modify/delete / Reset to modify**.

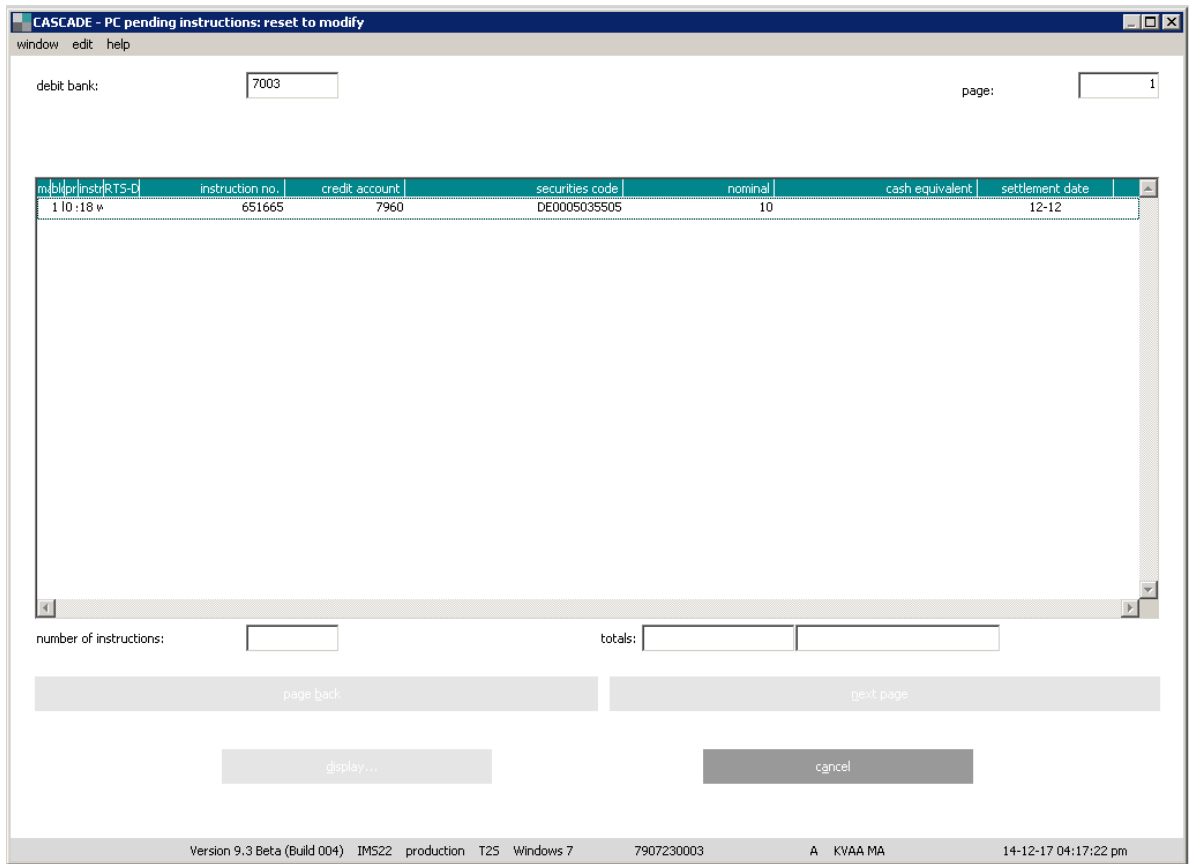


Example: **pending instructions / modify/delete / reset to modify**

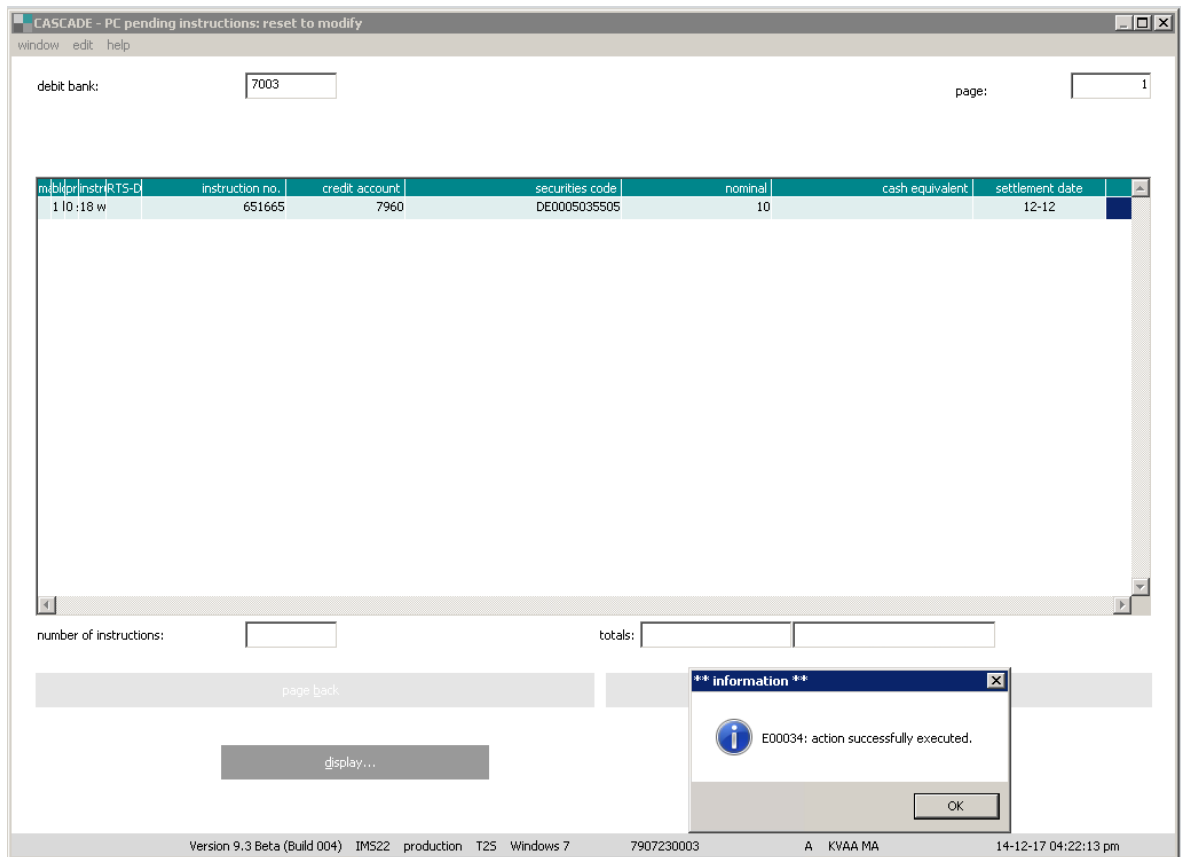


CASCADE-PC User Manual

After clicking the “OK” button, the tabular display of the selected instructions appears.



By clicking on the left mouse button, choose the call sub-menu to mark an instruction, to modify and confirm by clicking the "OK" button.



The instruction status will be changed to unverified (entry status) and the instruction data can be edited.

11.7.2 Mark for deletion

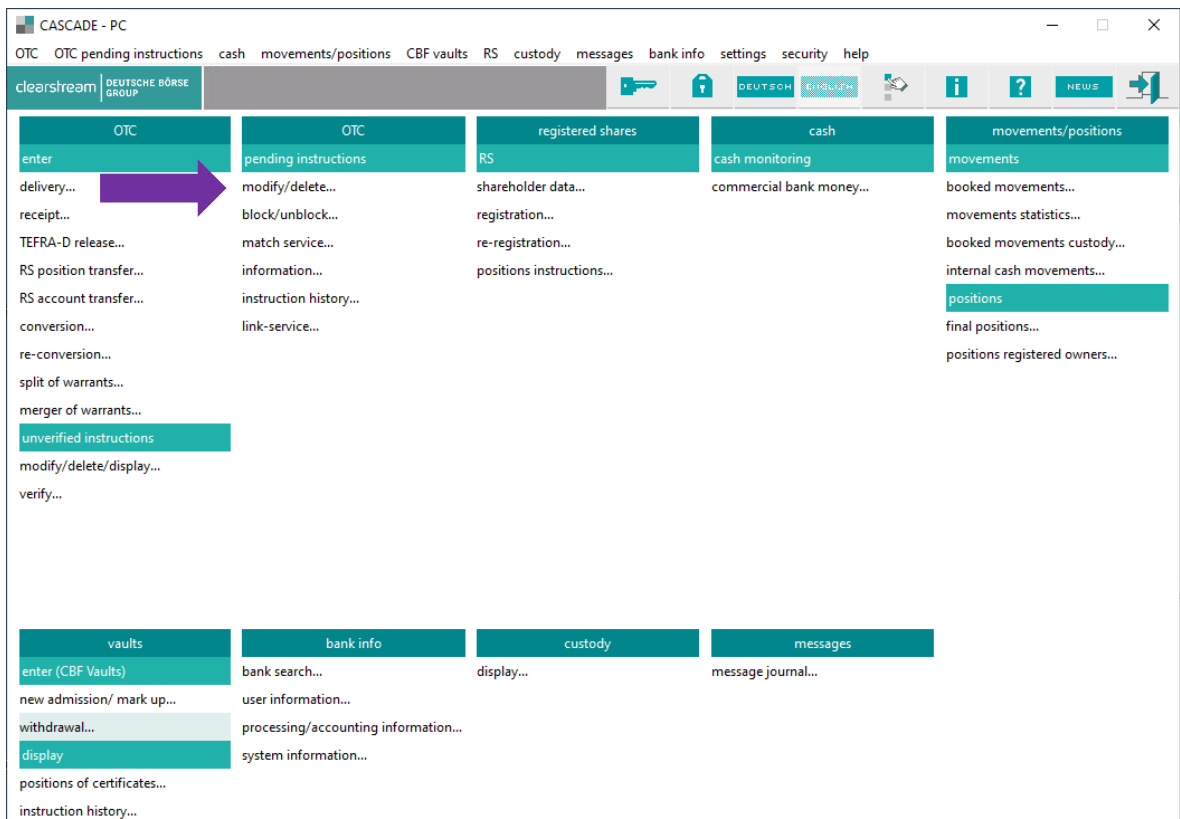
Deposit and withdrawal instructions that are already in CASCADE instruction status can be deleted under certain circumstances. Deposits can be processed for deletion by the user making the entry up to the processing status "Accepted by CBF". Withdrawals can be processed for deletion by the user making the entry up to booking.

However, it is not possible to make deletions directly in the instruction status. Instructions are only marked in the instruction status and consequently transferred to the entry status of the user. This method is required to assure compliance with the security checking principle requiring at least two persons.

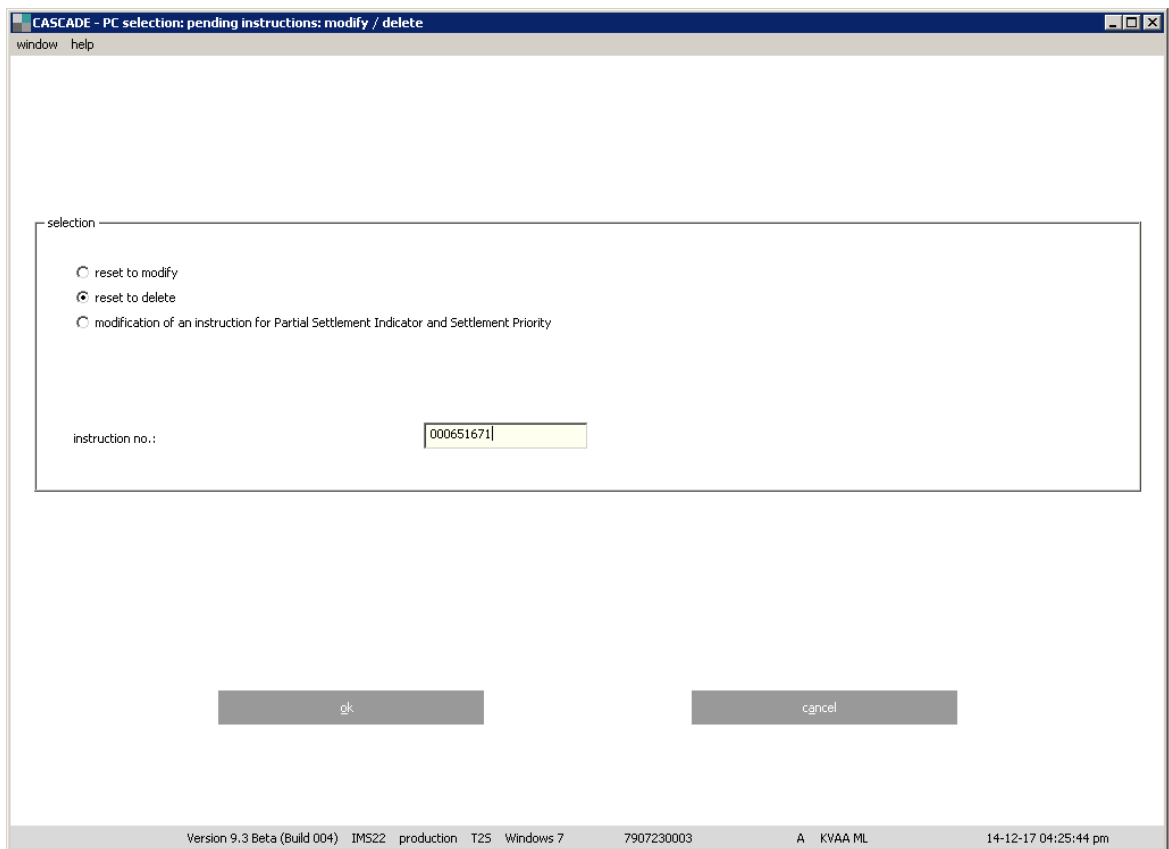
The following steps are performed in this process:

- The instruction to be deleted is marked in the instruction status.
- The marked instruction is removed from the instruction status and saved in the history of the instruction status.
- Generation of the marked instruction in the entry status.
- Verification of the instruction to be deleted in the entry status.
- Physical deletion of the verified instruction from the entry status.

To mark an instruction for editing, its instruction number must be known. The instruction to be marked for editing will be found under **OTC / pending instructions / modify/delete / reset to delete**.

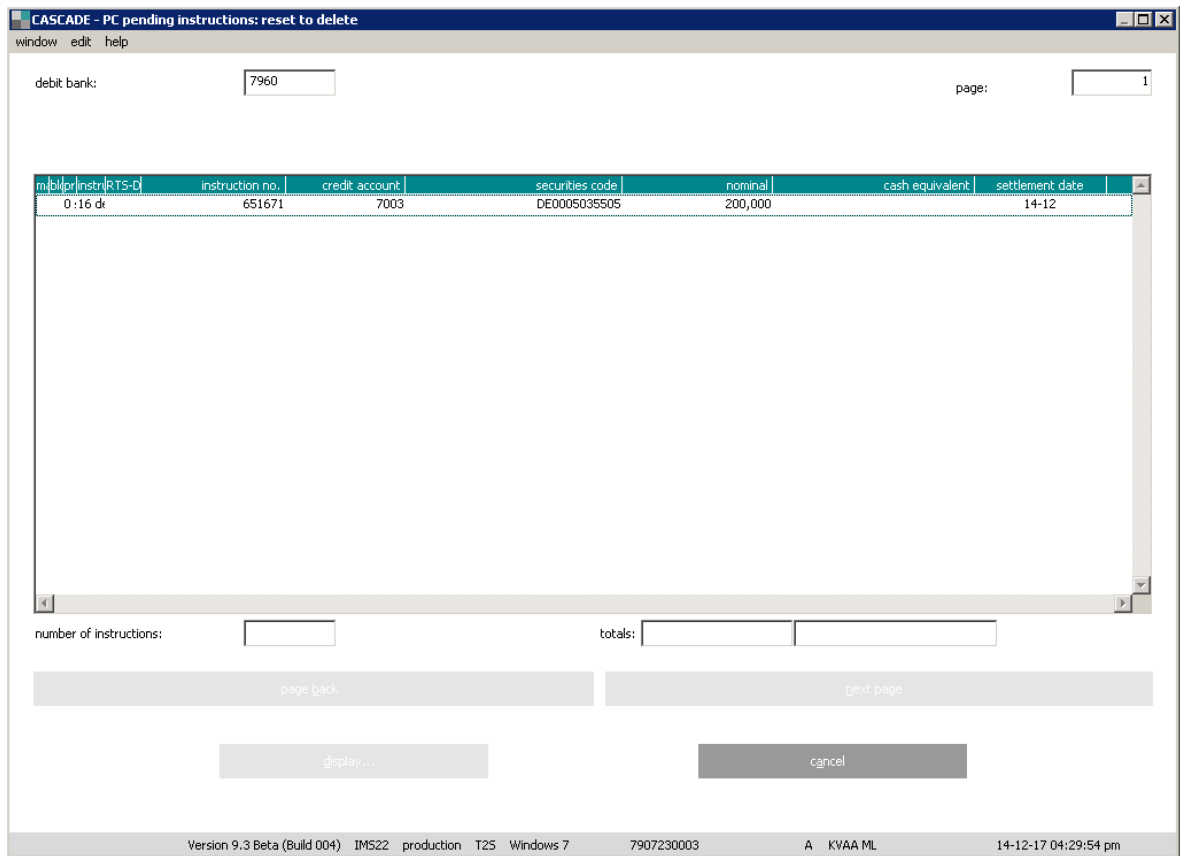


Example: **pending instructions / modify/delete / reset to delete**



CASCADE-PC User Manual

After clicking the "OK" button, the tabular display of the selected instruction appears.



It may be necessary to branch to the detailed display/information if the tabular information is insufficient and the client wants to be sure that they are processing the correct instruction. The instruction details will be displayed after clicking the “Display” button.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC Deposit new admission settlement information order balance". The window contains the following fields and values:

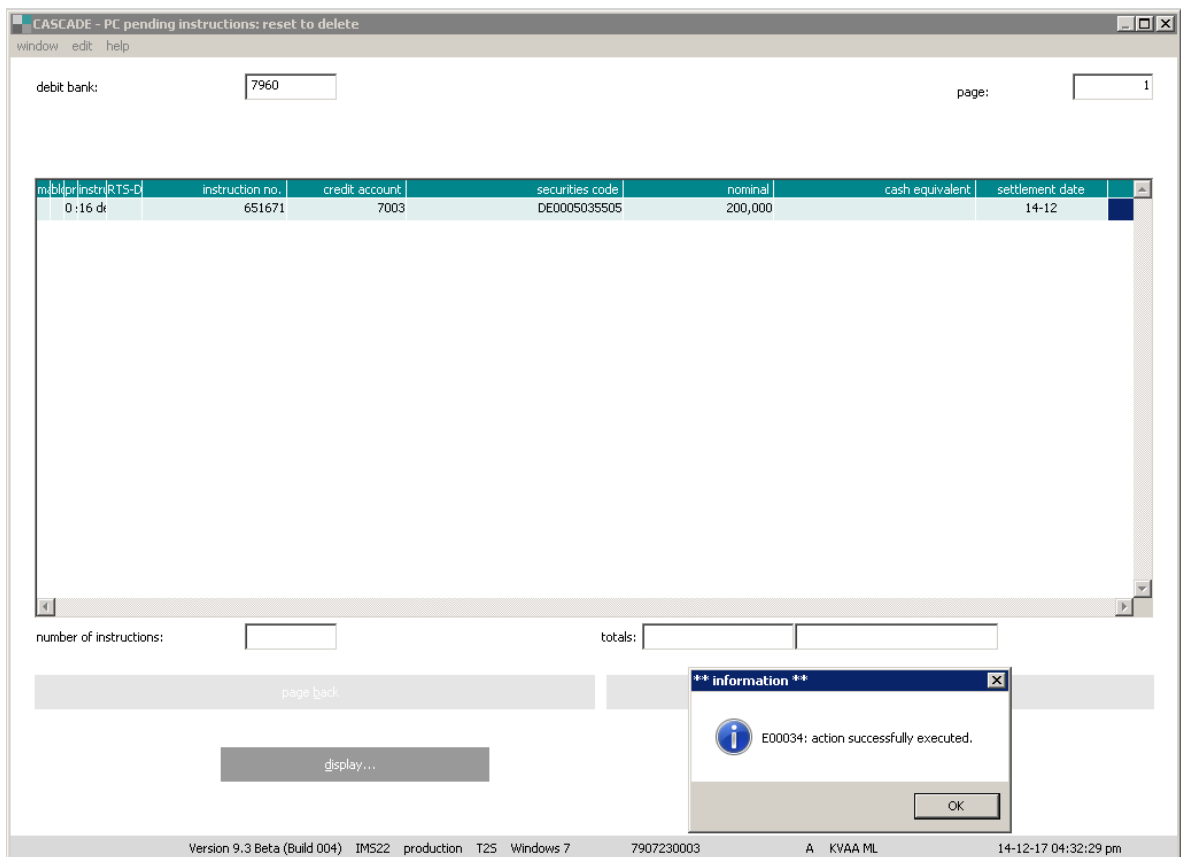
- instruction no.: 651671
- sub-instruction type: new admission/ mark up
- debit account: 7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS
- credit account: 7003 000 DEUTSCHE BANK AG
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 200,000 unit: ST security type: coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 200,000 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: 0 delivery-type: 2 - new admission of global certificate
- organisation number: 1 position sub-type:
- settlement date: 14-12-2017 deposit reason: 1 - from issuance
- customer reference:
- deposit of:
- address:
- deposit number:
- progress status: 100 deposit was entered completely
- processing status: 005 not submitted, instruction blocked

A "Cancel" button is located at the bottom center of the window.

By clicking the “Cancel” button, the client returns to the compact list display.

The instruction is marked for deletion in the compact tabular display. By right mouse click, the system branches to the display/deletion menu where it issues processing confirmation. The marked instruction is marked for deletion with the internal status “Order for deletion, exclude from processing”. Furthermore, the date, time, terminal and user ID of the mark are recorded.

CASCADE-PC User Manual



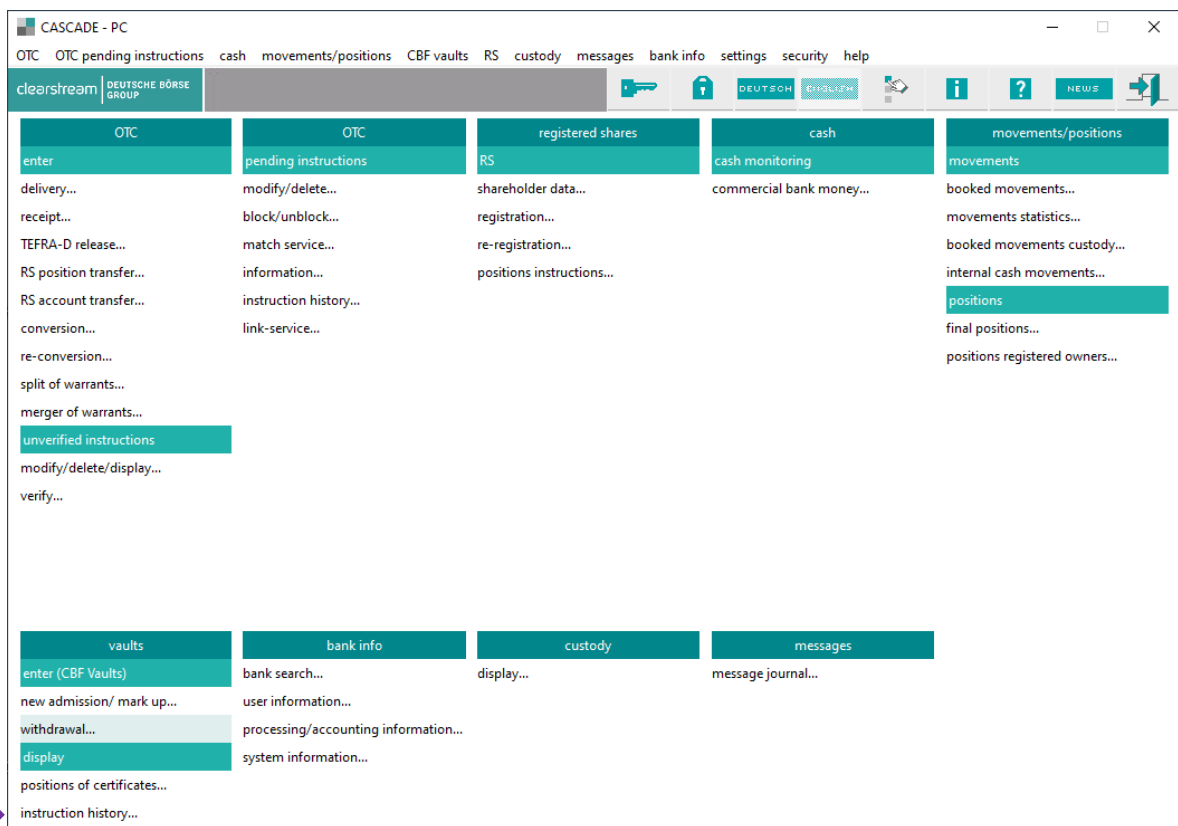
The instruction can be called historical using the information service in instruction status. The marked instruction is forwarded directly for verification. Once the verification is complete, the instruction is physically deleted from the entry status.

11.8 Instruction history

This transaction provides information functions for the deposit and withdrawal history that enable monitoring of the exact processing status of an instruction for the instructions types AA16 and AA18 at the CBF checkpoints. Only own instructions (credit/debit account of the person inputting) are displayed.

As no certificate numbers allocated to a booked withdrawal instruction that has not yet been delivered are displayed any longer under the transaction Certificates positions, discrepancies may be found between the CARAD balance and the CASCADE account balance shown there (for example, with respect to reallocations). This also concerns certificates from booked deposit instructions that have not yet undergone final processing. These deviations can be precisely tracked via the instruction history, because instructions that have not been completely processed can be viewed there in their respective processing status.

The menu screen for the "instruction history" can be accessed via **vaults / display / instruction history**



By entering further selection criteria, the following short display can be limited additionally.

In the selection of instruction history, the GUT-/LAST-BANK (credit/debit bank) is set as a default with the first four digits of the user ID, and only this bank number is permitted for selection, which means that only the deposits or withdrawals of a client's own vault will be displayed.

The respective selection options for the individual function codes are described in detail.

Field description – Instruction history access screen

Screen fields	Input
FREMDTRESOR (J/N)	Required input
INSOURCED VAULT	Preset to N
CREDIT/DEBIT BANK	Required input <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Credit bank for deposits • Debit bank for withdrawals • Preset to bank number. From user ID
WKN	Optional entry Securities identification <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “B” – stock exchange abbreviation • “C” – CUSIP-NUMBER • “F” – CEDEL EURO NUMBER • “I” – ISIN • “W” – German WKN
DEPOSIT/WITHDRAWALNUMBER	Optional entry Deposit entry number for deposits Withdrawal entry number for withdrawals
ORDER NUMBER	Optional entry
DATE FROM	Optional entry <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • for KPHI HE: Date of the securities acceptance • for KPHI HA: Date of the book entry • for KPHI HO: Date of the book entry
DATE TO	Optional entry see DATE FROM (Entry only allowed in connection with DATE FROM)

11.8.1 Deposit history (HE)

Selecting the function Deposit history accesses the compact view of the deposit history. The compact history view is sorted by ISIN (WKN), instruction number, deposit number or acceptance date depending on the prescribed selection criteria and in all cases according to date and time of the history entry. This ensures that history entries for an instruction are displayed consecutively and in their processing sequence.

The view can be restricted further with the ISIN (WKN), instruction number, Deposit number, date from and date to fields.

If both the “date from” and the “date to” are entered, all instructions displayed that are accepted either manually at the CBF checkpoint acceptance of securities or automatically within the specified period. If only the field “Date from” is edited, only instructions that were accepted on this day are shown.

11.8.1.1 Compact view KPHI HE

The compact history view can be retrieved under Vaults / Instruction history / Deposits.

The following selections are possible:

- Securities ISIN (WKN)
Displays all instructions of the respective ISIN.
- Tresor Segment and Credit account
Displays all instructions of the selected Tresor Segment and Credit account.
- Instruction number
Only one instruction will be displayed.

The entry of an ISIN for all function codes is also permitted and restricts instructions for processing to a specific class.

Example: Selection based on instruction number

selection

deposits
 withdrawals
 new admission without certificate

additional selection

securities: ISIN [text box]

vaults-segment: [dropdown]

credit -/debit bank: [text box]

instruction no.: 651305

in/outbound number: [text box]

date from: [text box] up to: [text box]

ok cancel

Version 10.0 Beta (Build 002) IMS22 production T2S Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230001 A KPHI HE 14-05-21 11:02:26 am

CASCADE-PC User Manual

After confirming selection criteria, the list view will be displayed.

code	sec. Code	instruction no.	deposit number	nominal value of certificate	progress Status	internal instruction type	execution date
E	CH0373948071	651305	1720	0	order processed completely	3 - new admission of certific	17-10-17
E	CH0373948071	651305	1721	0	order processed completely	3 - new admission of certific	17-10-17
	DE000A0JELN1	651305	1766	50,000	order processed completely	5 - settlement with automati	16-10-18
	DE000A0JELN1	651305	260	50,000	order processed completely	5 - settlement with automati	11-04-19
	DE0005035505	651305	528	50	certificate/ single sheet vault and col.1 - current deposit		31-05-19

By double-click on the instruction the further details will be shown:

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC deposit order history: display' window. It contains the following fields and values:

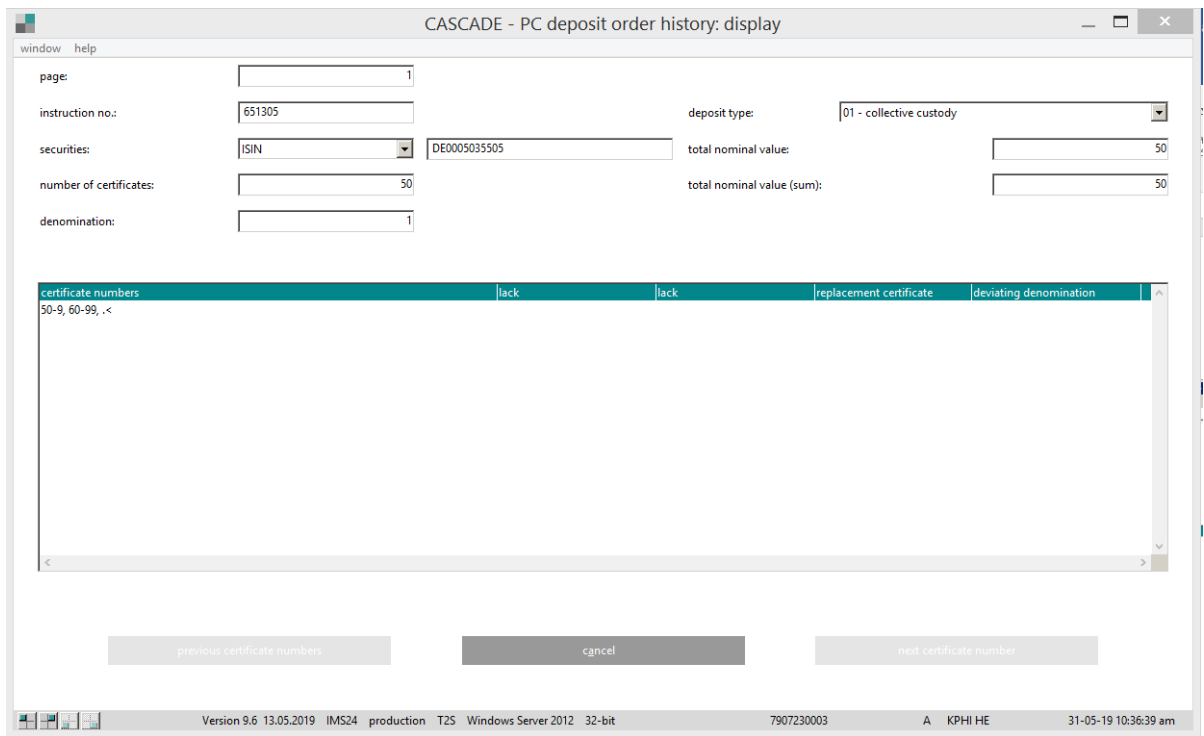
- instruction no.: 651305
- sub-instruction type: current deposit
- debit account: 7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS
- credit account: 4058 000 BANKHAUS LAMPE KG
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS
- nominal: 50 unit: ST security type: 1 - coupon sheet and principle separated
- nom. value of certificate: 50 deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- UpTo-nominal: delivery-type: 1 - current deposit
- organisation number: position sub-type:
- deposit number: 528 deposit reason:
- customer reference: -
- deposit of:
- address:
- progress status: 803 certificate/ single sheet vault and coupon sheet vault did not receive
- processing status: 200 processing successful
- sec. code common right:

A 'cancel' button is located at the bottom center of the form area.

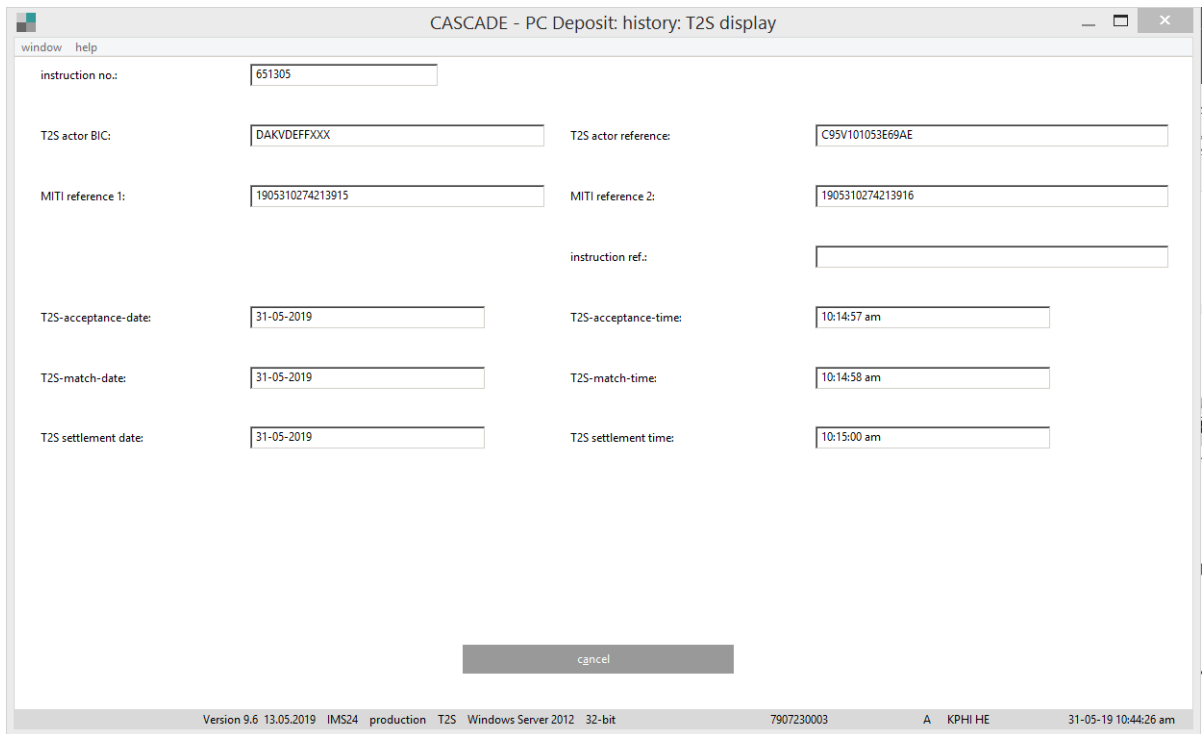
The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC deposit order history: display' window with detailed information:

- instruction no.: 651305
- deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- securities: ISIN DE0005035505
- custody option: 9 - Collective custody
- special characteristic:
- deviating denomination: no deviant securities description
- next coupon/ LEG: 57 last coupon/ LEG: 60
- overdue coupon/legitimation coupon of: up to:
- global certificate: no
- evidence type: 1 - delivery-in of physical certificates
- text:

A 'cancel' button is located at the bottom center of the form area.



For the T2S-relevant instruction, the screen will be displayed:



In addition to the KZ (mark) field, a four-character field exists that provides the following information:
Field structure:

1. Certificate vaultblank = CBF vault
 - F = Third party vault
 - S = Individual safe custody
 - M = Precious metal
2. Cert. originblank = Entry * = LIMA (Link Manager; see section 10.1)
 - ! = Deposits with evidence type=2 is (therefore generally returns)
 - G = Automatically generated instruction (markup/markdown)
 - U = EDT upload procedure
3. Cert. evidence type only specific characteristics
 - 6 /re-registration/locking up) or
 - 7 (no assignment) E =EDT deposit
4. Certificate stop orderblank = no blocked certificates
 - 0 = At least one certificate with a stop instruction.

11.8.2 Withdrawal history (HA)

Selecting the function Withdrawal history accesses the compact view of the withdrawal history.

The view can be restricted further with the instruction number, withdrawal number, date from and ISIN (WKN) fields. The other checkboxes are insignificant for this function.

Note: Only the history entries for one instruction are displayed with a selection via the withdrawal ledger number which were created after the transfer for book entry, since the withdrawal ledger number is only assigned at this point.

11.8.2.1 Compact view KPHI HA

Sorting depends on the entered selection criteria according to ISIN (WKN), instruction number or withdrawal ledger number. Additionally, sorting in each case is according to date and time of the historical entry, so that all entries for an instruction follow directly after one another.

CASCADE - PC selection order history

selection

deposits
 withdrawals
 new admission without certificate

additional selection

securities:
 vaults-segment:
 credit -/debit bank:
 instruction no.:
 in/outbound number:
 date from: up to:

ok cancel

Version 10.0 Beta (Build 002) IMS22 production T25 Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230001 A KPHI HE 14-05-21 11:02:26 am

CASCADE - PC withdrawal order history: display

page:

code	sec. Code	instruction no.	withdrawal register number	nominal value of certificate	progress Status	internal instruction type	transmission	execution date
	DE0005035505	651307	35	50	withdrawal cancelled	1 - withdrawl physical certifi	00/00	16-04-19

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T25 Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KPHI HA 31-05-19 10:53:32 am

In addition to the code field, a four-character field exists that provides the following information: Field structure:

1. Certificate vaultblank = CBF vault

F = Third party vault

S = Individual safe custody

M = Precious metal

2. Cert. originblank = Entry * = LIMA (Link Manager; see section 10.1)

= Change with KADI date

G = automatically generated instruction (markup/markdown)

3. Certificate evidence typeblank

4. Certificate stop orderblank = no blocked certificates

0 = At least 1 certificate with a stop instruction

11.8.3 New admission without Certificate (H0)

Within new function KPHI H0, for all ISINs with IAA = "7" the AA16 instructions generated via eMISSION are displayed with "OUE" in the compact view.

Manually created instructions for all ISINs with IAA = "7" contain neither "U" nor "E", but an "O", means "Ohne Urkunden".

Instructions with IAA \leftrightarrow "7" are not displayed for KPHI H0

11.8.3.1 Compact view KPHI HO

CASCADE - PC selection order history

window help

selection

- deposits
- withdrawals
- new admission without certificate

additional selection

securities: ISIN

vaults-segment:

credit -/debit bank: 4312

instruction no.:

in/outbound number:

date from: up to:

ok cancel

Version 10.0 Beta (Build 002) IMS22 production T25 Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230001 A KPHI HO 14-05-21 11:18:55 am

11.8.4 Instruction history KPHI

11.8.4.1 Full view KPHI HA

The screen sequence is shown below using the example of an individual certificate withdrawal.

Basic screen

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC withdrawal order history: display' window. The interface includes the following fields and values:

- instruction no.:** 651307
- deposit type:** 01 - collective custody
- debit account:** 4058 000 BANKHAUS LAMPE KG
- credit account:** 7960 000 CBF TRESORBESTAND GS
- securities:** ISIN: DE0005035505, ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS; German sec. code: 503550
- nominal:** 50; **unit:** ST
- nom. value of certificate:** 50; **apportionment:** (empty dropdown)
- settlement date:** 16-04-2019; **withdrawal procedure:** (empty dropdown)
- position code:** (empty dropdown); **security type:** 1 - coupon sheet and principle separated
- customer reference:** (empty dropdown) - (empty dropdown)
- next coupon/ LEG:** 57; **number in withdrawal register:** 35
- global certificate:** no; **withdrawal UpTo-certificates:** no
- withdrawal act:** 1 - withdrawal; **deviating address for dispatch:** no
- progress status:** 650 withdrawal cancelled
- processing status:** 200 processing successful

A 'cancel' button is located at the bottom center of the form area. The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T25 Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KPHI HA 31-05-19 10:56:51 am.

Address screen

CASCADE - PC withdrawal order history: display

window help

instruction no.: 651307 deposit type: 01 - collective custody

securities: ISIN DE0005035505

name:

street:

country/postal code/place:

personal address

address number: BIC-CODE:

name: BANKHAUS LAMPE KG loc.code major customer:

name affix: main account:

street: JAEGERHOFSTRASSE 10

country/postal code/place: DE 40479 DUESSELDORF

postal code/PO box: 40005 10 14 42

info text:

cancel

Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T2S Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KPHI HA 31-05-19 10:56:51 am

Denomination screen

CASCADE - PC withdrawal order history: display

instruction no.: 651307 deposit type: 01 - collective custody

securities: ISIN DE0005035505 total nominal value: 50

organisation number: total nominal value (sum): 50

collective number: bloc nominal:

number/literal	denomination	number/literal	denomination
50*	1		

text:

automatic certificates allocation: yes

cancel

Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T2S Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KPHI HA 31-05-19 10:56:51 am

T2S information screen

CASCADE - PC withdrawal: history: T2S display

instruction no.: 651307

T2S actor BIC: DAKVDEFFXXX T2S actor reference: C94G0830476A2B6

MITI reference 1: 1904160272793808 MITI reference 2: 1904160272793809

instruction ref.:

T2S-acceptance-date: 16-04-2019 T2S-acceptance-time: 08:35:28 am

T2S-match-date: 16-04-2019 T2S-match-time: 08:35:28 am

T2S settlement date: 16-04-2019 T2S settlement time: 08:35:29 am

cancel

Version 9.6 13.05.2019 IMS24 production T2S Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230003 A KPHI HA 31-05-19 11:02:07 am

Fees screen

CASCADE - PC withdrawal order history: display

window help

instruction no.: deposit type:

securities:

number in withdrawal register:

transmission to:

transmission from:

business case:

insurance value: shipping value:

number of transmissions: already performed packet:

calculation of charges:

total transportation and insurance expenses

transmission reason:

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KPHI HA 18-12-17 09:36:07 am

11.8.4.2 Full view KPHI HO

Instruction no.: 9514750 sub-instruction type: New Admission of dematerialized securities

Debit account: 7939 000 FREIE HANSESTADT BREMEN LSV

Credit account: 4312 000 EUROCLEAR BANK S.A./N.V.

Entitled bank: 18600

Securities: ISIN DE000A2YNXH4 BREMEN LSA A.228 19/20 05.05.G
German sec. code A2YNXH

Nominal: 1,000,000,000 unit:

Settlement date: 11-05-2021 delivery-type: 6 - new admission SV

Deposit number: 12 deposit reason:

Deposit of:

Text: 110521

Progress status: 993 order processed completely without CARAD

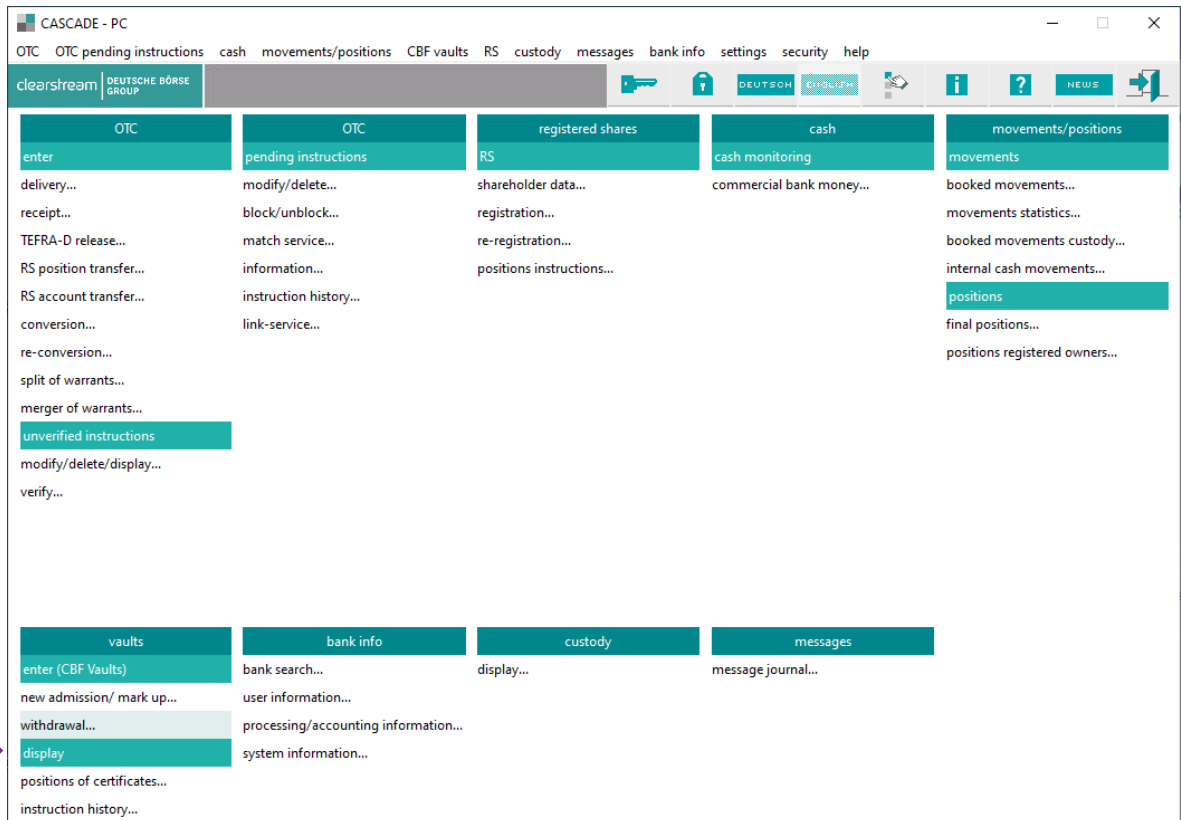
Processing status: 200 processing successful

cancel

Version 10.0 Beta (Build 002) IMS22 production T2S Windows Server 2012 32-bit 7907230001 A KPHI HO 14-05-21 11:28:52 am

11.9 Certificate positions

The user is able to view information on their positions and transactions on the initial screen under **vaults / display**.



Data from the working stock, block package stock, ice block package stock and global certificates are displayed for the function Information on certificates. The function Certificate number search calculates the data from the working, block package stock and from deposit/withdrawal positions (recording and instruction balance). The data is only displayed if the user has the required access authorisation to the data.

The following entry options exist:

- ISIN (WKN)

The (ISIN) WKN must be entered. The format of the WKN can be determined via the securities identifier “WP-Kennung”. The securities identification is preset to I.

If only the WKN is entered, then securities from the CBF vault are displayed providing the user is authorised to access this data.

Securities identification	Meaning
B	Stock exchange code
C	CUSIP number
F	CEDEL EURO number
I	ISIN
W	Alphanumerical WKN

- DEPOSIT TYPE

The selection of the data for display can be restricted with the deposit type. The “Bank” field must be specified for the vaults segment 2 and 3.

- DENOMINATION

The selection can be restricted by entries in the two fields. If a literal value is entered in the field, then denomination and the GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N) field must also be completed.

- CERTIFICATE NUMBER

Entries in this field are only necessary for the certificate number search function.

- GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N)

If the field is completed with N(o), only individual certificates are displayed, if Y(es) is entered, then only global certificates are displayed.

If a certain denomination must be entered, then an entry must be made in this field.

If an organisation number or collective number is entered, then Y(es) must be entered in this field.

- ORG/COLLECTIVE NUMBER

Entering an organisation or collective number leads directly to the full view of the certificate. The two numbers must identify the same certificate. The user must of course be authorised to access this certificate.

If the bank number and customer reference is also entered for certificates in FTB, the input values must correspond to the values on the certificate.

- BANK

If the bank number is entered without a customer reference, the positions in safe custody are also displayed in addition to all FTB positions.

- CUSTOMER REFERENCE

If the customer reference is entered, then the bank number must be entered. If an organisation or collective number is also entered, then the certificate must have the collective and/or organisation number entered under this customer reference and bank number.

This leads directly to the full view.

11.9.1 Authorisation checks

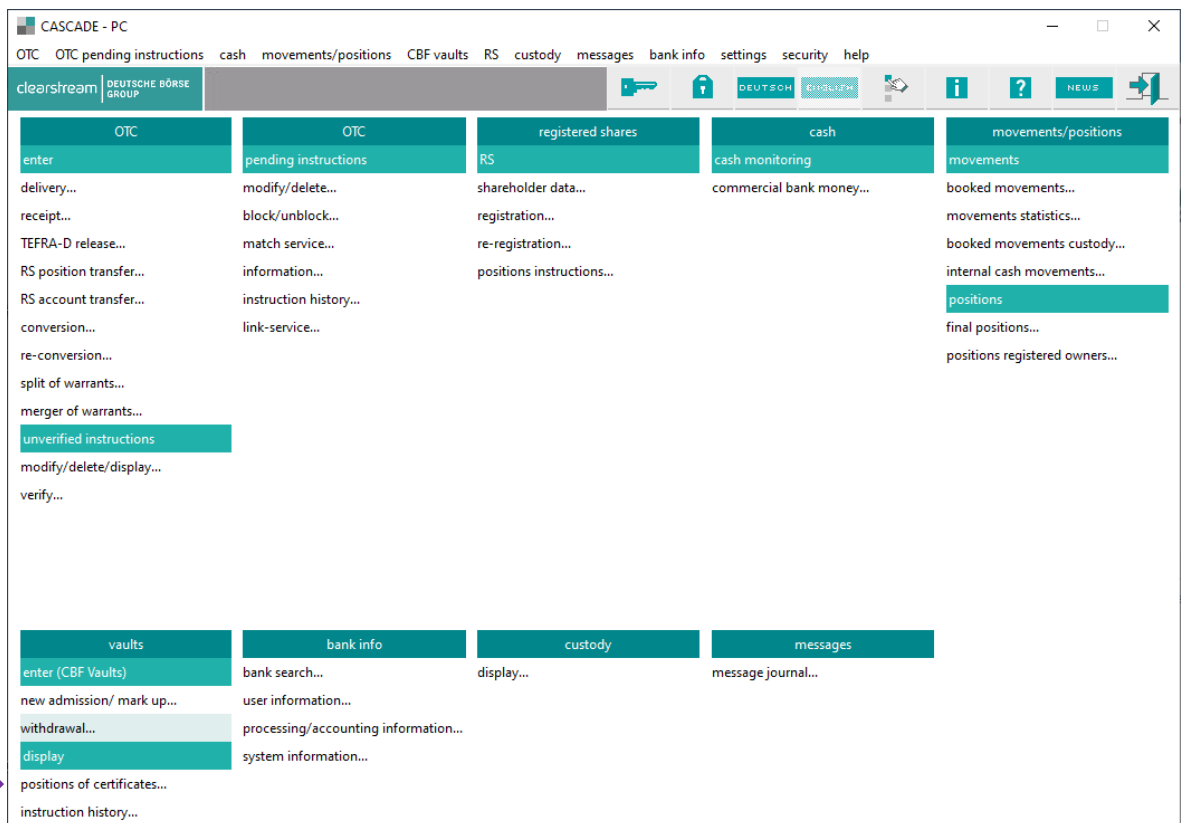
For information, only the certificates in the vault segments

- 2 = safe custody; and
- 3 = third party vault positions

are displayed, which belong to the positions of the CBF client entered in the "BANK" field.

If the co-issuing bank issues queries in this respect, only certificate positions are displayed which are not held in vault segments 2 and 3.

11.9.2 Information on certificates



11.9.2.1 General description

The following field is a required field on the selection screen:

- ISIN (WKN)

Selections can be made with the following fields:

- DENOMINATION (only for individual certificates) with and without literals
- DEPOSIT TYPE
- GLOBAL CERTIFICATE
- ORGANISATION NUMBER
- COLLECTIVE NUMBER

The ORGANISATION NUMBER contains the internal organisation number of the issuer entered on the global certificate (technical global certificate, scrip, interim global certificate or permanent global certificate).

The system assigns a current COLLECTIVE NUMBER to all global certificates which is unique within an ISIN (WKN).

11.9.2.2 Basis of data for screens

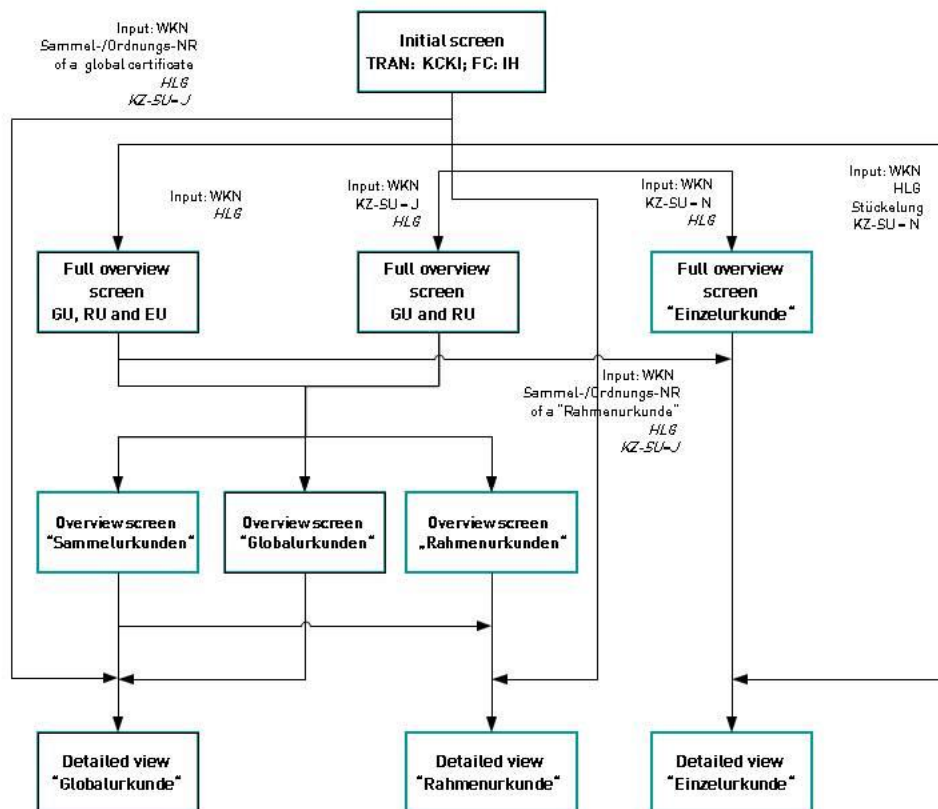
Screens for global certificates are displayed based on current positions. Deposit/withdrawal instructions which have been booked but which have not yet undergone final processing at CBF are taken into account.

The screens with respect to individual certificates have the status from the previous evening after all changes to positions has been updated. Nominals and certificate numbers from booked instructions, which have not yet been received from the previous day, are not in the readout. Nominals and certificate numbers which have not yet been assigned to withdrawal instructions that have undergone final processing are no longer displayed.

The database for these readouts may result in temporary discrepancies in the nominals versus the CASCADE account balance. They can be inspected in detail by viewing the instruction history (transaction KPHI).

11.9.2.3 Presentation of the screen sequence

The following graphical structure results:



The following screens exist in the KCKI client information:

1. Initial screen

Only entry of the security is required. Different overviews are provided on the following screen if the selection is qualified further. If the selection is fully qualified, then a full view (detailed view at the certificate number level) results.

2. The full overview screen “Information Positions”

All positions for a security are displayed in tabular format in this screen. The readout is divided into global certificates and individual certificates. The individual positions are cumulated, subtotals are calculated for each deposit type. An overall total is provided.

Depending on the selection, only global certificates or individual certificates are shown on the overview.

3. Overview screen “Global Certificate”

All global certificates are sorted and displayed according to the deposit type and collective number.

4. Overview screen “Permanent Global Certificates”

Fields are shown, which relate to global certificates: “deposit type”, “organisation number”, “collective number”, “collective nominal” and an identifier as to whether the certificate numbers are securitised in the certificate.

5. Overview screen “Global Certificate (up-to)”

The screen is similar to the overview “Permanent global certificates”(permanent global certificates). The “dispositive nominal”, “pending nominal” and “up-to nominal” fields are also displayed on the screen.

6. Detailed view “Global Certificate (up-to)”

Fields relevant for Global certificates (up-to) are displayed. The “dispositive nominal” and “up-to nominal” fields are also displayed on the screen.

7. Detailed view “Permanent Global Certificates”

This screen is similar to the full view “Permanent global certificates”.

8. Detailed view “Individual Certificate”

The certificate numbers from the working, block package and ice block package stock are displayed in arithmetic order on this screen.

The following table describes how to access the screens from the initial screen:

Screen	Contents	Accessible via
Total overview global certificates (GU und RU)	Tabular view of the global certificates sorted according to the deposit type	Initial screen: Entry WKN, KZ-SU = J
Total overview individual certificates	Tabular display of the individual certificates sorted according to the deposit type, literal and denomination	Initial screen: Entry WKN, KZ-SU = N
Overview global certificates	Tabular view of the global certificates sorted according to the deposit type and collective number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete overview (GU, RU and EU): Selection of the total line GU and RU Complete overview (GU and RU): Selection of the total line GU and RU
Overview permanent global certificates	Tabular view of the global certificates sorted according to the deposit type and collective number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete overview (GU, RU and EU): Selection of the total line of the permanent global certificates Complete overview (GU and RU): Selection of the total line of the permanent global certificates
Overview global certificates (up- to)	Tabular view of the global certificates (up-to) sorted according to the deposit type and collective number	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Complete overview (GU, RU and EU): Selection of the total line of the global certificates (up-to)
Detailed view permanent global or global certificate (up-to)	Detailed display of permanent global or global certificate (up-to)	<p>Initial screen: Full specifications for the permanent global or global certificate (up-to) including WKN and collective or organisation number</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Overview global certificate: Selection of a permanent global certificate/global certificate (up-to) Overview permanent global certificate or global certificate (up-to): Selection of a permanent global certificate/global certificate (up-to)
Detailed view individual certificates	Detailed view of the certificate numbers for a deposit type, literal and denomination	<p>Initial screen: Entry WKN, deposit type, literal, denomination</p> <p>Complete overview:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selection of a deposit type, literal and denomination for an for an individual certificate Complete view individual certificate: Selection of a deposit type, literal and denomination
Certificate number search	Certificate number information	Initial screen: KCKI/IS transaction with entries WKN, literal, denomination, certificate number

11.9.2.3.1 Description of the screens

11.9.2.3.2 Initial screen of the transaction Certificate positions client information

The ISIN (WKN) is a required field.

CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates

window help

selection

certificates

search of certificate numbers

selection

securities: ISIN

deposit type:

denomination:

certificate numbers:

global certificate:

organisation number: collective number:

bank: position code:

customer reference:

ok cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IM522 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI 18-12-17 10:51:48 am

Only valid and/or logical input options are listed on the table.

WKN	Deposit type	Literal	Denomination	KZ-SU	Collective/ Org Number	Screen
Input	-	-	-	-	-	Complete overview (GU, RU and EU)
Input	Input	-	-	-	-	Complete overview for a deposit type
Input	-	-	-	Yes	-	Complete overview permanent global and global certificates (up-to)
Input	-	-	-	No	-	Complete overview individual certificates
Input	Input	-	-	Yes	-	Complete overview permanent global and global certificates (up-to) for a deposit type
Input	Input	-	-	No	-	Complete overview individual certificates for a deposit type
Input	Input	-	Input	No	-	Complete overview individual certificates for a deposit type for a denomination (with/without literal)
Input	-	-	Input	No	-	Complete overview individual certificates for a denomination (with/without literal)
Input	-	Literal	Input	No	-	Complete overview individual certificates for the literal/ denomination
Input	-	Input ="/"	Input	No	-	Complete overview individual certificates without literal for the denomination
Input	-	-	-	-	Input	Complete view GU or RU including the collective or organisation number entered
Input	Input	Input ="/"	Input	No	-	Complete view individual certificates without literal for the denomination
Input	Input	Literal	Input	No	-	Complete view individual certificates for a literal/denomination

The following points are important to understand this table:

- Input means the entry of a valid value.
- Combinations other than those listed in the table are pointless and/or not allowed.
- A literal can only be entered in combination with a denomination.
- If no literal is specified then all literals for a denomination are displayed. The character "/" must be entered in the literal checkbox to select positions without a literal.
- The entry of a certificate number is only required for the certificate number search KCKI/IS.

11.9.2.3.3 Definitions

Field	Term	Explanation
Global certificate nominal	Global certificate nominal	<p>The Global certificate nominal indicates the nominal securitised by a global certificate.</p> <p>This is displayed without decimal places if the content is "zero".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For global certificates (up-to): The valuated part for a global certificate (up-to) is entered in this field in this field. The up-to nominal may not be exceeded in the process. For all other global certificates: The nominal value which is recorded on the global certificate is entered in this field. <p>The global certificate nominal of certificates documented in CARAD is increased following successful transfer to CARAD to update certificates as the result of a mark up with automatic booking release, a mark up without automatic booking release and new admission of a valuated global certificate</p>
Up-to nominal	Up-to nominal	<p>The Up-to nominal is the nominal of a global certificate (up-to) that represents the limit for the mark up of a global certificate (up-to). There may be multiple global certificates (up-to) within a security.</p>
Nominal Anticipated	Dispositive nominal	<p>To ensure that the part of a global certificate (up-to) which was not marked up is sufficient for pending mark downs between release for booking and transfer to CARAD, the instruction nominal to be valuated is entered in the Nominal Anticipated field.</p> <p>With booking authorisation (both manual and automatic), the dispositive nominal for the respective certificate is increased by the instruction nominal. The dispositive nominal is reduced by the instruction nominal with the successful transfer of an instruction to CARAD and the global certificate nominal is increased accordingly. If booking authorisation is withdrawn and/or if the instruction is deleted (manually or as a result of redenomination), the dispositive nominal is again reduced by the instruction nominal.</p>
Pending nominal	Total pending nominal	<p>The Pending nominal is the difference of the up-to nominal less the certificate nominal less dispositive nominals.</p>
Total global certificate nominal	Total global certificate nominal	<p>This is displayed without decimal places if the content is "zero".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For global certificates (up-to): It contains the sum of the valuated parts of the up-to nominal for all Global up-to certificates belonging to the security in the CARAD working stock for the selected CARAD custody type. For all other global certificates: It contains the sum of the nominals for all global certificates (permanent global certificates) belonging to a security in the CARAD working stock for the selected CARAD custody type.
Total up-to nominal	Total up-to nominal	<p>The sum of the global certificates (up-to) for all global certificates in the CARAD working stock belonging to a security for the CARAD custody type is calculated and is entered in the Total up-to nominal field.</p>
Total dispositive nominal	Total dispositive nominal	<p>The Total dispositive nominal contains the sum of all dispositive nominals for a security.</p>
Total pending nominal	Total pending nominal	<p>The difference between the up-to nominal Total up-to nominal and the valuated nominal. For the readout on the tabular overview, the difference is calculated from the sum of the up-to nominal less the sum of the nominal for all global certificates less the sum of the dispositive nominals less the assigned nominal.</p>

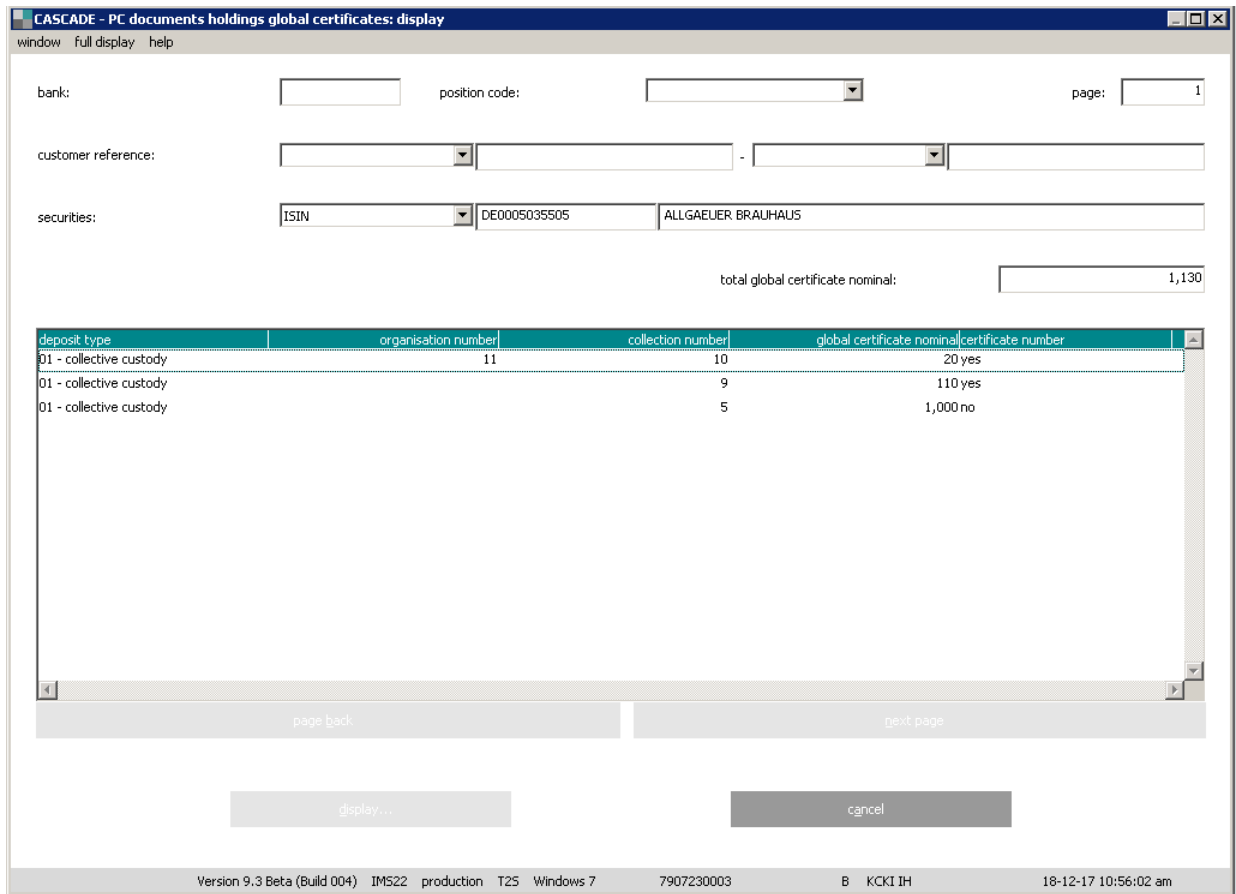
11.9.2.3.4 Overview total positions

If only the ISIN (WKN) is entered on the initial screen, then the user receives a readout for all positions. From there the user can access detailed views and/or overview screens for global certificates. If the global certificate ID is set to "Ja" (Yes), then only the global certificates are displayed. If the global certificate ID is set to "Nein" (No), then only the individual certificates are displayed.

Entering a deposit type on the initial screen makes the readout more specific. Only the data for the requested deposit type is shown.

deposit type	number of certificates	global certificate nominal	UpTo-nominal	dispositive nominal
global certificates				
01 - collective custody	3	1,130		
(i) total global certificate	3	1,130		
UpTo-certificates				
01 - collective custody	5	20,505	230,000	0
(i) total UpTo-certificate	5	20,505	230,000	0
(i) total global - and UpTo-certificates	8	21,635		

As the data from the total view does not fit on one screen, at least one subsequent page will be created. The separation in this example in front of the individual certificates is purely arbitrary. Delimitation can occur at any point, whereupon the respective column headings are repeated on the following page so that the data can be allocated.



The screen order is permanent global certificate, global certificate (up-to) and then individual certificates.

Totals are calculated for the respective permanent global certificates, global certificates (up-to) and individual certificates. A subtotal per deposit type is also calculated within the individual certificates. Finally, a total sum of all positions selected and displayed as a result of the selection is calculated.

If the user double-clicks on one of the total lines followed, he accesses the corresponding overview. This is possible in the lines Permanent Global certificate, Global certificate (up-to) total and Permanent global certificate total.

If the user selects an individual certificate, then certificate numbers from the working, block package and ice block package stock are displayed in arithmetic order.

Positions from booked instructions that have not been received are taken into account in the sums for the permanent global certificates and global certificates (up-to).

Only one line can be selected.

11.9.2.3.5 Overview global certificates

The user can reach this screen via the complete overview or the complete overview global certificates under **Positions of Certificates / Certificates** by selecting respective ISIN.

The permanent global certificates and global certificates (up-to) are sorted and displayed according to the deposit type and collective number.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar, there are two "selection" sections. The first section contains two radio buttons: "certificates" (which is selected) and "search of certificate numbers". The second section contains several input fields and dropdown menus: "securities:" with a dropdown menu showing "ISIN" and a text input field; "deposit type:" with a dropdown menu; "denomination:" with a text input field; "certificate numbers:" with a text input field; "global certificate:" with a dropdown menu; "organisation number:" with a text input field; "collective number:" with a text input field; "bank:" with a text input field; "position code:" with a dropdown menu; and "customer reference:" with a dropdown menu, a text input field, a hyphen separator, another dropdown menu, and another text input field. At the bottom of the window, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The footer of the window displays the following information: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI 18-12-17 10:51:48 am".

CASCADE PC certificate balances - total position: display

bank: position code: page:

customer reference: -

securities: ISIN ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS

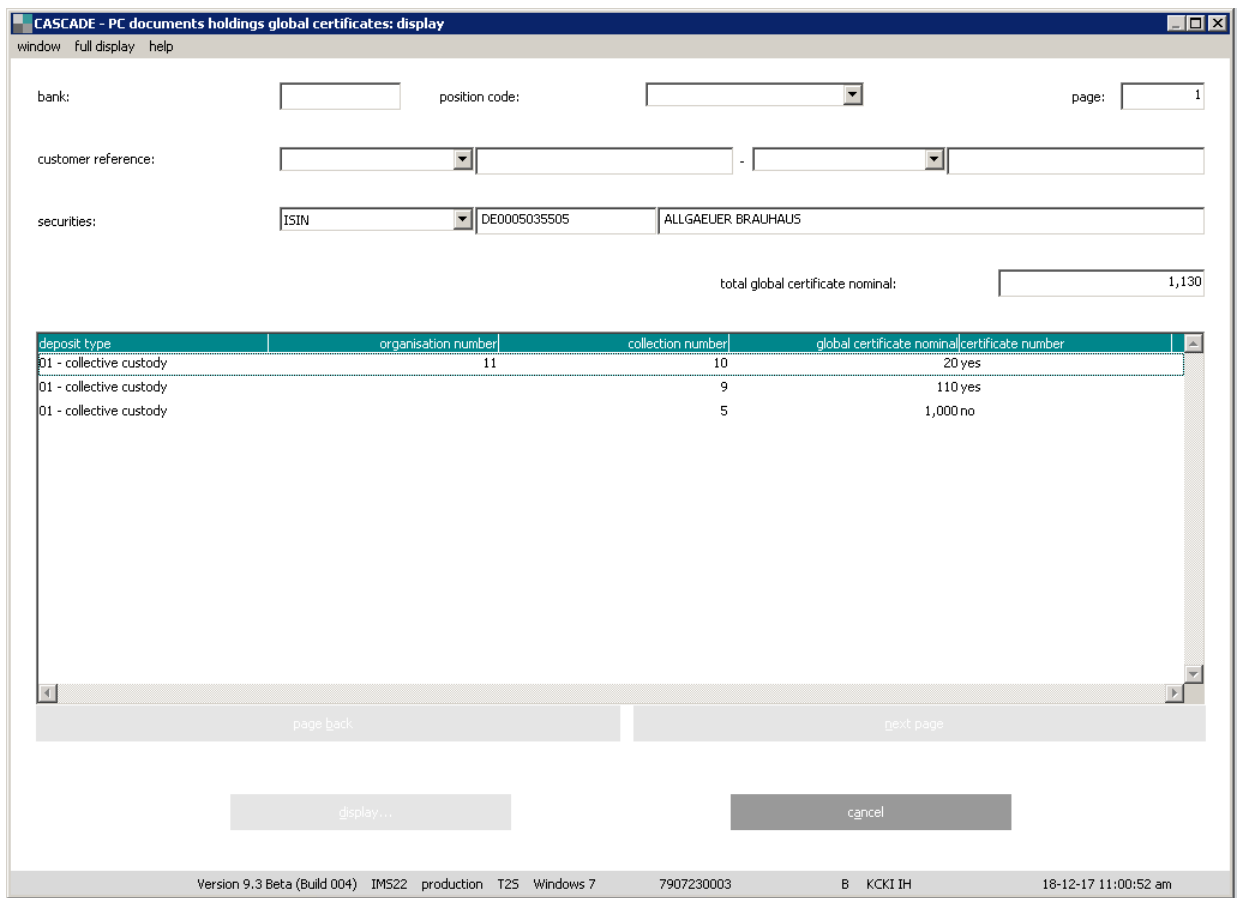
global certificates				
deposit type	number of certificates	global certificate nominal		
01 - collective custody	3	1,130		
(i) total global certificate				
	3	1,130		
UpTo-certificates				
deposit type	number of certificates	global certificate nominal	UpTo-nominal	dispositive nominal
01 - collective custody	5	20,505	230,000	0
(i) total UpTo-certificate				
	5	20,505	230,000	0
(i) total global - and UpTo-certificates				
	8	21,635		

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 10:59:59 am

The detail information will be displayed after double click on respective line.



The Certificate number indicates whether there are certificate numbers on the global certificate.

Selecting a global certificate by double click the detailed view permanent global certificates or global certificates (up-to).

11.9.2.3.6 Overview permanent global certificate

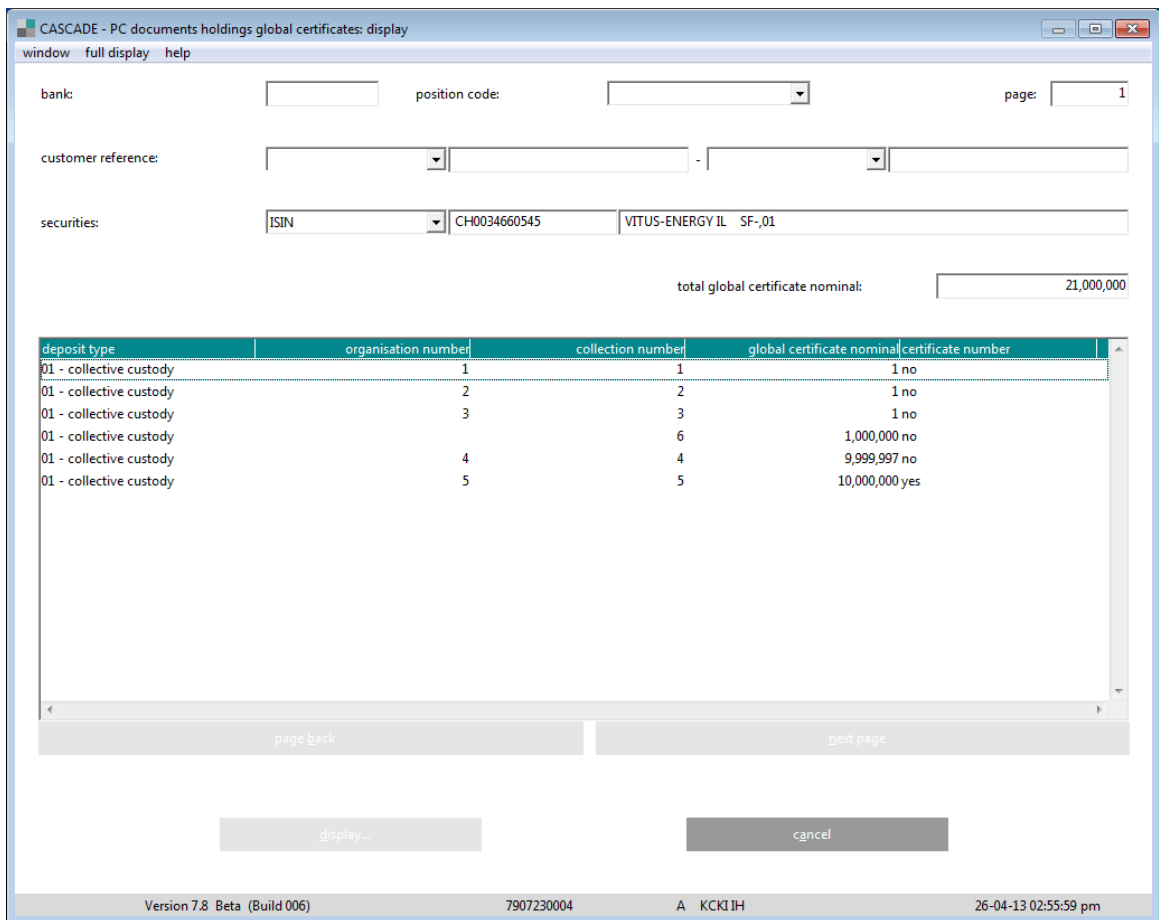
The user can access this screen via the complete overview or the complete overview permanent global certificates or global certificates (up-to) under **Positions of Certificates / Certificates**. After respective ISIN selection the totals screen is displayed. By double clicking on Total permanent global certificate line, the permanent global certificates are displayed.

The certificates are displayed sorted according to the deposit type and Global certificate nominal.

deposit type	number of certificates	global certificate nominal
01 - collective custody	6	21,000,000
(i) total global certificate	6	21,000,000
(i) total global - and UpTo-certificates	6	21,000,000
total	6	21,000,000

By left mouse button double click on the line Total global certificate list of all instructions will be displayed.

Alternatively, mark the respective line by left mouse button click. Click on Information bar. The instructions list will be displayed.



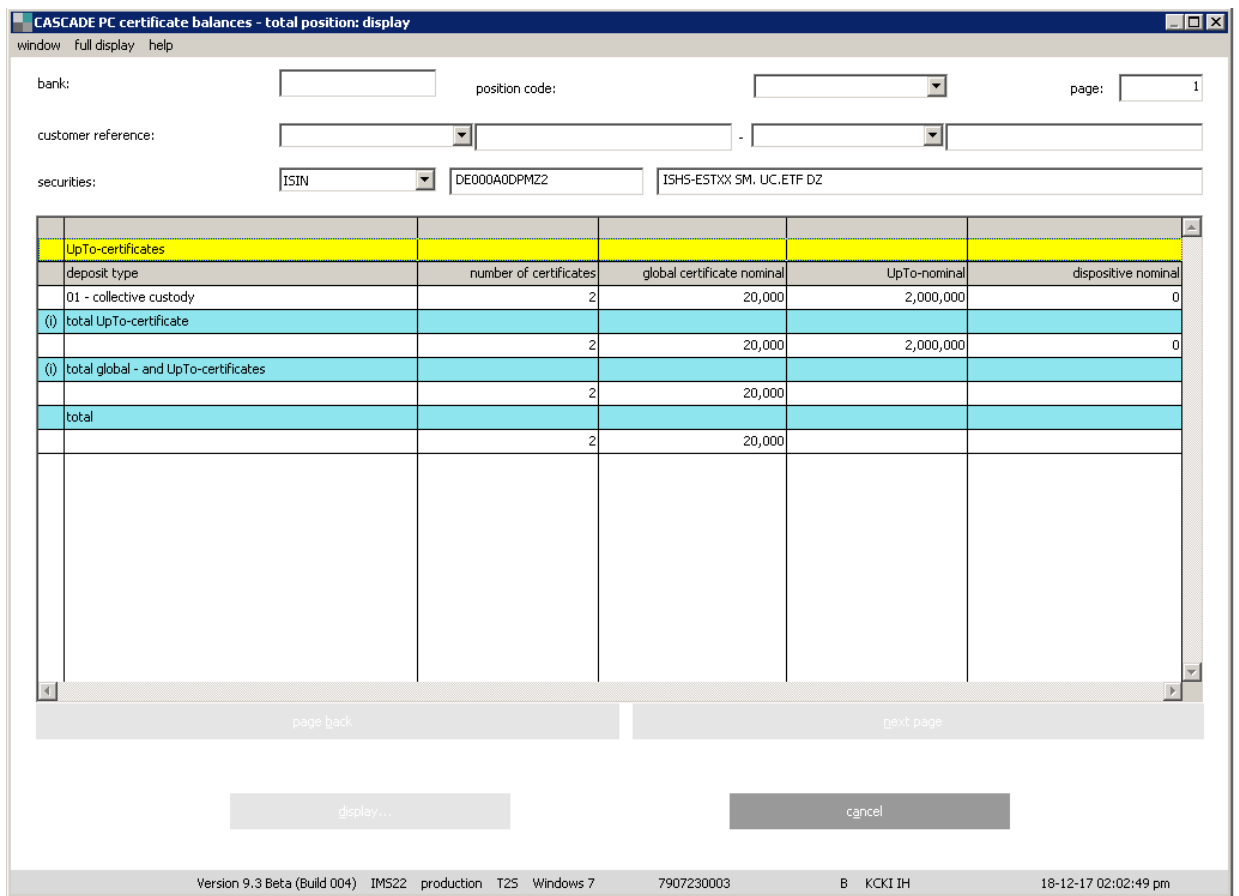
The Certificate number field indicates whether there are certificate numbers on the global certificate.

11.9.2.3.7 Overview global certificates (up-to)

The user can access this screen via the complete overview or the complete overview permanent global certificates or global certificates (up-to).

The global certificates (up-to) are displayed sorted according to the Deposit type and Global certificate nominal.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates". It contains two "selection" sections. The first section has two radio buttons: "certificates" (selected) and "search of certificate numbers". The second section contains several input fields and dropdown menus: "securities:" with a dropdown set to "ISIN" and a text field containing "DE000A0DPMZ2"; "deposit type:" with a dropdown menu; "denomination:" with two text fields; "certificate numbers:" with a text field; "global certificate:" with a dropdown menu; "organisation number:" and "collective number:" each with a text field; "bank:" with a text field; "position code:" with a dropdown menu; and "customer reference:" with a dropdown menu, a text field, a hyphen, another dropdown menu, and a text field. At the bottom are "ok" and "cancel" buttons. The footer contains system information: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:02:16 pm".



By left mouse button double click on the line Total up-to certificate list of all instructions will be displayed.

Alternatively, mark the respective line by left mouse button click. Click on Information bar. The instructions list will be displayed.

CASCADE - PC documents holdings UpTo-certificates: display

window full display help

bank: position code: page:

customer reference: -

securities:

total UpTo-nominal: total global certificate nominal:

total dispositive nominal: total pending nominal:

deposit type	organisation no.	collection no.	al certificate nomina	dispositive nominal	pending nominal	UpTo-nominal	certificate number
01 - collective custody	4	5	10,000	0	990,000	1,000,000	no
01 - collective custody	3	6	10,000	0	990,000	1,000,000	no

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T2S Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:04:23 pm

The Certificate number field indicates whether there are certificate numbers on the global certificate (up-to).

11.9.2.3.8 Detailed view permanent global certificate

The user accesses this screen by

- Selecting ISIN, global certificate “Y” and entering the exact collective or organisation number for a permanent global certificate in the “Positions of certificates screen”;

CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates

window help

selection

certificates
 search of certificate numbers

selection

securities: ISIN CH0034660545

deposit type: 01 - collective custody

denomination:

certificate numbers:

global certificate: yes

organisation number: collective number:

agent:

bank: position code:

customer reference: -

ok cancel

Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7907230004 A KCKI IH 26-04-13 03:15:10 pm

- Selecting a permanent global certificate with in the screen “Overview permanent global certificate”; or
- Selecting a permanent global certificate with “Overview global certificate”.

CASCADE PC certificate balances - total position: display

window full display help

bank: position code: page: 1

customer reference: -

securities: ISIN CH0034660545 VITUS-ENERGY IL SF-,01

global certificates	number of certificates	global certificate nominal
01 - collective custody	6	21,000,000
(i) total global certificate	6	21,000,000
(i) total global - and UpTo-certificates	6	21,000,000
total	6	21,000,000

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7907230004 A KCKI:IH 26-04-13 03:14:06 pm

CASCADE-PC User Manual

CASCADE - PC documents holdings global certificates: display

window full display help

bank: position code: page:

customer reference: -

securities:

total global certificate nominal:

deposit type	organisation number	collection number	global certificate nominal	certificate number
01 - collective custody	1	1		1 no
01 - collective custody	2	2		1 no
01 - collective custody	3	3		1 no
01 - collective custody		6	1,000,000	no
01 - collective custody	4	4	9,999,997	no
01 - collective custody	5	5	10,000,000	yes

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7907230004 A KCKI1H 26-04-13 03:14:25 pm

CASCADE - PC documents holdings global certificate: display

window help

securities: ISIN CH0034660545 VITUS-ENERGY IL SF-,01 page: 1

deposit type: 01 - collective custody global certificate nominal: 10,000,000

organisation number: 5 collective number: 5

deposit reason: 1 - from issuance

status: 500 - verified

special characteristic: 25 - global certificate without coupon sheet

number	denomination	certificate numbers (for securitised certificates)
10000000	1	110000001-20000000

page back next page

cancel

Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7907230004 A KCK1IH 26-04-13 03:14:41 pm

11.9.2.3.9 Detailed view global certificate (up-to)

The user accesses this screen by

- Selecting ISIN, global certificate “Y” and entering the exact collective or organisation number for a global certificate (up-to) “Positions of certificates screen”;

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main content area is divided into two sections, both labeled "selection". The top section contains two radio buttons: "certificates" (which is selected) and "search of certificate numbers". The bottom section contains several input fields and dropdown menus: "securities:" with a dropdown menu showing "ISIN" and a text box containing "DE000A0DPM22"; "deposit type:" with a dropdown menu; "denomination:" with two text boxes; "certificate numbers:" with a text box; "global certificate:" with a dropdown menu; "organisation number:" with a text box; "collective number:" with a text box; "bank:" with a text box; "position code:" with a dropdown menu; and "customer reference:" with four text boxes, the first and last of which have dropdown menus. At the bottom of the window are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The footer of the window displays the following text: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IM522 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:25:01 pm".

CASCADE - PC documents holdings UpTo-certificate: display

window help

securities: ISIN DE000A0DFM22 ISHS-ESTXX 5M. UC.ETF DZ page: 1

deposit type: 01 - collective custody global certificate nominal: 10,000

organisation number: 4 UpTo-nominal: 1,000,000

collective number: 5 dispositive nominal: 0

deposit reason: 1 - from issuance pending nominal: 990,000

status: 500 - verified

special characteristic: 55 - UpTo certificate without coupon sheet

number	denomination	certificate numbers (for securitised certificates)
--------	--------------	--

page back next page

cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:28:01 pm

- Selecting a global certificate (up-to) in the screen "Overview global certificate (up-to)"; or
- Selecting a global certificate with (up-to) in the screen "Overview global certificate".

CASCADE PC certificate balances - total position: display

window full display help

bank: position code: page:

customer reference: -

securities: ISIN ISHS-ESTXX: SM. UC.ETF DZ

UpTo-certificates	number of certificates	global certificate nominal	UpTo-nominal	dispositive nominal
01 - collective custody	2	20,000	2,000,000	0
(0) total UpTo-certificate	2	20,000	2,000,000	0
(0) total global - and UpTo-certificates	2	20,000		
total	2	20,000		

page back. next page

display... cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:28:46 pm

CASCADE - PC documents holdings UpTo-certificate: display

window help

securities: ISIN DE000A0DPMZ2 ISHS-ESTXX SM. UC.ETF DZ page: 1

deposit type: 01 - collective custody global certificate nominal: 10,000

organisation number: 4 UpTo-nominal: 1,000,000

collective number: 5 dispositive nominal: 0

deposit reason: 1 - from issuance pending nominal: 990,000

status: 500 - verified

special characteristic: 55 - UpTo certificate without coupon sheet

number	denomination	certificate numbers (for securitised certificates)
page back		
next page		

cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI.IH 18-12-17 02:29:46 pm

11.9.2.3.10 Detailed view individual certificate

There are two ways to access this screen, via the initial screen by specifying the “Deposit type” / “Literal”/ “Denomination” and via the complete overview by selecting a processing unit (deposit type/literal/denomination).

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The dialog is divided into two main sections, both labeled "selection".

The first "selection" section contains two radio buttons: "certificates" (which is selected) and "search of certificate numbers".

The second "selection" section contains several input fields and dropdown menus:

- securities:** A dropdown menu set to "ISIN" and a text field containing "DE0005035505".
- deposit type:** A dropdown menu.
- denomination:** Two text input fields.
- certificate numbers:** A text input field.
- global certificate:** A dropdown menu set to "no".
- organisation number:** A text input field.
- collective number:** A text input field.
- bank:** A text input field.
- position code:** A dropdown menu.
- customer reference:** A dropdown menu, a text input field, a hyphen "-", another dropdown menu, and another text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The status bar at the very bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI.IH 18-12-17 02:31:29 pm".

CASCADE PC certificate balances - total position: display

bank: position code: page:

customer reference: -

securities: ISIN ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS

physical certificates				15,12,201
deposit type	number of certificates	nominal	literal	denomination
(i) 01 - collective custody	760	760		1
(i) 01 - collective custody	513	10,260		20
total deposit type 01				
	1,273	11,020		
(i) 03 - supply in collective safe custody by bank	100	100		1
total deposit type 03				
	100	100		
total physical certificates				
	1,373	11,120		
total				
	1,373	11,120		

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:33:02 pm

CASCADE - PC documents holdings physical certificate: display

state: page:

securities: ISIN ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS

deposit type: nominal:

denomination: number of certificates:

certificate numbers (for securitised certificates)
 1000-49, 1100-49, 2000-19, 3486-500, 4000-499, 555555-9, 8913001-10,
 50000000-49, 211913201-60,

page back next page

cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:33:47 pm

The certificate numbers are displayed in arithmetic order from the working, block package and ice block package stock. The advantage is that the readout is independent of the organisation of the positions at Clearstream Banking Frankfurt. All certificate numbers for a denomination and a literal are also available in one readout.

The readout of the certificate numbers is not created online. The positions are consolidated in a database the previous evening after all changes to positions have occurred. The data from this database is displayed. The date, on which the data was determined, is displayed in the "STAND" field (STATE).

If present, the "Divergent security designation" field is displayed.

11.9.3 Information certificate number search KCKI IS

CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates

window help

selection

certificates

search of certificate numbers;

selection

securities: ISIN DE0005035505

deposit type:

denomination:

certificate numbers:

global certificate: no

organisation number: collective number:

bank: position code:

customer reference:

ok cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:34:34 pm

The online certificate number search includes the certificates from the current block package stock, the working stock and the deposit/withdrawal balance.

The stock is differentiated on the screen in which the certificate is found. The following fields are required fields on the selection screen:

- ISIN (WKN)
- LITERA (if present in the master data)
- DENOMINATION
- CERTIFICATE NUMBER)

The certificate number is entered as continuous text. Only one certificate number may be entered (for example, 13802001).

Entry in the following fields will not be taken into account:

- DEPOSIT TYPE
- GLOBAL CERTIFICATE (Y/N)
- ORG NO

11.9.3.1 Certificate in the search is located in the working stock

11.9.3.1.1 Individual certificate

The certificate number in the search is securitised as an individual certificate.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". Below the menu bar is a "selection" section with two radio buttons: "certificates" (unselected) and "search of certificate numbers" (selected). Below this is another "selection" section containing various input fields and dropdown menus:

- securities: ISIN dropdown menu with value "DE0005035505" in the adjacent text field.
- deposit type: empty dropdown menu.
- denomination: empty text field followed by a text field containing "1".
- certificate numbers: text field containing "1000".
- global certificate: dropdown menu with value "no".
- organisation number: empty text field.
- collective number: empty text field.
- bank: empty text field.
- position code: empty dropdown menu.
- customer reference: three text fields separated by hyphens, all empty.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom contains the following text: "Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IM522 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IH 18-12-17 02:36:05 pm".

CASCADE - PC documents holdings / search of certificate number information

working stock

securities: ISIN DE0005035505 ALLGAEUER BRAUHAUS

bank: position code:

customer reference: -

deposit type: 01 - collective custody

denomination: 1 certificate number: 1000

security types: 1 - coupon sheet and principle separated

custody option: 9 - Collective custody

specialty availability:

status: 500 - verified

characteristic: - -

evidence type: 1 - delivery-in of physical certificates

cancel

Version 9.3 Beta (Build 004) IMS22 production T25 Windows 7 7907230003 B KCKI IS 18-12-17 02:37:47 pm

11.9.3.1.2 Global certificate

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC documents holdings / search of certificate number information". The window contains the following fields and options:

- working stock:
- global certificate:
- securities: ISIN: ALLIANZ SE VNA O.N.
- bank:
- position code:
- customer reference: -
- deposit type:
- denomination: certificate number:
- securitization without certificate numbers:
- custody option:
- speciality availability:
- status:
- characteristic:
- organisation-/certificate number: / UpTo-nominal:
- global certificate nominal:
- evidence type:

At the bottom of the window, there is a "cancel" button and a status bar with the following information: Version 7.8 29.04.2013, 7907230001, A KCK1 IS, 17-05-13 02:21:11 pm.

The field characteristic provides information on the characteristics of the selected certificate number.

11.9.3.2 Certificate in the search is located in the block package stock

CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates

window help

selection

certificates

search of certificate numbers

selection

securities: German sec. code 847400

deposit type:

denomination: 1

certificate numbers: 4001915

global certificate: no

organisation number: collective number:

agent:

bank: position code:

customer reference:

ok cancel

Version 7.8 29.04.2013 7907230001 A KCKI IS 17-05-13 02:42:11 pm

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC documents holdings / search of certificate number information". The window contains a search form with the following fields and values:

- Search term: "bloc package stock"
- Securities: ISIN dropdown (selected), DE0008474008, DWS INVESTA
- Bank: (empty)
- Position code: (empty)
- Customer reference: (empty)
- Deposit type: 01 - collective custody
- Denomination: 1
- Certificate number: 4001915
- Security types: 1 - coupon sheet and principle separated
- Custody option: 9 - Collective custody
- Speciality availability: (empty)
- Status: 500 - verified
- Characteristic: (empty)
- Bloc package type: bloc

At the bottom of the form is an "cancel" button. The footer of the window displays: "Version 7.8 29.04.2013 7907230001 A KCKI IS 17-05-13 02:42:11 pm".

The lacks/characteristics displayed in the "Characteristic" field concern the selected certificate number (not the block where the certificate number is documented).

11.9.3.3 Certificate in the search is located in the CASCADE deposit/ withdrawal balance

CASCADE - PC selection: positions of certificates

window help

selection

certificates

search of certificate numbers

selection

securities: German sec. code 847400

deposit type:

denomination: 1

certificate numbers: 1211151

global certificate: no

organisation number: collective number:

agent:

bank: position code:

customer reference:

ok cancel

Version 7.8 29.04.2013 7907230001 A KCK115 17-05-13 02:45:35 pm

CASCADE-PC User Manual

The screenshot displays the 'CASCADE - PC documents holdings / search of certificate number information' window. The interface includes a menu bar with 'window' and 'help'. A search bar at the top contains the text 'deposit stock'. Below this, the 'securities' section has a dropdown menu set to 'ISIN', a text field with 'DE0008474008', and another text field with 'DWS INVESTA'. The 'bank' section has an empty text field and a 'position code' dropdown menu. The 'customer reference' section consists of two text fields separated by a hyphen. The 'deposit type' dropdown menu is set to '01 - collective custody'. The 'denomination' section has a small input box with '1' and a 'certificate number' text field with '1211151'. The 'security types' dropdown menu is set to '1 - coupon sheet and principle separated'. The 'custody option' dropdown menu is set to '9 - Collective custody'. The 'speciality availability' dropdown menu is empty. The 'status' dropdown menu is set to '500 - verified'. The 'characteristic' section has two empty text boxes. A 'cancel' button is located at the bottom center. The footer contains the text: 'Version 7.8 29.04.2013 7907230001 A KCK1 IS 17-05-13 02:45:35 pm'.

deposit stock

securities: ISIN DE0008474008 DWS INVESTA

bank: position code:

customer reference: -

deposit type: 01 - collective custody

denomination: 1 certificate number: 1211151

security types: 1 - coupon sheet and principle separated

custody option: 9 - Collective custody

speciality availability:

status: 500 - verified

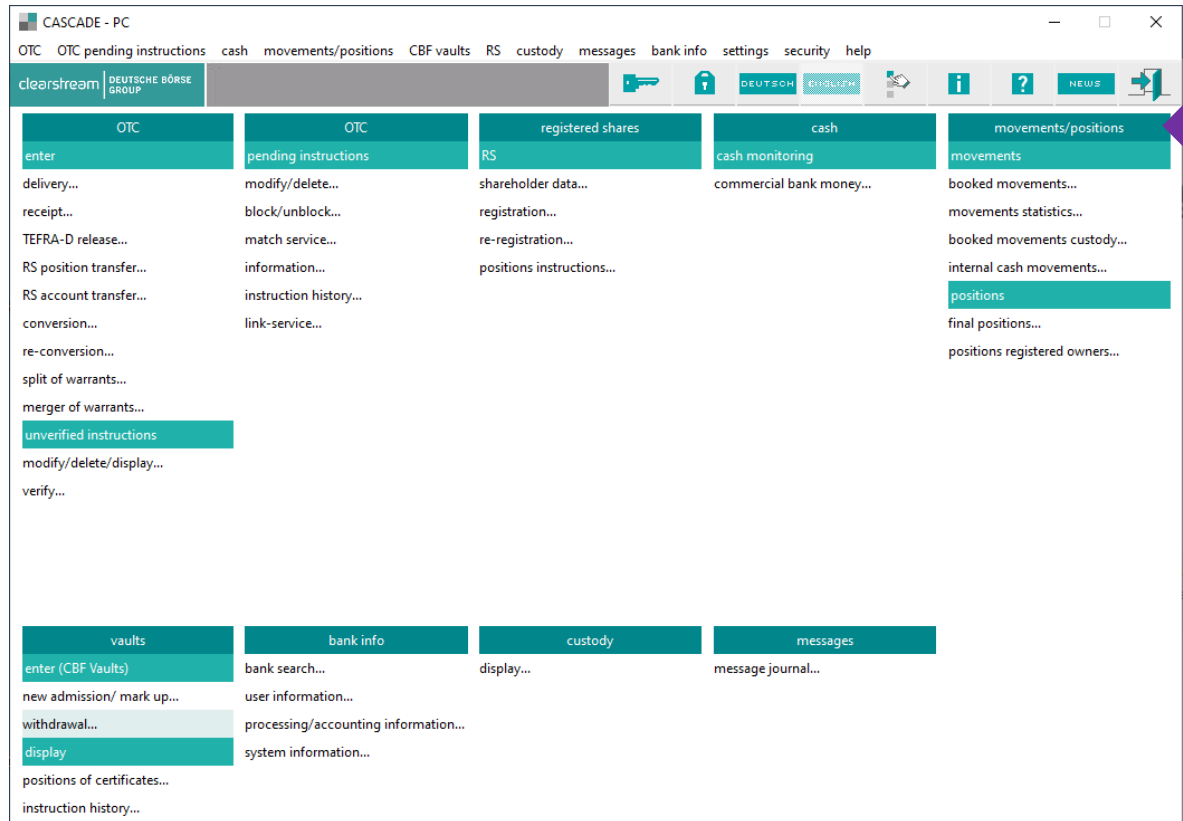
characteristic:

cancel

Version 7.8 29.04.2013 7907230001 A KCK1 IS 17-05-13 02:45:35 pm

11.10 Movements/Positions

After the instruction is correctly processed by CBF, the securities movements will be reflected in under **movements/positions / final positions**.



Movements

The securities movements between accounts can be seen under Movements / Positions / Movement / Booked movement menu. To select requested instructions the following entries can be used: accounting date, transaction type, securities identification (ISIN code), bank/account, instruction type and instruction number.

Example: Movements / Positions

Example: Movements / Positions / Movements / Booked movements

CASCADE-PC User Manual

CASCADE - PC selection: domestic movements

window help

selection

accounting date: 11-11-2014 up to:

transactions type:

securities: ISIN DvP:

T2S actor reference:

bank/account: 7907

counterparty:

instruction type: deposit

instruction no.: (transaction no.)

customer reference:

stock exchange:

additional selection

process cycle:

sort criteria:

ok cancel

Version 8.0 17.11.2014 7907260001 A KVDU ID 11-11-14 03:25:59 pm

After confirming selected criteria by clicking "OK" the list of respective instructions will be displayed in a tabular form.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC domestic movements: overview". The window has a menu bar with "window", "full display", and "help". Below the menu bar are several input fields: "accounting date" with a date picker set to "19-04-2013", "up to:" with an empty date field, "page:" with a value of "1", "transactions type:" with a dropdown menu set to "credit entry", and "items:" with a value of "2". There are also two empty text boxes for "bank:". Below these fields is a table with the following data:

counterparty	inst	transaction no.	ISIN	nominal	cash equivalent	currency	Set./Trade Date
7961	16 c	3120013	DE000VT7JRV7	3,000.000			18-04-13
7961	16 c	3120014	DE000VT7JRW5	4,000.000			18-04-13

Below the table are four buttons: "page back", "next page", "movements...", and "cancel". At the bottom of the window, there is a status bar with the following text: "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)", "7907230004", "A KVDU ID", and "26-04-13 02:14:55 pm".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

By double clicking the instruction will be marked and details of securities movements displayed.

The screenshot displays the 'CASCADE - PC domestic movements: overview' window. At the top, there are input fields for 'accounting date' (19-04-2013), 'up to', 'page' (1), 'transactions type' (credit entry), and 'items' (2). Below these is a 'bank' field. A table lists transactions with columns for 'counterparty', 'inst', and 'transaction no.'. The table contains two rows: 7961 16 c 3120013 and 7961 16 c 3120014. A detailed view window titled 'CASCADE - PC movements' is open, showing fields for 'credit entry', 'instructor' (7907), 'accounting' (C2F1), 'on' (19-04-2013 10:12:32 am), 'account', 'DCA/REF', 'counterparty' (7961 200 CBF TR. B. SVG BIS-ZU URK. GS), 'nominal' (3,000), 'unit' (EO), 'cash', 'Miti Ref1', and 'Miti Ref2'. Navigation buttons 'page back', 'next page', 'movements...', and 'cancel' are visible at the bottom. The footer contains 'Version 8.0 17.11.2014', '7907260001', 'A KVDU ID', and '11-11-14 03:13:46 pm'.

counterparty	inst	transaction no.
7961	16 c	3120013
7961	16 c	3120014

CASCADE - PC movements

credit entry
instructor: 7907
accounting: C2F1 on: 19-04-2013 10:12:32 am
account: /
DCA/REF: due to
counterparty: 7961 200 CBF TR. B. SVG BIS-ZU URK. GS /
DCA/REF: due to
nominal: 3,000 unit: EO
cash: /
Miti Ref1: Miti Ref2:

page back next page

movements... cancel

Version 8.0 17.11.2014 7907260001 A KVDU ID 11-11-14 03:13:46 pm

11.10.1 Final positions

Securities movements and final securities positions for a selected account can be seen using **Movements / Positions / Positions / Final position** function. The following entries can be used: account, value date, securities identification.

Example: Movements / **Positions** / Positions / Final positions – New Issue & Mark up

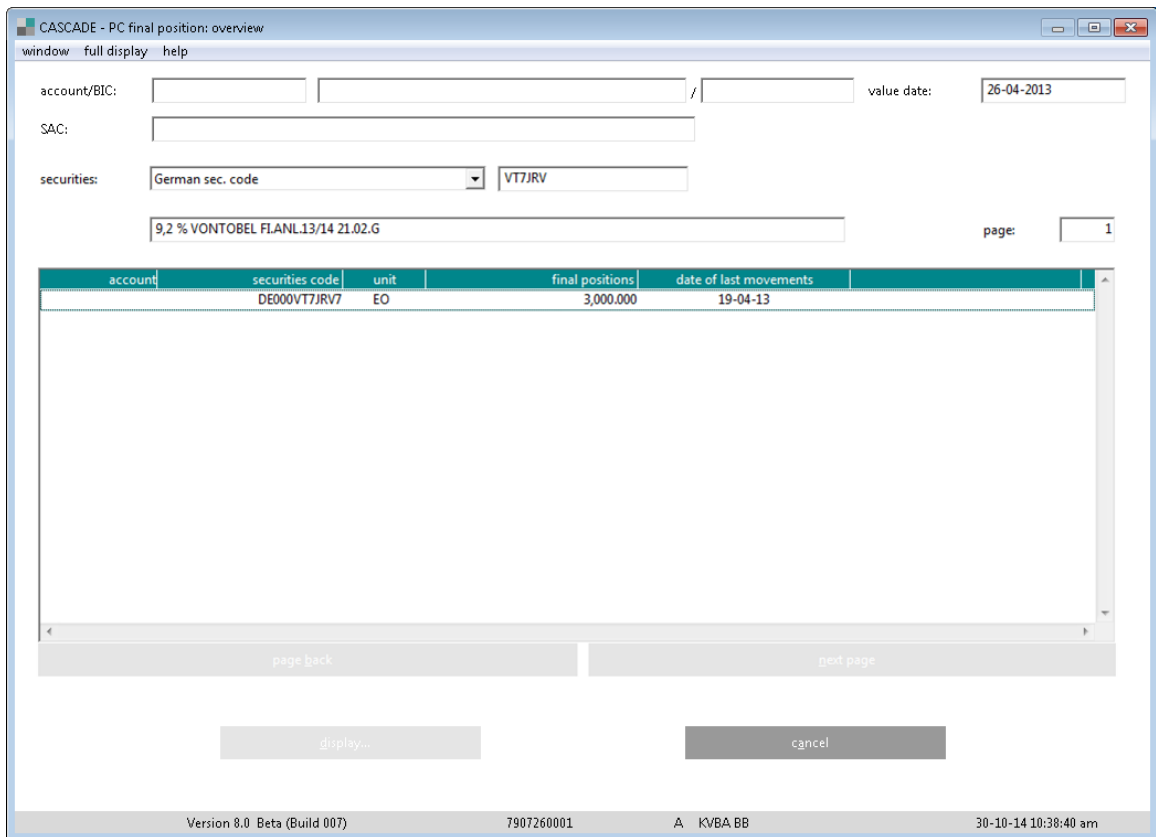
The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: final positions". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area is titled "selection" and contains the following fields:

- account:** Two empty text input fields.
- securities:** A dropdown menu showing "German sec. code" and a text input field containing "VT7JRV".
- value date:** A text input field containing "26-04-2013".
- A checkbox labeled "display market value" which is currently unchecked.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the bottom of the window displays: "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7907230004 A KVBA BB 26-04-13 02:18:36 pm".

CASCADE-PC User Manual

After confirming selection criteria by clicking the "OK" button the list of respective instructions will be retrieved in a tabular form.



The details will be retrieved after double clicking on the selected account or using clicking the "Display" button.

CASCADE - PC preliminary positions: movements

window help

account/BIC: /

SAC:

ISIN: 9,2 % VONTOBEL FLANL.13/14 21.02.G

final positions: unit:

final positions: value date:

CP account	instruction type	instruction no.	debit and credit	nominal	cash equivalent	settlement date
7961 200	deposit	3120013	credit entry	3,000	0.00	18-04

further instructions

cancel

Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVBA BB 30-10-14 12:41:46 pm

CASCADE-PC User Manual

Example: Movements / **Positions** / Positions / Final positions / New Issue & Mark up

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC selection: final positions". The dialog has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area is labeled "selection" and contains the following fields:

- account:** Two empty text input fields.
- securities:** A dropdown menu showing "German sec. code" and a text input field containing "847102".
- value date:** A text input field containing "26-04-2013" and a checkbox labeled "display market value" which is currently unchecked.

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)", "7907230004", "A KVBA BB", and "26-04-13 02:28:49 pm".

CASCADE - PC final position: overview

account/BIC: / value date: 26-04-2013

SAC:

securities: German sec. code 847102

FONDIS A page: 4

account	securities code	unit	final positions	date of last movements
	DE0008471020	ST	1,353.616	13-12-12
	DE0008471020	ST	5,339.535	15-02-13
	DE0008471020	ST	2,695.000	14-02-13
	DE0008471020	ST	76,479.751	25-04-13
	DE0008471020	ST	101.000	25-04-13
	DE0008471020	ST	18.000	28-02-12
	DE0008471020	ST	303.000	03-12-12
	DE0008471020	ST	6,976.000	28-01-13
	DE0008471020	ST	-3,781,953.000	25-04-13
	DE0008471020	ST	-2,060,906.470	03-01-13

page back next page

display... cancel

Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVBA BB 30-10-14 10:38:40 am

CASCADE - PC preliminary positions: movements

account/BIC: /

SAC:

ISIN DE0008471020 FONDIS A

final positions: 1 value date: 20-03-2013 unit: ST

final positions: 101 value date: 25-04-2013

CP account	instruction type	instruction no.	debit and credit	nominal	cash equivalent	settlement date
	withdrawal	1234576	credit entry	100	0.00	25-04

[further instructions]

cancel

Version 8.0 Beta (Build 007) 7907260001 A KVBA BB 30-10-14 12:41:46 pm

11.11 Electronical securities

On 10 June 2021, the German Federal Government implemented the electronic securities act (eWpG) and, hence, paved the way for the issuance of dematerialized securities as an alternative to physically issued securities. To enable the issuance and trading of electronic securities, the central register acts as an essential prerequisite for the financial infrastructure and market. Therefore, CBF has introduced the central register according to Sec. 12 eWpG.

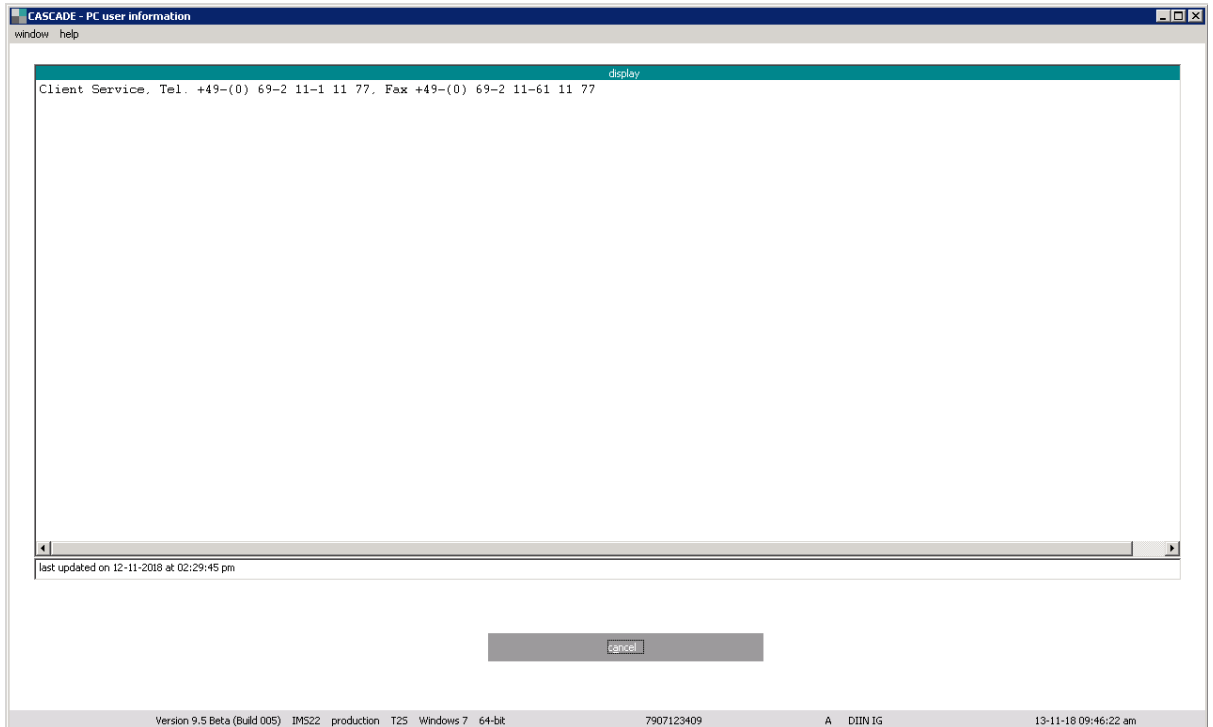
One of the main tasks of the central register is to provide legally binding and contractual relevant information about electronic securities that have been issued. It reflects the entire lifecycle, and maturities as well as non-income corporate actions. Prior to the final entry in the central register, CBF will publish the terms and conditions of the electronic securities on its website.

Clients can follow the lifecycle of issued electronic security through the functionality for pending instructions and information (see chapter 4.4).

12 Information

12.1 Online user information

This function shows current information of CBF to the user.



12.2 Bank Info

12.2.1 Bank search

This service offers the user information about other clients of CBF. In addition, data on the clients of other central securities depositories/clearing organisations can be retrieved. The user chooses between two ways of access.

The user can either enter the screen through the alpha search or just enter the client number of the participant needed.

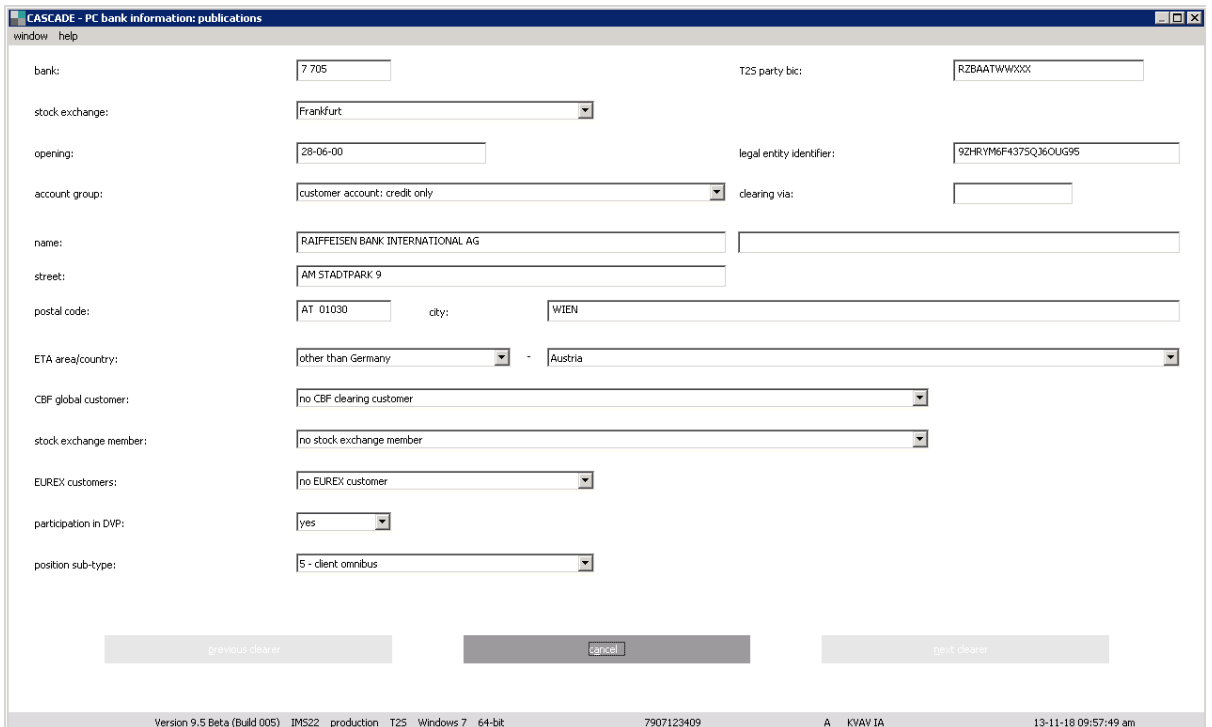
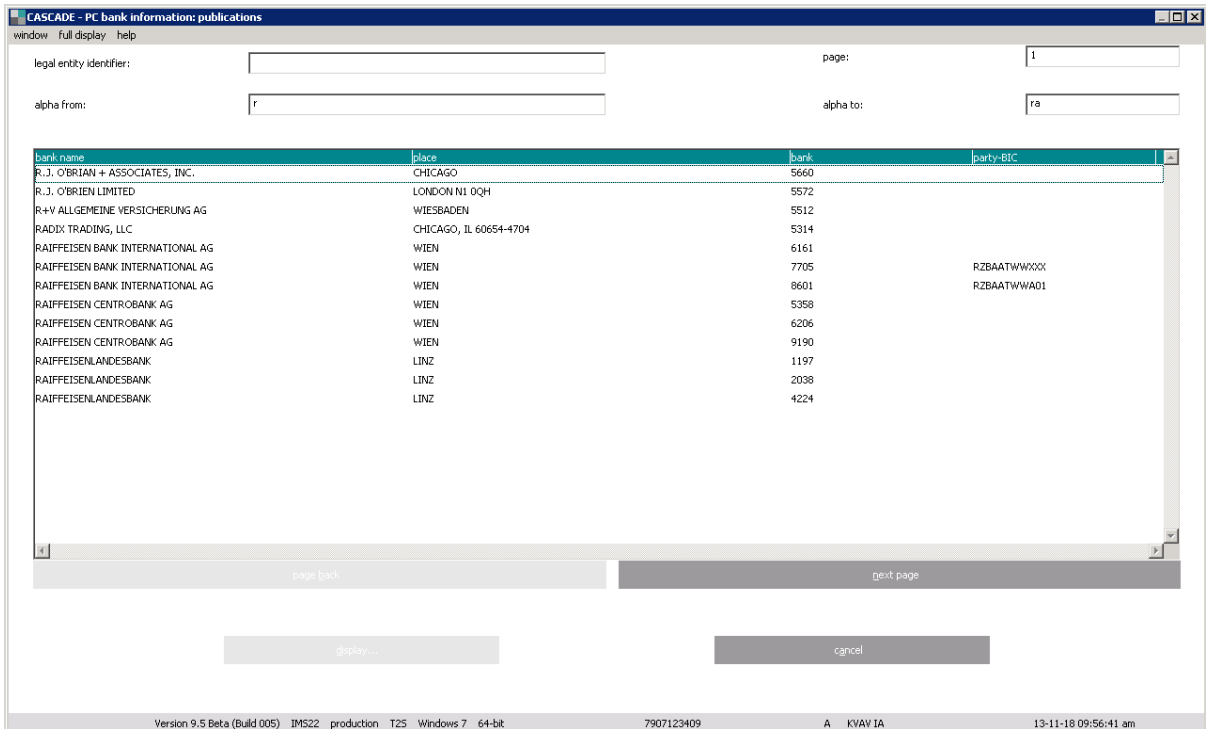
By mouse-click, the user selects the desired entry option.

The screenshot shows a software window titled "CASCADE - PC bank information: publications". The window contains a search form with the following fields and controls:

- bank: text input
- T2S party bic: text input
- stock exchange: dropdown menu
- opening: text input
- legal entity identifier: text input
- account group: dropdown menu
- clearing via: text input
- name: text input
- street: text input
- country/postal code: text input
- city: text input
- ETA area/country: dropdown menu
- CBF global customer: dropdown menu
- stock exchange member: dropdown menu
- EUREX customers: dropdown menu
- participation in DVP: dropdown menu
- position sub-type: dropdown menu

At the bottom of the form, there are three buttons: "previous clearer", "cancel", and "next clearer".

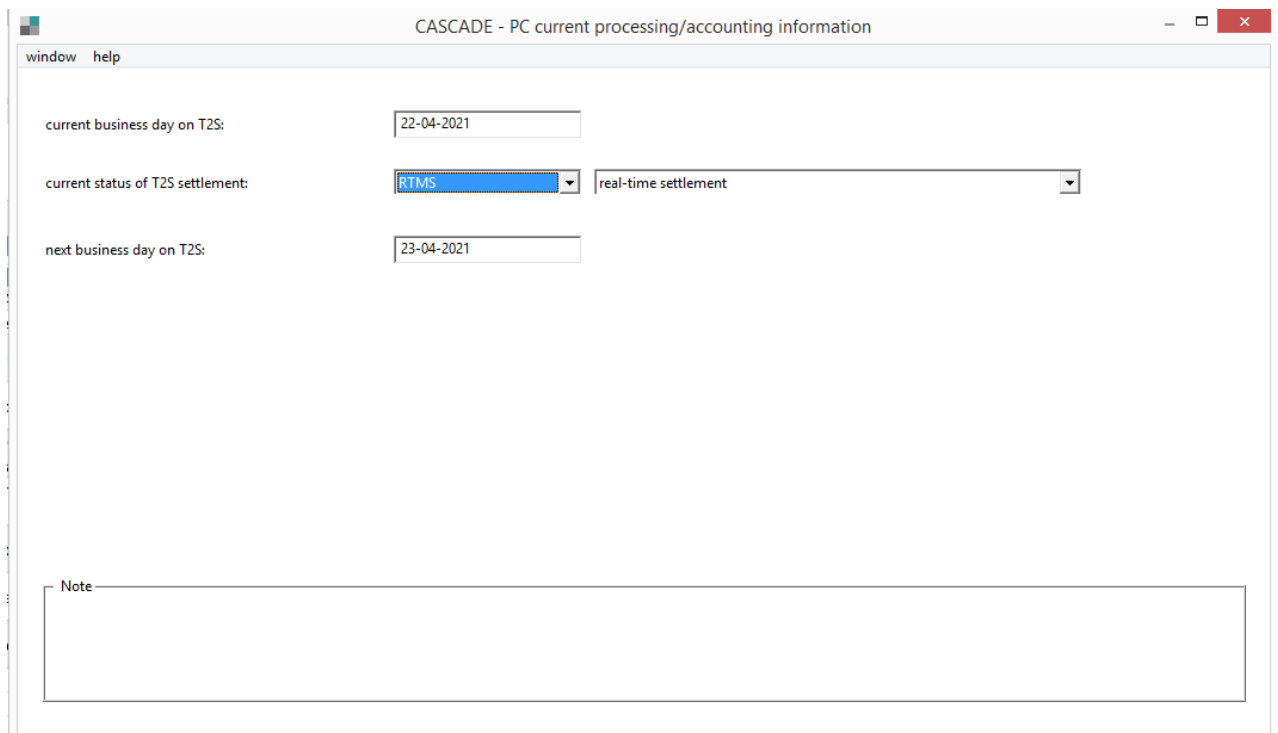
The alpha-search system permits the entry of a search string of up to 15 characters. If " " to " " is not filled only those clients are shown which correspond to the search string. It is also possible to search clients with the usage of "*" at any place of the alpha from field. By clicking "OK", a list display of all selected participants is shown from which the required client can be chosen. By clicking on "Information", the user branches back to the full display of client data.



12.2.2 Processing / accounting information

This function informs about the date and time of the next booking of positions in the depot, if instruction input via data transfer is possible and the current CASCADE processing status is shown
The following fields are offered in read-only mode:

Screen field	Explanation
Current business day on T2S	Date of the current T2S business day. Will be set to the business date received in camt.019 with SODP.
Next business day on T2S	Date of the next T2S business day. Will be set to the T2S business date following the business date received in camt.019 with SODP. Possible Codes are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MTNW – Maintenance Window (T2S Maintenance) • NOWM – No Maintenance Window (if only CBF Maintenance) • RTMC – Real-Time Settlement Closure • RTMS – Real-Time Settlement • SODP – Start of Day Period
Current status of T2S settlement	Code and description of the current T2S processing status

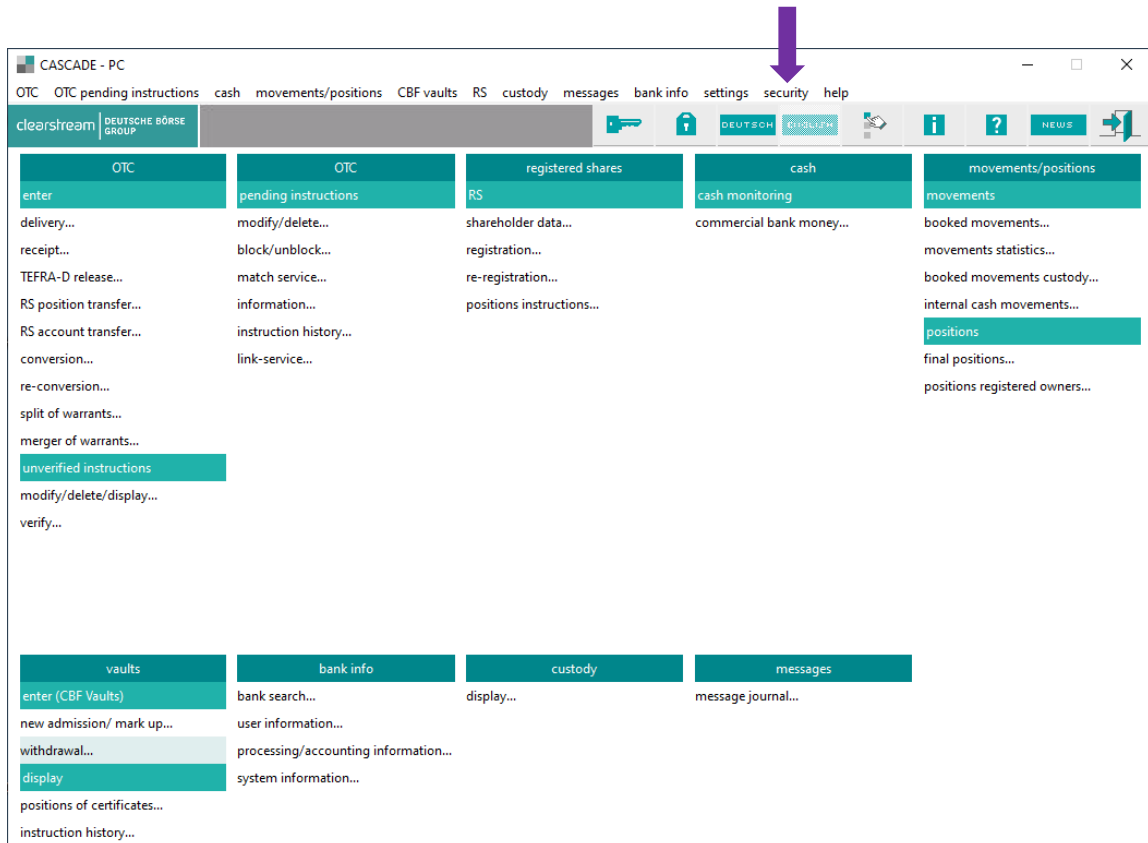


13 Configuration of user profiles and access rights

The “security” function in the main menu can be used to create user profiles, define access rights and for the administration of user IDs.

Newly created users have to change their password before logging in the first time to CASCADE-PC. The password is valid for three months, after that the user will be requested to setup a new password.

Only users with an Administrator Profile (Customer Security Agent) can use this function.



The setup and administration of the Security Agent profiles is done by Deutsche Börse IT. There are two types of profiles:

- Instructor (user ID setup, change and deletion of user profile);
- Approver (releases the above changes for approval).

The request for a Security Agent account can be submitted per fax or email to:

Fax : +49 69 211-1 43 73

Email : secuadmin@deutsche-boerse.com

13.1 User profile

The setup, maintenance and deletion of user profiles are performed in “user data”. Changes in user profiles and creation of new passwords are also possible.

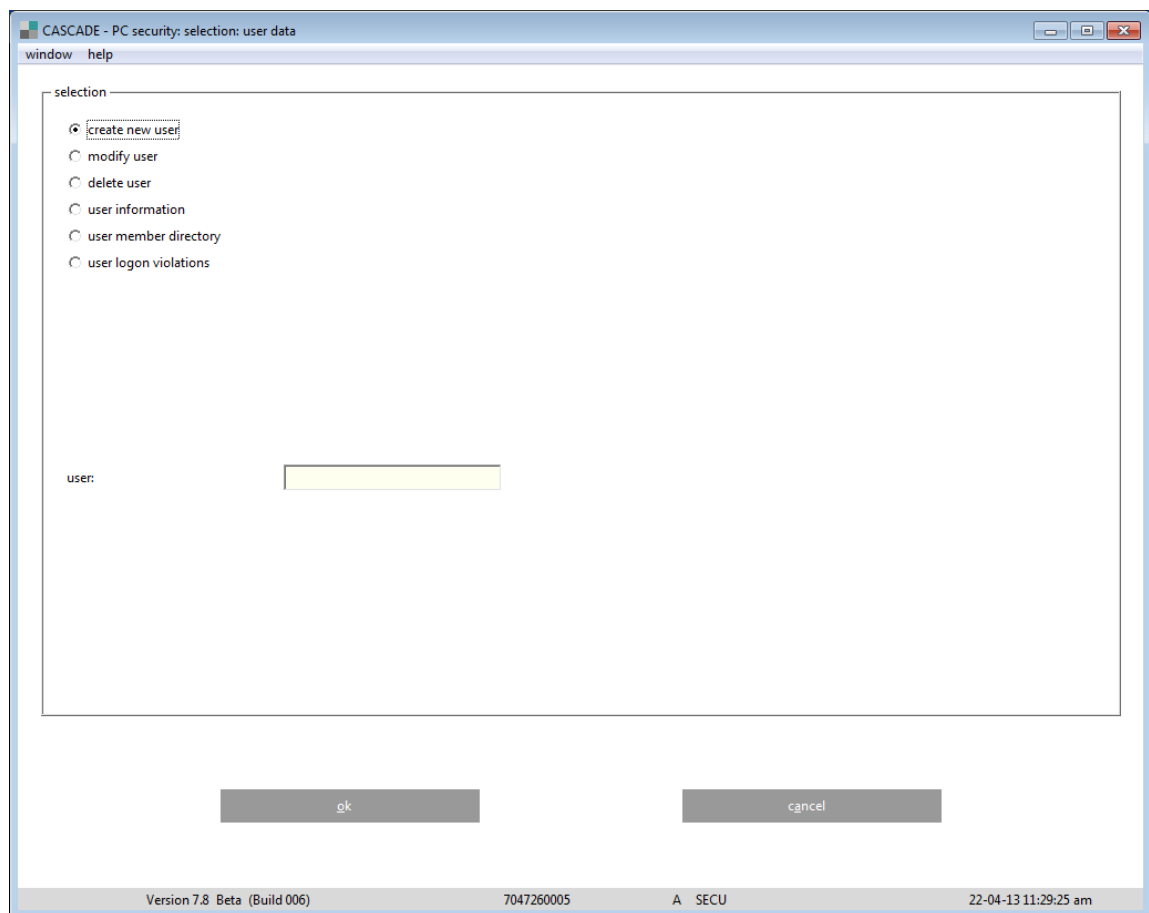
13.1.1 Creation of new users

The creation of a new user is the first step in the setup of a user profile.

To configure user access rights, the 10-digit user ID must be entered (beginning with the 4-digit CBF account number).

A certain number of IDs available to users will be granted by Deutsche Börse IT at the creation of a new CBF account. The Security Agent can assign these IDs to any internal user.

Click on “OK” to go to the data entry screen.



The following fields must be entered for the creation of any new user:

Screen field	Explanation
first name, surname	First name and surname of the new user
department code	Indication of department or department number (optional)
personnel number	Proprietary staff code in a 6-digit format
valid to (YYMMDD)	<p>Validation date (Format: YEAR-MONTH-DAY, two digit each)</p> <p>Note: The user ID will be locked once the validity has expired or a date older than today has been entered. Even if the Security Agent has approved the user registration, the user ID cannot be used. The validation date must be sometime in the future. The user will be required to enter a new password, once a change in date has been made.</p>
Password	<p>The login password of the user is defined in this field. The user will be required to change his password at the initial login.</p> <p>The new or changed password has to contain at least one special character. Allowed characters: .<(+*\$*);-/,%_→?#=#</p>

Upon successful data entry, clicking on the “process” button displays the message “SY0032I User data recorded”.

13.1.2 Changes to user profile

The screen used to make profile changes is the same as for “creation of new users”. Changes can be made in all of the fields described above. Changes in the fields “valid to” and “password” will require the user to change his password at the next login. Changes in the other fields “first name, surname” and “department code” do not require a password change by the user.

Information for the assignment of new passwords:

The Security Agent with instructor rights can enter an initial password for the user. This must be then released by the Security Agent with approver rights in the main menu “security / authorisations / overview”. The user must change his password upon login.

The screenshot shows a Windows-style dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC security: user data: modify". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The dialog contains several input fields:

- identifier code: 7999260099
- first name, surname: NAME
- department code: DBG
- personnel number: 123456
- valid to (YYMMDD): 311212
- password: (empty)

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "process" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom of the window displays: "Version 9.4 Beta IMS29 production T25 Windows 7 32-bit 7047260003 A SECU AB 20-02-18 03:58:39 pm".

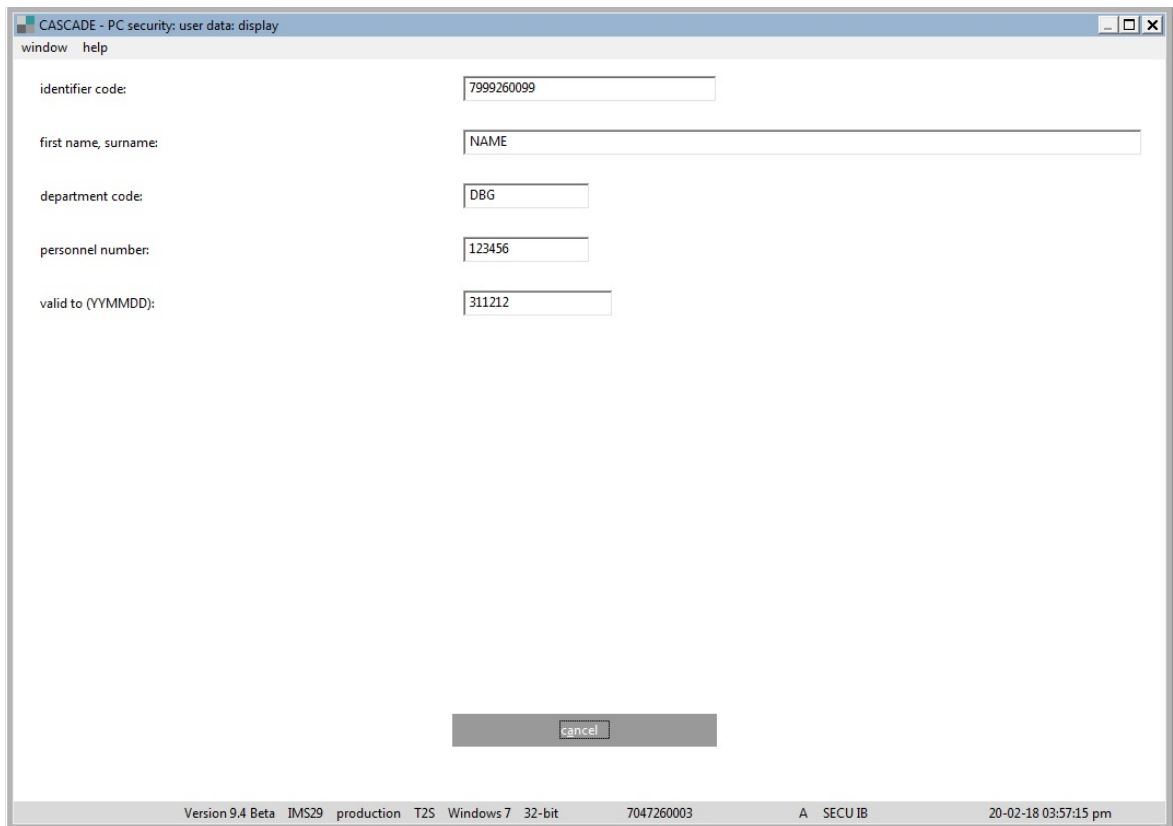
13.1.3 Deletion of user profile

The deletion of a user profile and also the accompanying access rights for a user must be done using “user data deletion”. A prompt will appear to ask for final confirmation.

Note: The user ID and all access rights will be deleted.

13.1.4 User information

The display of user information enables the Security Agent to have an overview of user data at a glance.



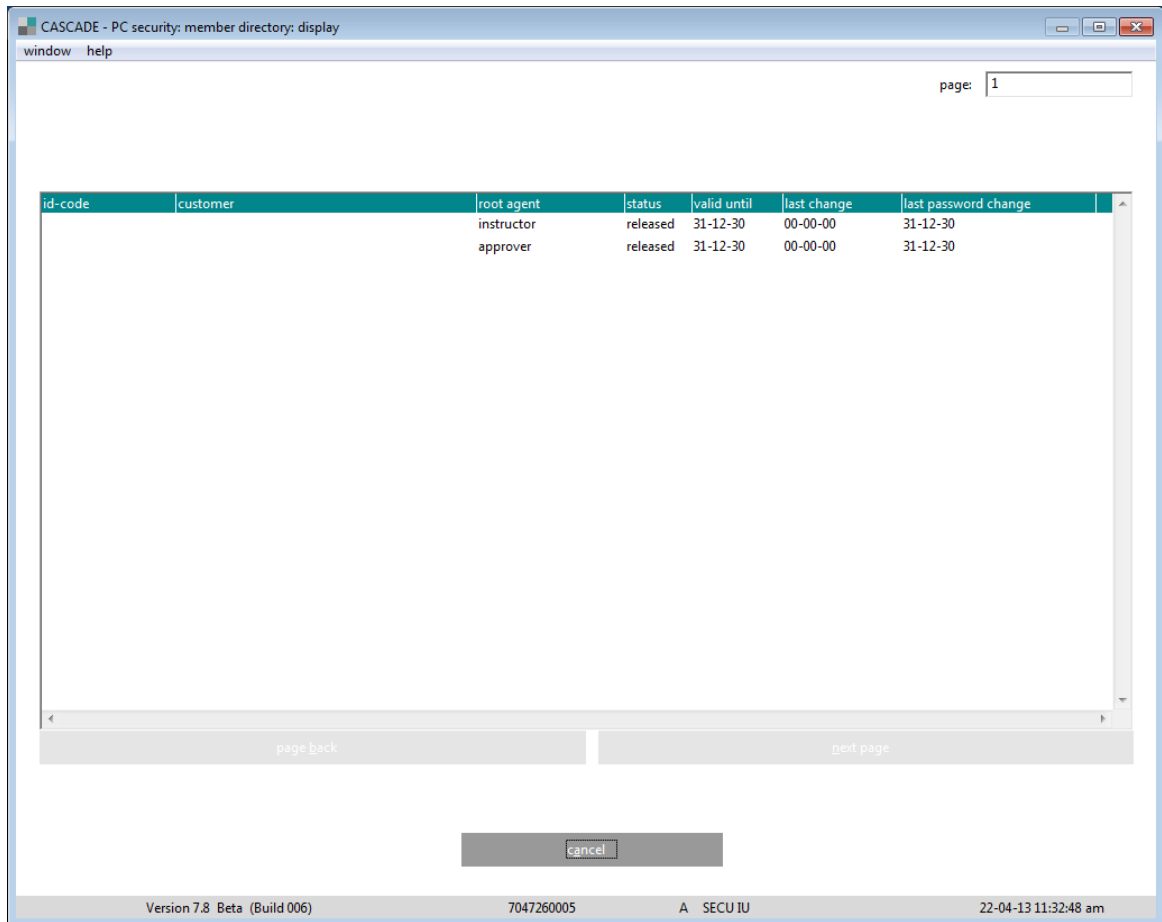
The screenshot shows a window titled "CASCADE - PC security: user data: display" with a menu bar containing "window" and "help". The window contains the following user information fields:

identifier code:	7999260099
first name, surname:	NAME
department code:	DBG
personnel number:	123456
valid to (YYMMDD):	311212

At the bottom center of the window is a "cancel" button. The status bar at the bottom of the window displays the following information: "Version 9.4 Beta IMS29 production T2S Windows 7 32-bit 7047260003 A SECU IB 20-02-18 03:57:15 pm".

13.1.5 User member directory

The following screen gives the security administrator the opportunity to view all participants for which he has the registration ID user rights.

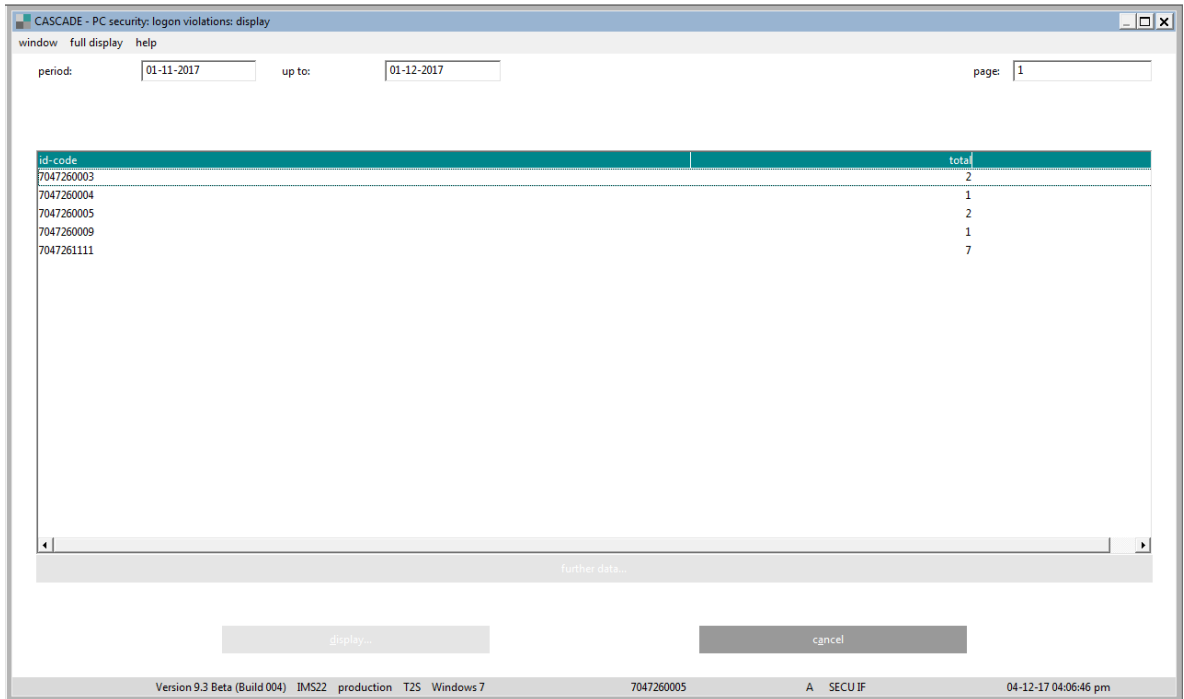


The following data is displayed for each participant:

- Registration ID;
- Name of the participants;
- Status of the Security Administrator: Releaser, Recorder, Information only, DBS Security Administrator;
- User status;
- Valid until;
- Last change;
- Last password change.

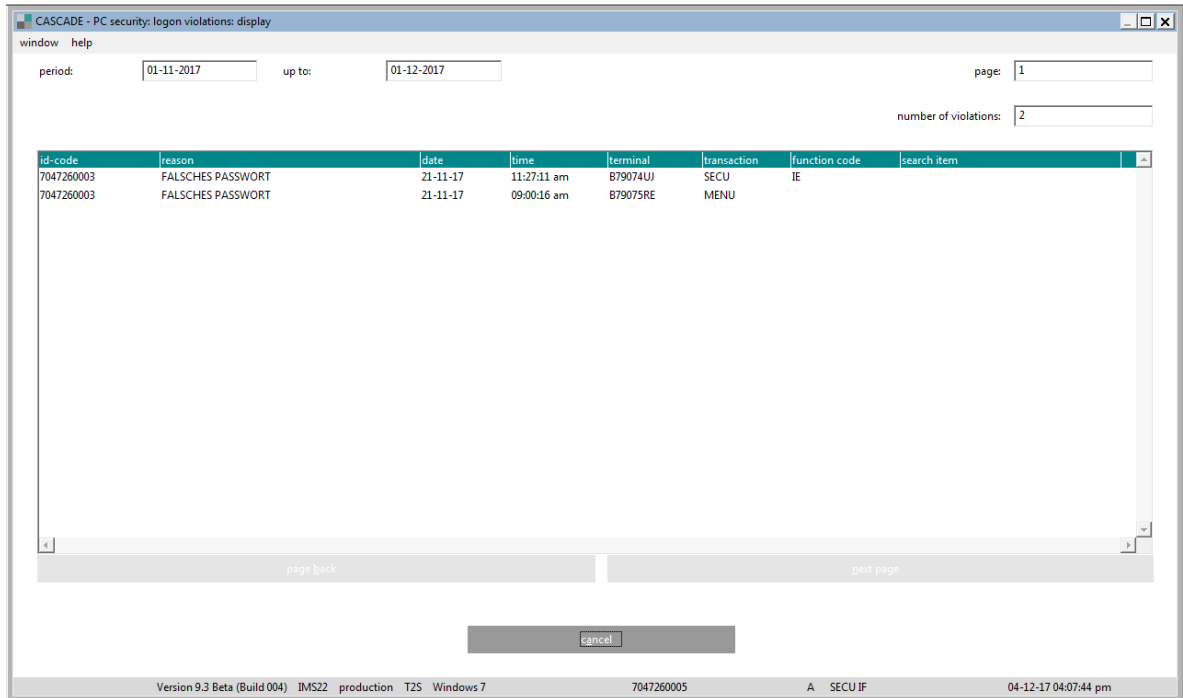
13.1.6 User logon validations

Total Display: The selection SECU/IF (without search item) lists the sum of all infringements in the consecutive screen SECU24 for all participants whose registration IDs lie under the respective security administrator's responsibility.



CASCADE-PC User Manual

Single Display: In the following screen, the selection SECU/IF (including a registration ID in the search item) lists all infringements within an indicated time frame (six weeks) for all selected participants. Prerequisite is that the registration IDs lie under the respective security administrator's responsibility.

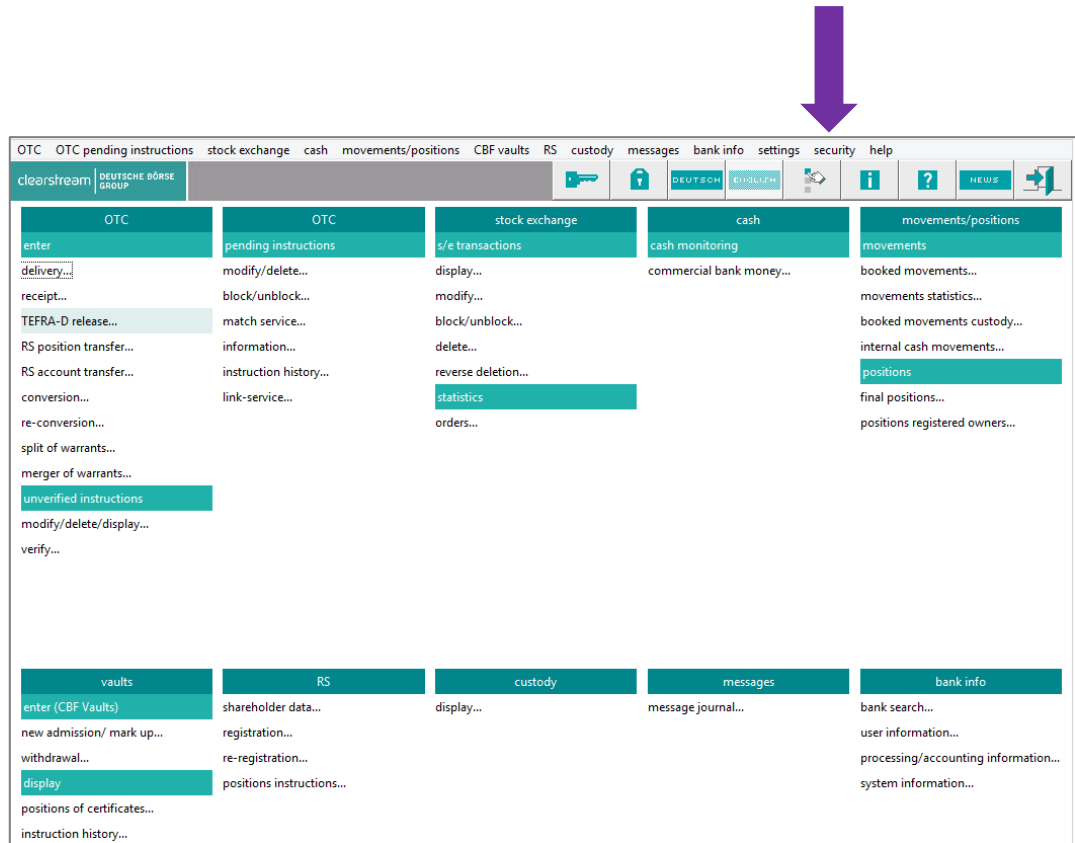


The following data is displayed for each participant:

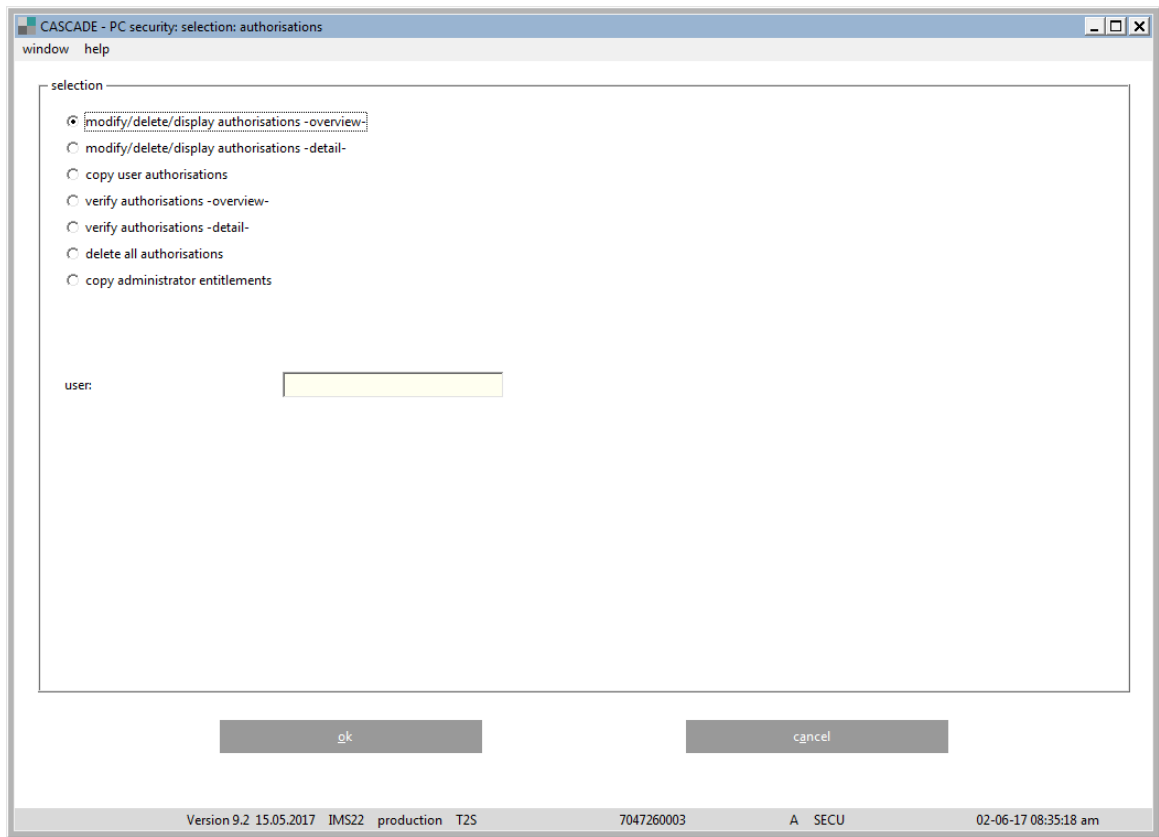
- Registration ID;
- Reason (incorrect password;
- Incorrect registration ID);
- Date;
- Time;
- Terminal;
- Transaction;
- Function Code;
- Search Item.

13.2 Authorisations

The maintenance of access rights for individual users is available in the menu option „security/authorisations“. Access to all functions in CASCADE-PC can be assigned, modified, deleted and displayed.



CASCADE-PC User Manual



Modify/delete/display authorisations – overview

The Security Agent can create all access rights of an individual user in the overview following the below steps:

1. The desired user ID must have been entered in the main menu.
2. The necessary functions can be selected by clicking on the selection box for the user ID. Multiple selections are possible.
3. Clicking on the “process” button will finalise the configuration.
4. A new window with the selected functions will appear, whereby verification and modify/delete/display (using right mouse-click on selection) are possible.
5. Upon completion, click on “close” to exit.

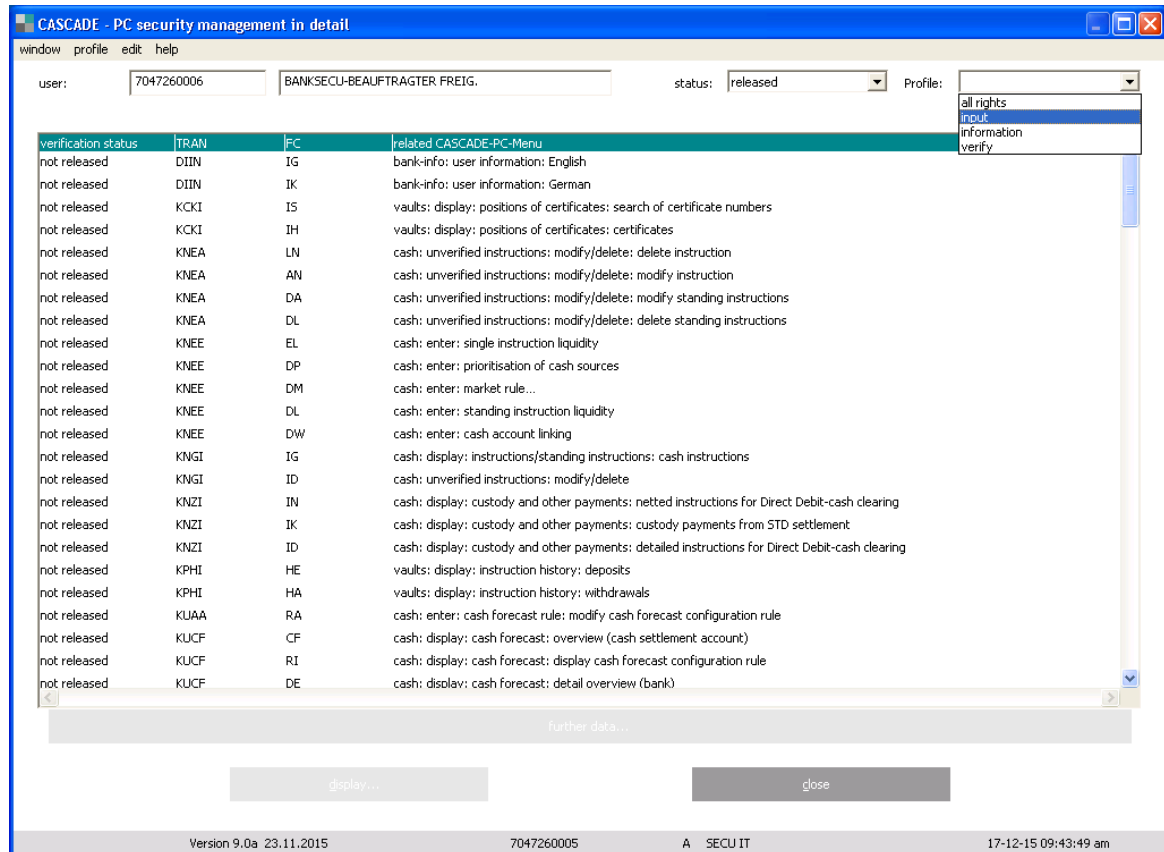
The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC security management' application window. At the top, there is a menu bar with 'window' and 'help'. Below the menu bar, the 'user:' field contains '7047260100' and 'HANS MEIER'. The 'status:' dropdown is set to 'released'. There are two buttons: 'flag all' and 'process'.

The main area is a grid of authorization options, organized into several categories:

- OTC (top-left):**
 - enter: delivery, receipt, TEFRA-D release, RS position transfer, RS account transfer, conversion, re-conversion, split of warrants, merger of warrants
 - unverified instructions: modify/delete/display, verify
- OTC (top-middle):**
 - pending instructions: modify/delete, block/unblock, match service, information, instruction history, link-service, reservation service
- stock exchange (top-right):**
 - s/e transactions: display, modify, block/unblock, delete, reverse deletion, orders
 - statistics: orders
- cash (middle-right):**
 - display: instructions/standing instructions, custody and other payments
 - enter: single instruction liquidity, standing instruction liquidity
 - unverified instructions: modify/delete
 - information cash monitoring RTS: central bank money (Euro), commercial bank money
- movements/positions (far right):**
 - movements: booked movements, movements statistics, booked movements custody
 - positions: final positions, positions registered owners
- vaults (bottom-left):**
 - enter (CBF Vaults): new admission/ mark up, withdrawal
 - display: positions of certificates, instruction history
- RS (bottom-middle):**
 - shareholder data: registration, re-registration
 - positions instructions: positions instructions
- custody (bottom-right):**
 - display: display
- messages (bottom-right):**
 - message journal: message journal
- bank info (far bottom-right):**
 - bank search: bank search, user information, processing/accounting information, system information

13.2.1 CASCADE-PC user profiles

The user profiles are available by selecting “process” on the previous screen:



The following standard user profile is available automatic upon installation of CASCADE-PC.

(The detailed transaction and function codes are available in the CASCADE-Host description of the transaction codes in chapter “Menu Lists and Functions in CASCADE-PC”):

All rights

The user is granted all access rights available in CASCADE-PC automatically.

Input

The user is granted all entry and modification rights from all types of instructions and is authorised to have view access all data.

Information

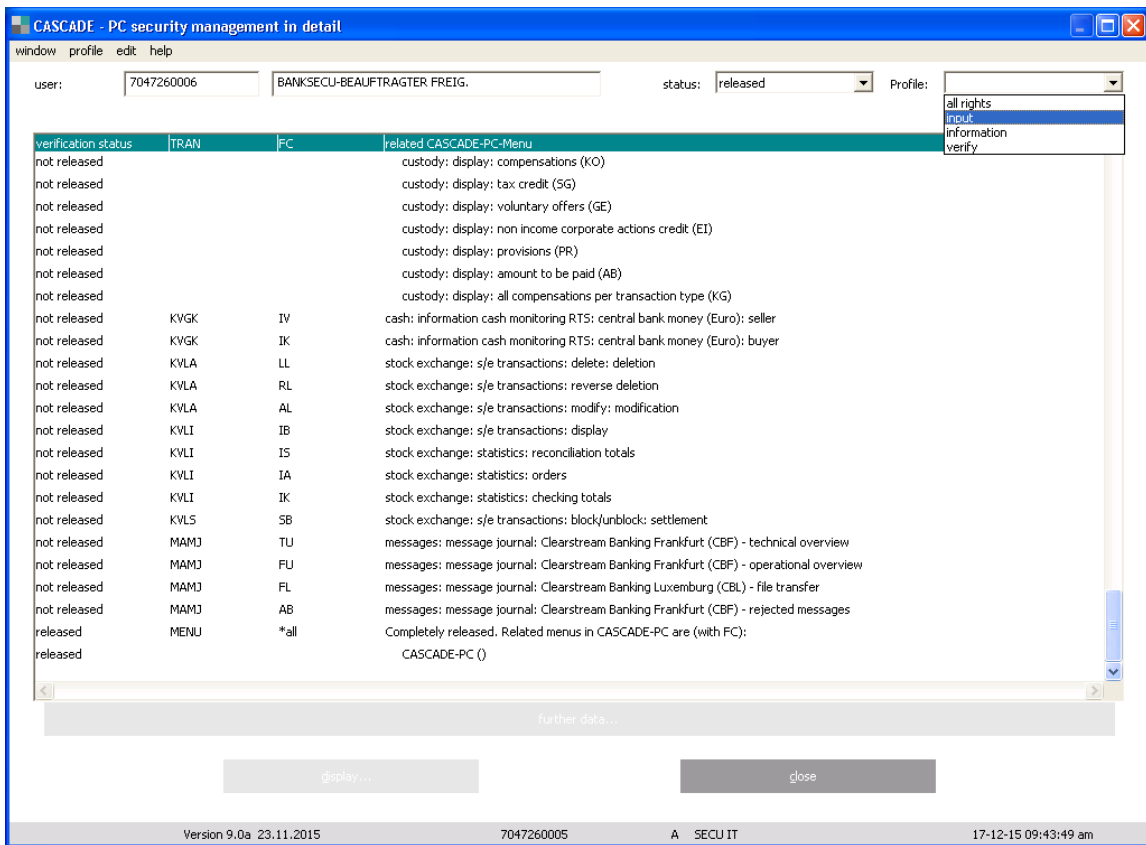
The user is granted view access only and cannot make any changes.

Verify

The user is granted verification access to release instructions for processing and has view access to all data.

All user profiles in CASCADE-PC are located in the file “cpcsys.ini”. New installation of a CASCADE-PC version should be performed after this file has been saved (please refer to the installations manual of CASCADE-PC).

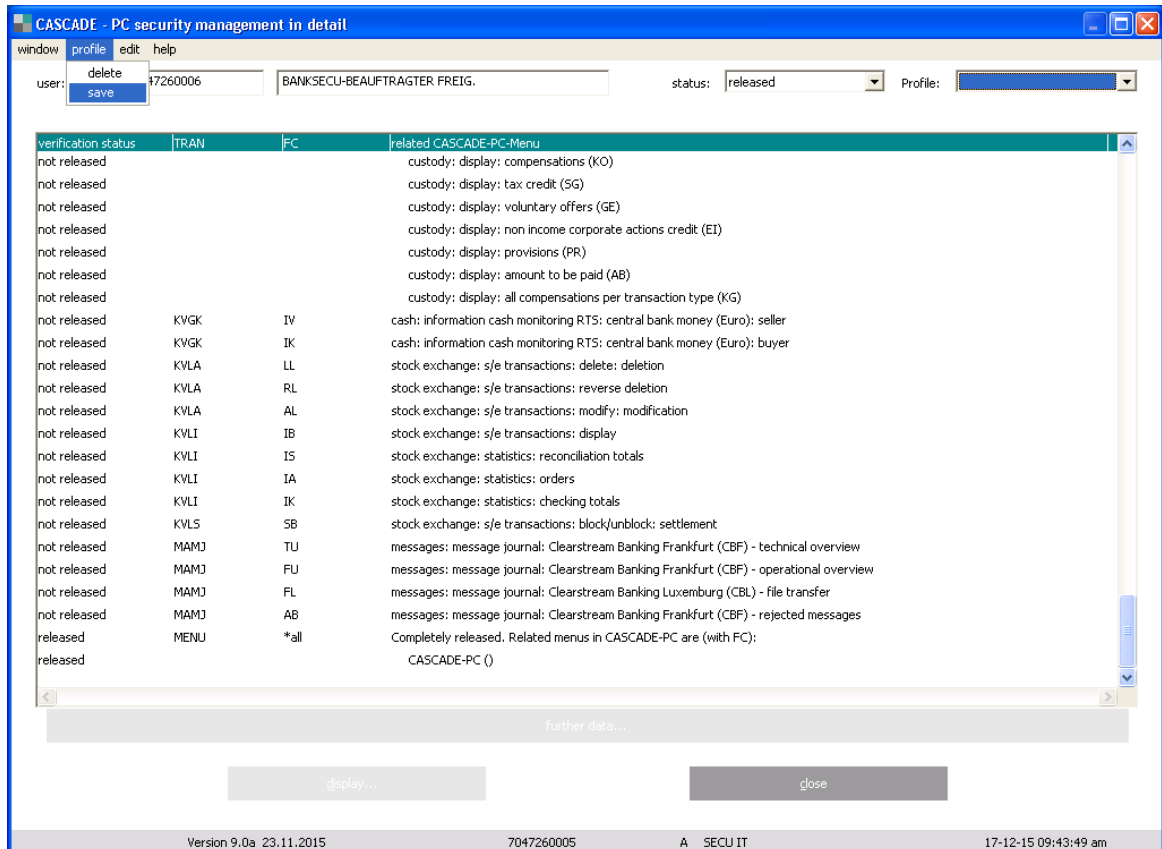
Example:

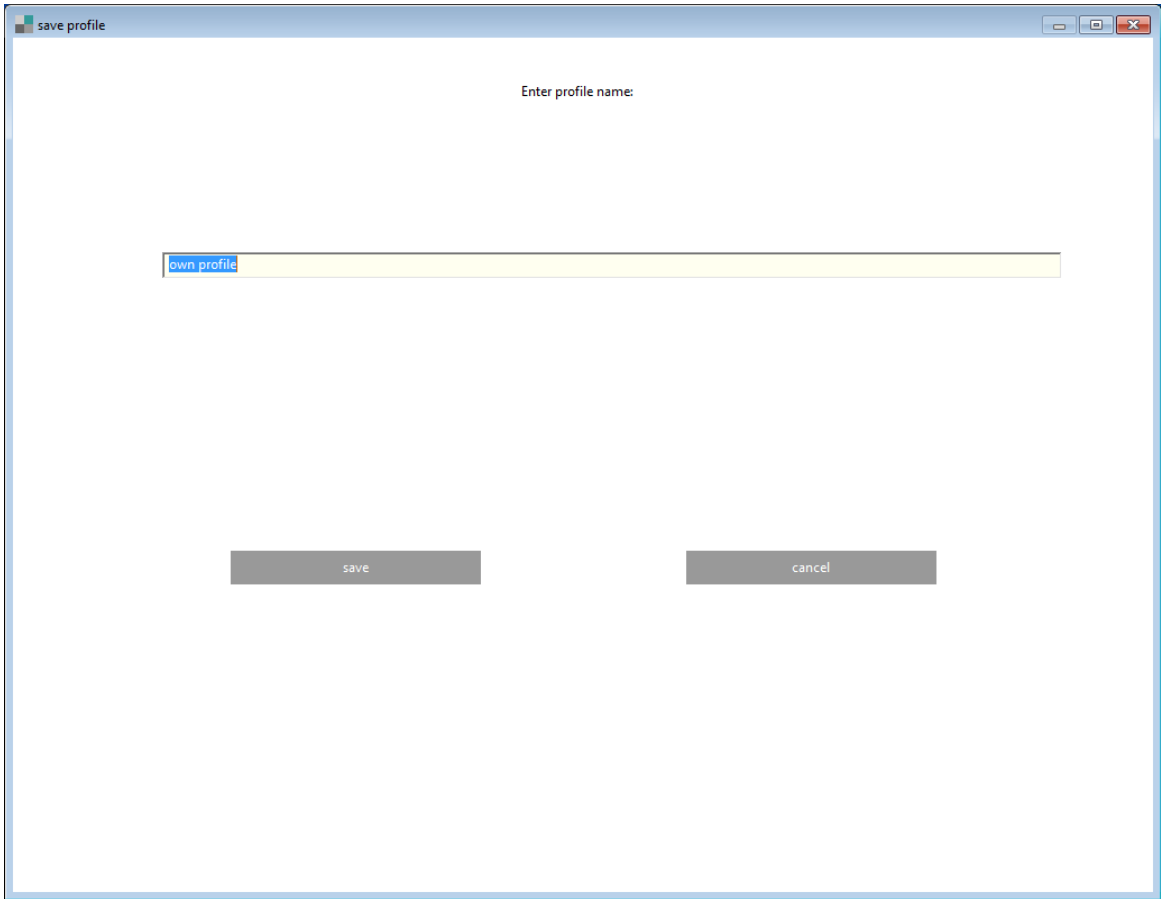


13.2.1.1 Creation of own user profile

The user follows these steps to create his own user profile:

1. User selects the desired CASCADE-PC menus and access rights
2. User goes to "profile/save"
3. A pop-up window will ask the user to enter his name.
4. The profile has now been created and saved.

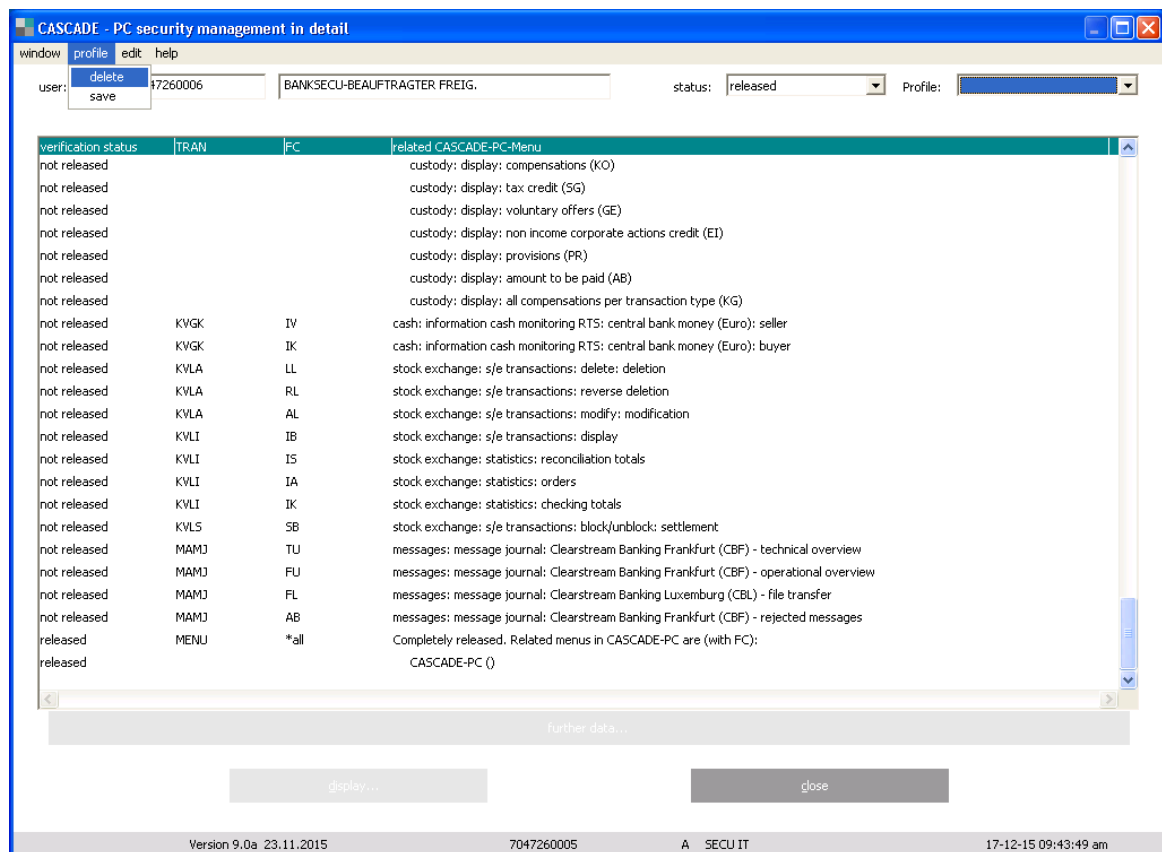




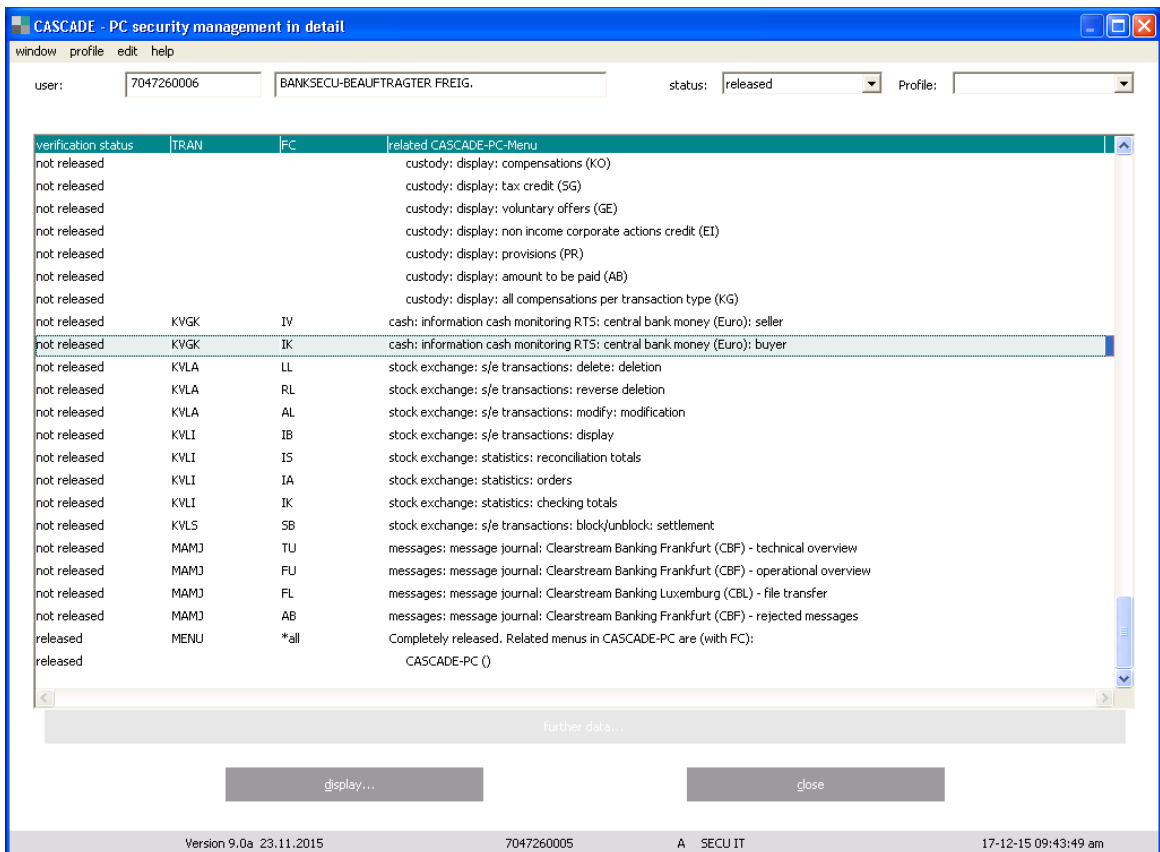
13.2.1.2 Deletion of user profile

The security agent can delete a user profile following these steps:

1. Selects the appropriate profile from the drop-down list;
2. In the display menu the security agent selects “profile”;
3. Clicking on “delete” carries out the deletion.



List of related transactions



The “display”-button will be available once a selection has been made. A new window will appear which displays the user data and the corresponding CASCADE-PC menu options.

The right mouse click on any selection will list the options “display”, “delete” or “paste”. The option “paste” will bring the user to the detail display of “modify/delete/display authorisations” (please refer to the chapter Modify/Delete/Display Authorisations–Detail).

13.2.2 Modify/ delete/ display authorisations – detail

It is possible for security agents to create particular transaction codes for a user when working on individual authorisations. After input in the field “transaction code” the field “function code” will be released. If there is no input, all related function codes are selected automatically. Once the input of a certain function code has been entered, this will be processed only. The input of several function codes takes place via confirmation with the “process” button and renewed selection of the “add” function using the right mouse click. The direct selection of several function codes is available in the “expert mode”.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC security: enter: authorisation". The interface includes the following elements:

- user:** A text input field.
- transaction code:** A text input field with a yellow highlight.
- function code:** A text input field.
- unformatted enter of function codes:** Two stacked text input fields.
- release a single function code:** A checked checkbox.
- expert mode:** An unchecked checkbox.
- process** and **cancel** buttons at the bottom.
- Status bar:** Displays "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)", "7047260005", "A SECU ET", and "22-04-13 12:00:42 pm".

The screenshot shows a software dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC security: enter: authorisation". It has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main area contains the following elements:

- user:** Two empty text input fields.
- transaction code:** A text input field containing "KVEE".
- release a single function code**
- function code:** A text input field containing "WE".
- expert mode**
- unformatted enter of function codes:** A text input field containing "= WE". Below it is another empty text input field.

At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "process" and "cancel". The status bar at the very bottom displays: "Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)", "7047260005", "A SECU ET", and "22-04-13 12:00:42 pm".

Expert mode

By selection of the expert mode, the input of multiple function codes is possible. The input has to start with an equal sign, followed by a blank "=", then individual function codes, separated by blanks.

Exceptions

- Bank-info: user information: English (DIIN IG);
- Bank-info: user information: German (DIIN IK).

The equal signs are replaced by a blank. (At the beginning there are two blanks.)

(KVGI) custody services: display: (KVGI)

The release of transaction code KVGI automatically selects all function codes (an individual release of the function codes is no longer possible).

CASCADE-PC User Manual

CASCADE - PC security: enter: authorisation

window help

user:

transaction code:

release a single function code

function code:

expert mode

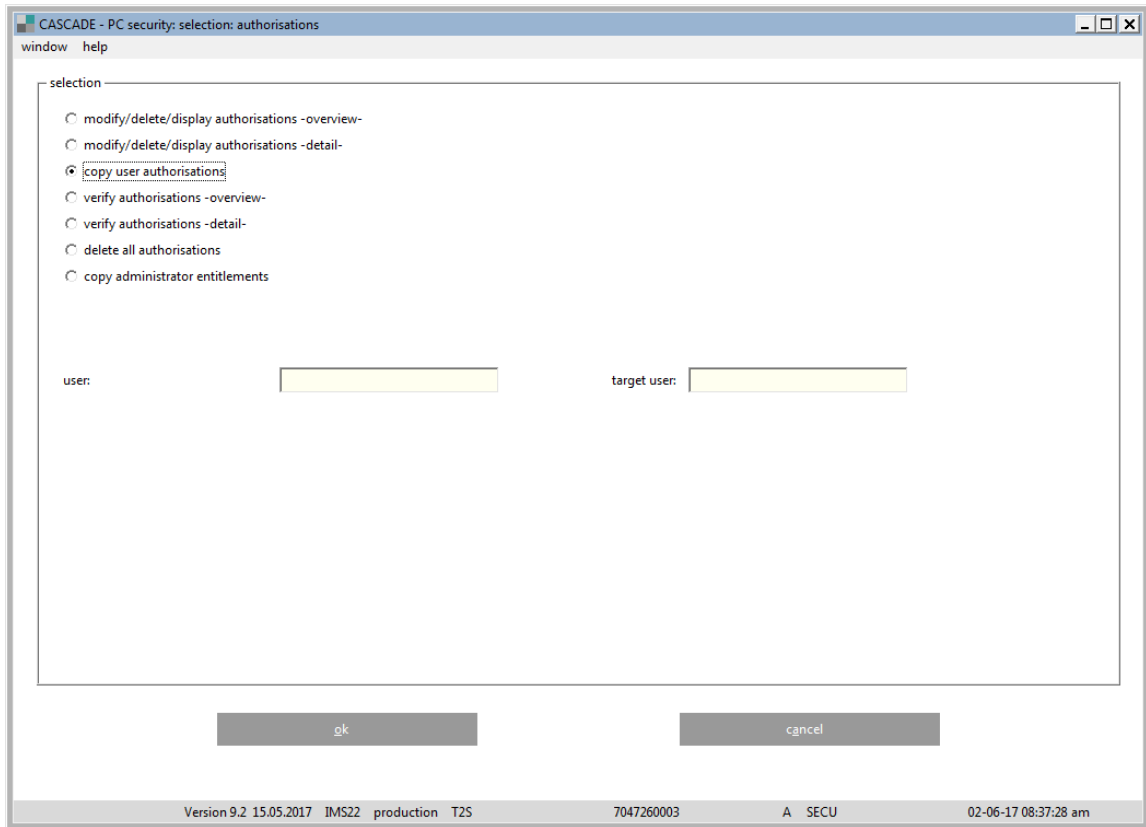
unformatted enter of function codes:

process cancel

Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7047260005 A SECU ET 22-04-13 12:03:19 pm

13.2.3 Copy authorisations

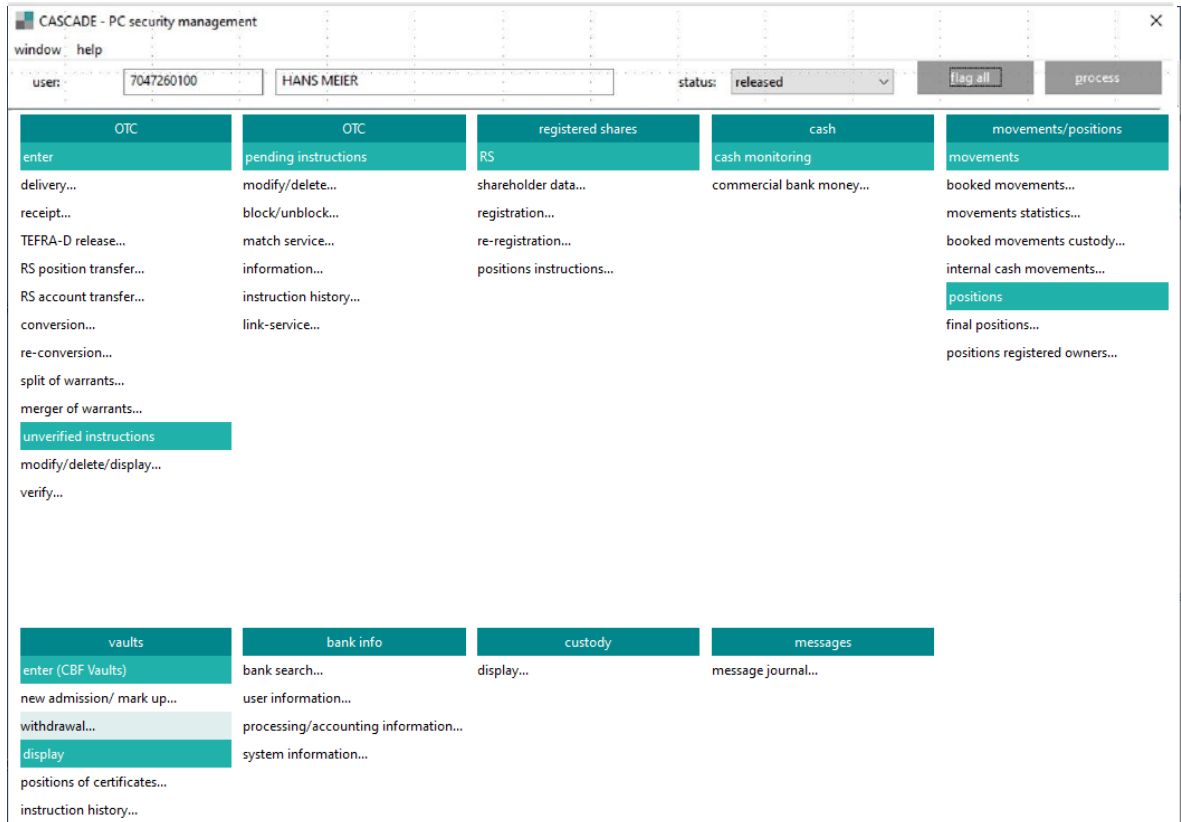
If it is necessary to create several users with the same functionalities, the copying function can be used. In the input field "user", first the user-ID to be copied from has to be entered. The next field has to be filled with the new user-ID. By clicking on "OK" the copying process will be initiated.



13.2.4 Verify authorisations – overview

Authorisations entered by the security agent instructor must be approved or released for use. This must be done by the security agent approver, so that the four-eyes principle will be respected.

The release of a new user can be done in the “status” checkbox, then go to “verify authorisations -overview” and the appropriate ID has to be selected. If there is data to be released, the following window opens.



When changing back authorisations within the release function, also different authorisations can be de-selected due to internal system requirements. This is indicated in the window.

Release of blocked users

CASCADE - PC security management: verify

window help

user: 7047260100 HANS MEIER status: blocked flag all process

OTC	OTC	registered shares	cash	movements/positions
enter	pending instructions	RS	cash monitoring	movements
delivery...	modify/delete...	shareholder data...	commercial bank money...	booked movements...
receipt...	block/unblock...	registration...		movements statistics...
TEFRA-D release...	match service...	re-registration...		booked movements custody...
RS position transfer...	information...	positions instructions...		internal cash movements...
RS account transfer...	instruction history...			positions
conversion...	link-service...			final positions...
re-conversion...				positions registered owners...
split of warrants...				
merger of warrants...				
unverified instructions				
modify/delete/display...				
verify...				

vaults	bank info	custody	messages
enter (CBF Vaults)	bank search...	display...	message journal...
new admission/ mark up...	user information...		
withdrawal...	processing/accounting information...		
display	system information...		
positions of certificates...			
instruction history...			

CASCADE - PC security management: verify

window help

user: 7047260100 HANS MEIER status: blocked release selected flag all process

OTC	OTC	registered shares	cash	movements/positions
enter	pending instructions	RS	cash monitoring	movements
delivery...	modify/delete...	shareholder data...	commercial bank money...	booked movements...
receipt...	block/unblock...	registration...		movements statistics...
TEFRA-D release...	match service...	re-registration...		booked movements custody...
RS position transfer...	information...	positions instructions...		internal cash movements...
RS account transfer...	instruction history...			positions
conversion...	link-service...			final positions...
re-conversion...				positions registered owners...
split of warrants...				
merger of warrants...				
unverified instructions				
modify/delete/display...				
verify...				

vaults	bank info	custody	messages
enter (CBF Vaults)	bank search...	display...	message journal...
new admission/ mark up...	user information...		
withdrawal...	processing/accounting information...		
display	system information...		
positions of certificates...			
instruction history...			

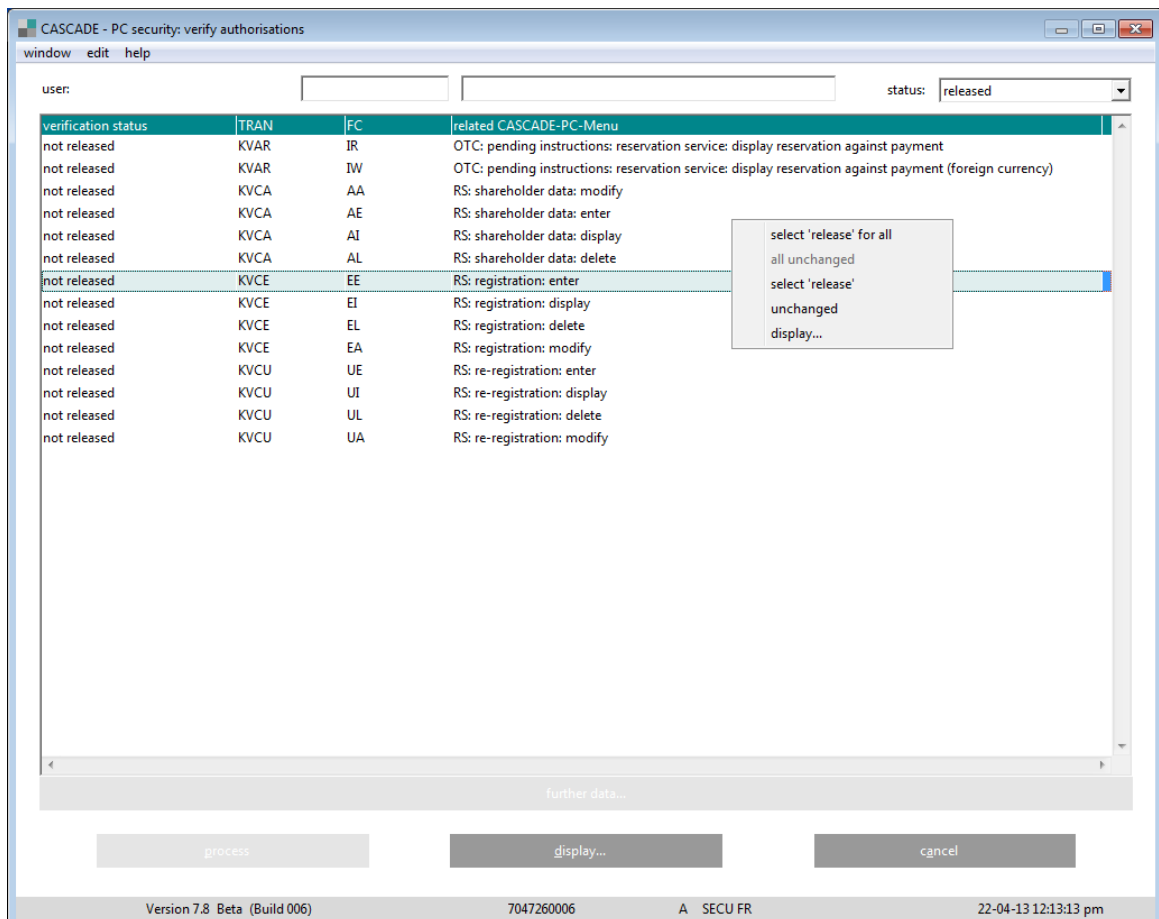
CASCADE-PC User Manual

After a change of password the user must be unlocked by the security agent approver. The checkbox "status" is marked yellow and "release selected" has to be chosen. After clicking on the "process" button, the user is released again.

13.2.5 Verify authorisations detail

The user follows these steps to release single authorisations:

1. Selects “verify authorisations detail”.
2. A new tabular overview window opens.
3. After a change of password the user must be unlocked by the security agent approver.
4. In the checkbox “release” selected has to be chosen.
5. After clicking on the “process” button the user is released again.



With the right mouse click, the following selections will appear:

- Select “release” for all: all selected authorisations will be set on status “release” selected.
- All unchanged: no changes to the existing status of all authorisations.
- Select “release”: marked authorisations will be set into status “release” selected.
- Unchanged: no change to the existing status for the marked authorisation.
- Display: user data and all related CASCADE-PC menus or authorisations will be displayed.

After changing the release status for authorisations the “process” button will be activated. The “display” button opens a new window with user data and the related CASCADE-PC authorisation. Clicking on “cancel” closes the window.

13.2.6 Delete all authorisations

This function deletes the entire profile of the respective user. If only individual functions are to be deleted, see chapter “Modify/Display/Delete Authorisations –Overview- or –Detail.

Upon deletion, all functions will be disabled. The deletion process will be confirmed with the system message “SY0060I the authorisation data deleted”.

Note: This function deletes also the authorisation for starting up CASCADE-PC.

13.2.7 Copy Administrator entitlements

Via this function, administrator entitlements can be transferred to another administrator. It must be entered if release entitlements should be copied to release or maintenance entitlements, or maintenance entitlements to maintenance or release entitlements. This can be done via setting the flag concerned to “Yes” via the selection menu, but one can be selected at a time, only, following the general Deutsche Börse security policy (SECU).

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "CASCADE - PC security: selection: authorisations". The window has a menu bar with "window" and "help". The main content area is titled "selection" and contains a list of radio button options:

- modify/delete/display authorisations -overview-
- modify/delete/display authorisations -detail-
- copy user authorisations
- verify authorisations -overview-
- verify authorisations -detail-
- delete all authorisations
- copy administrator entitlements

Below the list, there are two text input fields: "user:" with the value "123410001" and "target user:" with the value "123410002".

There are four dropdown menus for copying entitlements:

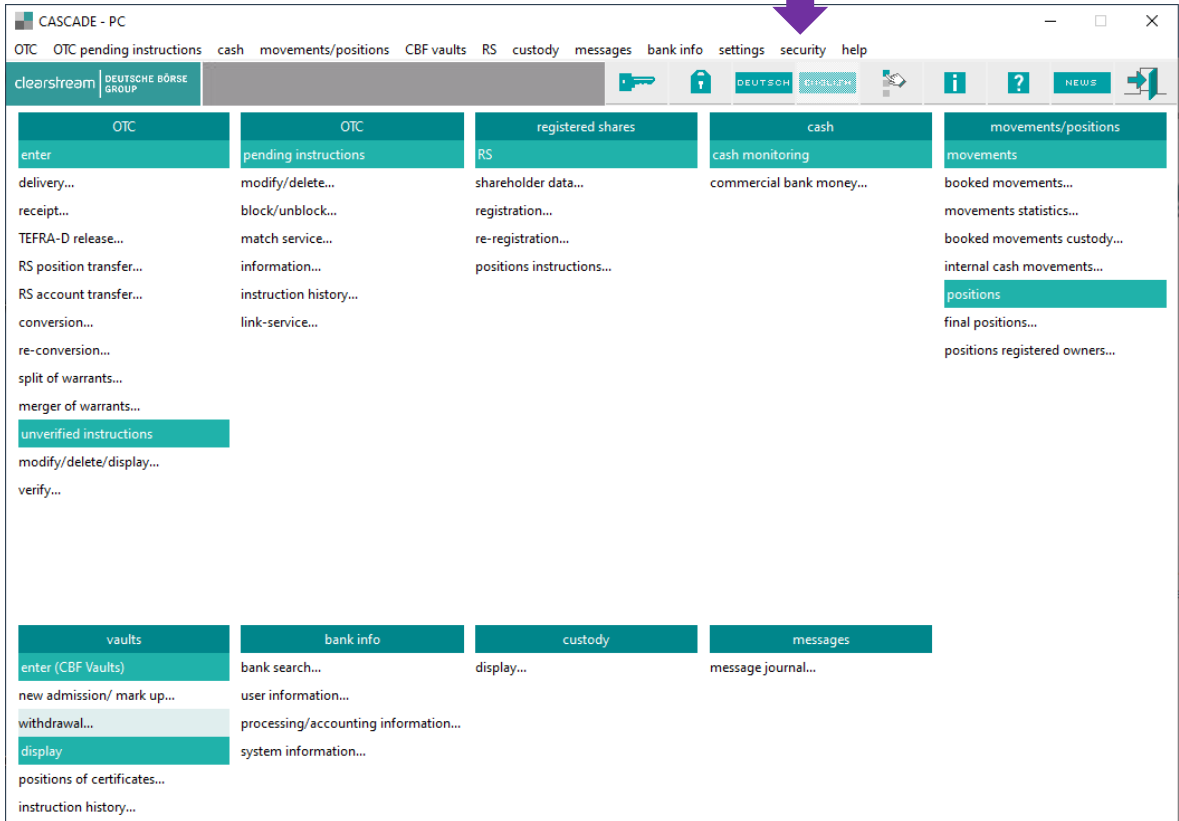
- copy release entitlements to release entitlements: yes
- copy release entitlements to maintenance entitlements: yes
- copy maintenance entitlements to release entitlements: yes
- copy maintenance entitlements to maintenance entitlements: yes

At the bottom of the dialog, there are two buttons: "ok" and "cancel".

The footer of the dialog contains the following information: "Version 9.2 15.05.2017 IMS22 production T25 7999260001 A SECU 18-05-17 02:22:56 pm".

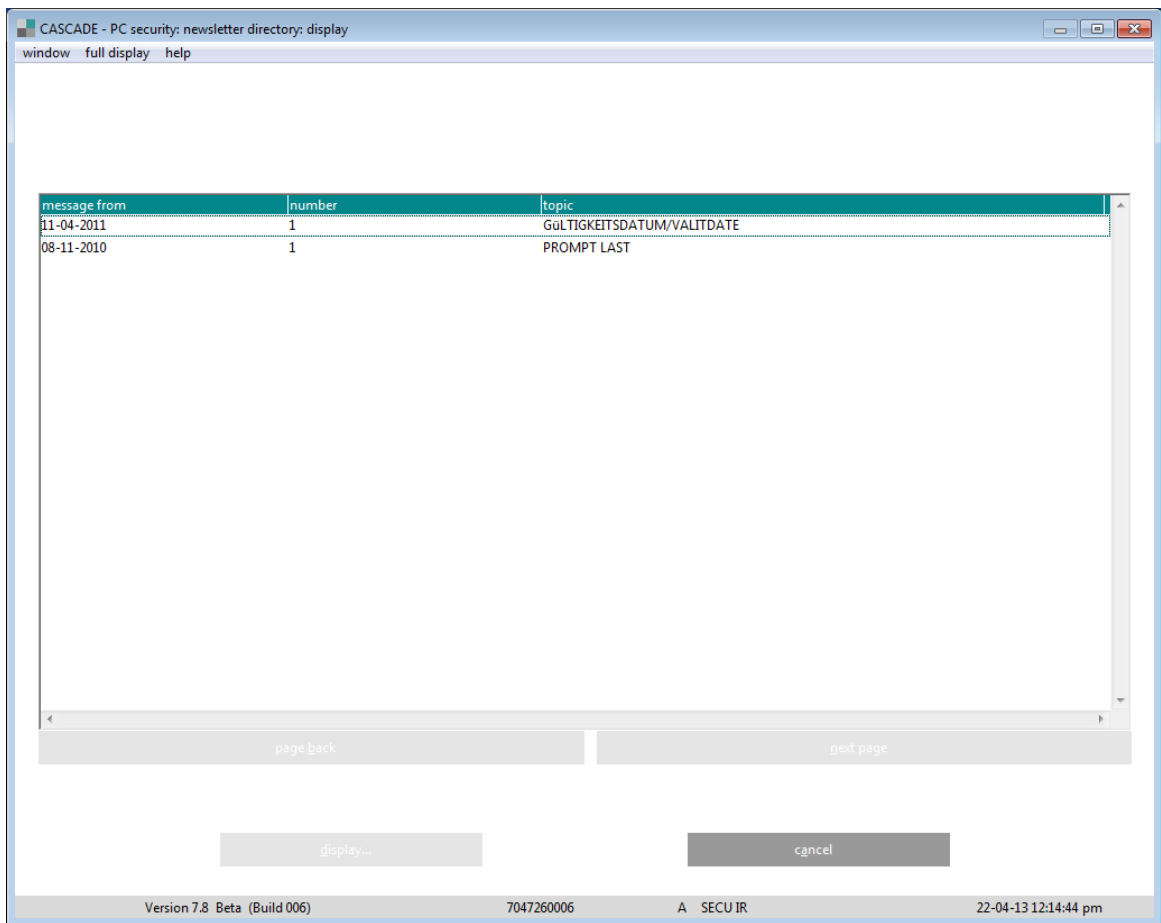
13.3 Newsletter

An additional function under the SECURITY drop down list enables the receipt of circulars by the user administrators who are required by CBF.

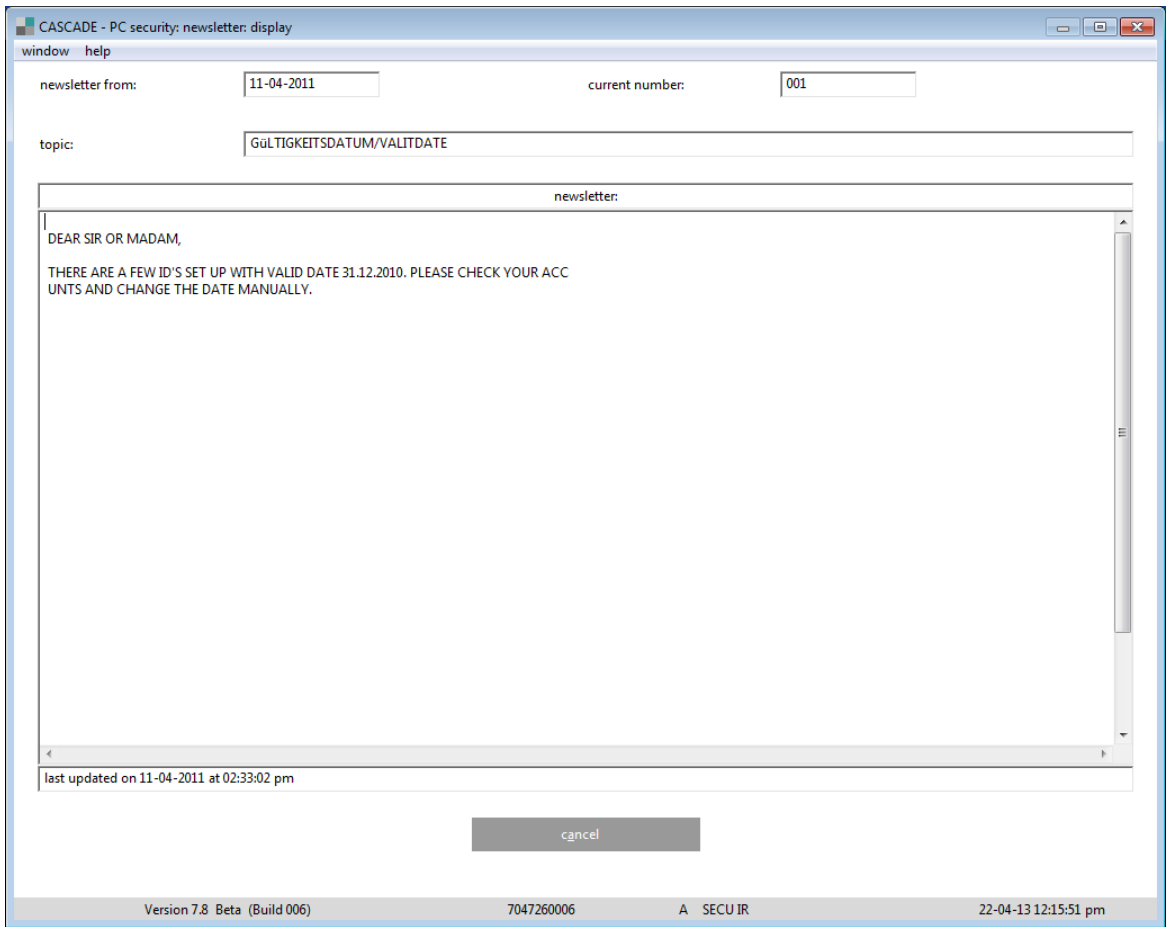


The selection of "Newsletter" from the "Security" drop down menu shows all circulars listed by the main security administrator in the circular directory. The most current circular can be found at the top of the list in the directory.

CASCADE-PC User Manual



A double-click on one of the listed circulars displays the date it was sent, topic, text of the circular, current number and last update time and date.



14 Evaluations

After the unverified and pending instructions have been processed daily, lists are output giving the banks an additional option of monitoring the unverified instructions.

The lists are provided as print files. Provided the participant has submitted an exact printer address, CBF sends the printer output to the printer indicated and issues the pre-set list scope at the participant's site.

The sort sequence in the list is:

1. Bank number
2. Status code (for example validly placed instructions or those output into History.)
3. File number
4. Instruction type
5. Securities code
6. Instruction number

Every time the instruction type is changed, the following totals are generated:

- Number of items per instruction type;
- Total of cash equivalents;
- Total nominal amounts.

14.1 Unverified instructions

The figure of the total unverified instructions of all submitters is processed each evening after data-entry has been concluded (logoff of CASCADE Online)

The results of this processing are:

- List of non-released instructions;
- List of entered instructions which were deleted after a business day and prior warning;
- List of the instructions placed validly on this business day with Clearstream Banking.

14.1.1 List of non-released instructions

This list contains all instructions that are to be deleted on the next business day:

- All instructions entered that were not verified;
- All instructions entered that the verifier marked as invalid and that the instructor did not correct.

```
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG                ESCHBORN, 18.11.2014
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61                 TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                     FAX +49-69-211-611177
TEST BANK

TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 66666 TESTSTADT 1

BANK NO. : 7 513   BIC: TESTBANKXXX

SO FAR NOT RELEASED TO CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT           18.11.14 PAGE : 1
FOR DELETION ON 19.11.2014 LATE

INSTR. TYPE 1 SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.

D/BK ISTR.N A/DEBIT A/CREDIT SEC    NOMINAL    CASH    SET DAY
SET TYPE USER ID  USER ID  TIME  A/C BENEFY ISNTR REF.NO.  ID/IN
  INSTRCTR  VERF.  OPTR.  VERFD.    ACC.
SET.PTY-DELIVERER P1  SET.PTY-DELIVERER P2  SET.PTY-RECEIVER P1 SET.PTY-RECEIVER P2

    947 7513 000 2322 000 999100    200        20.08.14
3 MAS N      7513000002
TEST CASCADE

TOTALS SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.
      QTTY      NOMINAL    CASH
        1         200
TOTALS ALL INSTR. TYPES
      QTTY      NOMINAL    CASH
        1         200
```

14.1.2 List of deleted instructions

Instructions entered and which after two business days have still not been released or, after designation during verification as "invalid" have not been corrected, are deleted. These instructions are displayed with all data entered, that is the list layout is identical with the data-entry screen, subsequent screen and series display. If complete rows in the screens display empty fields, they appear on the list as empty lines.

The instructions entered which have not been corrected and verified after two business days are marked with a prominent headline "Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt AG unverified instructions: instructions deleted by Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt AG" and deleted from unverified instructions status.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61
FAX +49-69-211-611177

ESCHBORN, 18.11.2014
TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177

TEST BANK

TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1

BANK NO. : 7 513 BIC: TESTBANKXXX

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT UNVERIFIED INSTRS. DELETED BY CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT

PAGE : 1

DATA ENTRY : 7513000004 18.11.2014 11:58
VERIFY : PENDING

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT INST. SETTLEMENT SEC. TRANSFER UNVERIFIED INSTRUCTIONS

FILE NO.: ISTR.N: 235 D/T: CSC GIR PR: 0

DEBIT : 7513 000 TESTBANK / TESTDEFFXXX
CREDIT : 7301 000 A-BANK / BANKDEFFXXX
SEC : W 999100 TEST-AG-2

NOMINAL : 187 UNIT : ST PRIORITY: 4 NOR
CASH : CURR. : PARTY-HOLD (Y/N): N
DCA/REF : ISS. START (Y/N): N

SET DAY : 18.11.2014 EX-TRD : BATM/ADEA (Y/N): N
ST. EXCH.: OPT-OUT: RTS-DVP (Y/N): N

TRADE DAY : REF. NO. :
PRICE / CUR: INSTR. REF.:
COUNTER-INS:

SETTL PARTY - DELIVERER

P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:

SETTL PARTY - RECEIVER

P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:

COUPON INFO/REC.DAY :
BLOCK. F/STAFF : N) : N BLOCK.DT:

TEXT : TEST CASCADE

14.1.3 List of validly placed instructions

This list holds all instructions on a given day that have been placed successfully with CBF.

Note: At the repeated request of CBF clients, this list shows a printout of the time at which the instruction was verified. The field: "blocking date" is filled by the blocking date, if the instruction concerns the transfer of staff shares.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG	ESCHBORN, 18.11.2014		
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61	TELEPHONE	+49-69-211-11177	
	FAX	+49-69-211-611177	
TEST BANK			
TESTSTRASSE 10			
POSTFACH 111111			
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1			
BANK NO. : 7 513 BIC: TESTBANKXXX			
VALID INSTRS. ENTERED AT CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT GU 27.12.2013			PAGE : 1
INSTR. TYPE 1 SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DEL.			
D/BK N.ISTR.A/CDEB. A/C CR. SEC	NOMINAL	CASH	SET DAY
RTS-DVP USER ID USER ID TIME A/C BENEFY ORIG.INSTR REF.NO. ID.INSTR.			
INSTR. VERF.OPTR. VERF. ACC.			
SET.PTY-DELIVERER P1 SET.PTY-DELIVERER P2 SET.PTY-RECEIVER P1 SET.PTY-RECEIVER P2			
4 7513 000 7301 000 999000	45.000	46.560,63	16.12.07
7513000001 7513000002 14:08		DELIVERY	W
TEST CASCADE		18.11.14	
	W		
9 7513 000 7404 000 999100	80.000		18.11.14
7513000001 7513000002 12:58 9381112			W
TEST CASCADE			
6 7513 000 4342 000 999500	50.000		18.11.14
13000001 7513000002 14:53			W
TEST CASCADE		18.11.14	
	W		
TOTALS SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.			
QTTY	NOMINAL	CASH	
3	175.000	46.560,63	
TOTALS ALL INSTR. TYPES			
QTTY	NOMINAL	CASH	
3	175.000	46.569,63	

14.2 Pending instructions

Seven lists per bank are generated for the pending instructions:

- List of receipt and delivery instructions entered by counterpart;
- List of instructions which have not been settled 15 days after settlement date (first warning);
- List of instructions which have not yet been settled 35 days after settlement date (second warning);
- List of instructions which were deleted after 40 days;
- List of historical instructions;
- List of failed matching items.

14.2.1 Pending instructions deleted at Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt

This list holds instructions pending for processing and deleted at Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt.

```

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG                ESCHBORN, 18.11.2014
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61                TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                      FAX      +49-69-211-611177
TEST BANK

TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 66666 TESTSTADT

BANK NO. : 7 513   BIC: TESTBANKXXX

DELETED AS CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT PENDING INSTRUCTIONS          PAGE : 1

DATA ENTRY: 7513000004 18.12.2014 11:11          CURR: INSTRUCTION
VERIFY : 7513000003 18.12.2014 12:15

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT INSTR. SETTLEMENT   SEC. TRANSFER          INSTR. STAGE

FILE NO.:          ISTR.N: 123456   D/T: CSC GIR   PR: 0

DEBIT : 7513 000   TESTBANK          / TESTDEFFXXX
CREDIT : 7301 000   A-BANK          / BANKDEFFXXX
SEC : W 575200   TEST-AG-2

NOMINAL :          1000   UNIT : ST   PRIORITY: 4 NOR
CASH :          CURR. :          PARTY-HOLD (Y/N): N
DCA/REF :          ISS. START (Y/N): N

SET DAY : 18.11.2014   EX-TRD :          BATM/ADEA (Y/N): N
ST. EXCH.:          OPT-OUT:          RTS-DVP (Y/N): N

SET STAGE : 1 BLOCKED DELIVERER

PROCESS. STAGE : 4 PENDING DUE TO BLOCKING (DELIVERER)

TRADE DAY :          REF. NO. :
PRICE / CUR:          INSTR. REF.:
                  COUNTER-INS:

SETTL PARTY - DELIVERER
P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:

SETTL PARTY - RECEIVER
P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:

COUPON INFO/REC.DAY :
BLOCK. F/STAFF : N) N   BLOCK.DT:

TEXT : TEST CASCADE
    
```


14.2.2 List of receipt and delivery instructions entered by counterpart

This list holds all instructions pending for processing at the end of each settlement day. All instructions marked as "matched" and "unmatched" are included.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG	ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007		
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61	TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177		
	FAX +49-69-211-611177		
TEST BANK			
TESTSTRASSE 10			
POSTFACH 111111			
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1			
BANK NO. : 7513	BIC: TESTBANKXXX		
POSITION ON : 16.12.2007			
ARRANGED FOR YOU SEC. TRANSFER/REPURCHASE RCPT.	PAGE : 1		
AT STATUS: MATCHING			
M S/SP ISTR.N A/C DEB. A/C CB. SEC	NOMINAL	CASH	SET DAY
1 3 J 5303 7303 000 7513 000 999000	2.000	29.400,00	16.12
TOTALS SEC. TRANSFER AT STAGE:UNMATCHED			
QTTY	NOMINAL	CASH	
1	2.000	29.400,00	

14.2.3 List of instructions with first warning

This list contains all instructions that were not settled 15 days after settlement date.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG	ESCHBORN, 18.11.2014
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61	TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
FAX +49-69-211-611177	
TEST BANK	
TESTSTRASSE 10	
POSTFACH 111111	
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1	
BANK NO. : 7 513 BIC: TESTBANKXX	
INSTRS. CALLED 1 ST TIME BY CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT 16.12.2007 PAGE : 1	
FOR DELETION ON 01.12.2014 LATE	
INSTR. TYPE 1 SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.	
PNOTE ISTR.N A/C DEB. A/C CB. SEC	NOMINAL CASH SET DAY
RTS-DVP USER ID USER ID TIME A/C BENEFY ISNTR REF. NO. ID/IN	
INSTR. VERF.OPTR VERFD. ACC.	
SET.PTY-DELIVERER P1 SET.PTY-DELIVERER P2 SET.PTY-RECEIVER P1 SET.PTY-RECEIVER P2	
4 7513 000 7301 000 999000	45.000 46.560,63 10.10.14
11:20	
TEST CASCADE	DELIVERY
9 7513 000 7404 000 999100	80.000 10.10.14
13:10 9381112	
TEST CASCADE	
6 7513 000 4342 000 999500	50.000 10.10.14
16:50	
TEST CASCADE	
TOTALS SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.	
QTTY	NOMINAL CASH
3	175.000 46.560,63
TOTALS ALL INSTR. TYPES	
QTTY	NOMINAL CASH
3	175.000 46.569,63

14.2.4 List of instructions with second warning

This list holds all Instructions that were not settled 35 days after settlement date.

```
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG                ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61                 TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                     TELEFAX +49-69-211-611177

TEST BANK
TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1

BANK NO. : 7 513    BIC: TESTBANKXXX

INSTRS. CALLED 2ND TIME BY CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT    PAGE : 1
FOR DELETION ON 07.01.2008 LATE

INSTR. TYPE 1 SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.

D/BK ISTR.N A/C DEB. A/C CB. SEC  NOMINAL    CASH  SET DAY
RTS-DVP USER ID  USER ID  TIME A/C BENEFY ISNTR REF. NO.  ID/IN
  INSTR.  VERF.  OPTR.  VERFD    ACC.
SET.PTY-DELIVERER P1  SET.PTY-DELIVERER P2  SET.PTY-RECEIVER P1  SET.PTY-RECEIVER P2

    33 7513 000 7404 000 999300  2.000    294.000,00 10.10.14
    J          13:58  94085  60345
TEST CASCADE

TOTALS SEC. TRANSFER
      QTTY      NOMINAL      CASH
      1          2.000    294.000,00
TOTALS ALL INSTR. TYPES
      QTTY      NOMINAL      CASH
      1          2.000    294.000,00
```

14.2.5 List of instructions deleted after 40 Days

This list holds all instructions being deleted as pending instructions at Clearstream Banking 40 days after settlement date. It is displayed in detail, that is all data stored are listed for each deleted instruction.

```
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG                ESCHBORN, 18.11.2014
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61                TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                     FAX +49-69-211-611177
TEST BANK
TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1
BANK NO. : 7 513    BIC: TESTBANKXXX
PEND. INSTRS:  INSTRS. DELETED BY CBF/T2S  PAGE : 1
DATA ENTRY : 7513000019 31.10.2014 9:53
VERIFY : 7513000010 31.10.2014 9:58
MATCHING : OPEN
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT INST. SETTLEMENT SEC. TRANSFER INSTR. STAGE
FILE NO.: ISTR.N: 49958 D/T: CSC GIR PR: 0
DEBIT : 7513 000 TESTBANK / TESTDEFFXXX
CREDIT : 7401 000 A-BANK / BANKDEFFXXX
SEC : W 999100 TEST-AG-2
NOMINAL : 9000 UNIT : ST PRIORITY: 4 NOR
CASH : CURR. : PARTY-HOLD (Y/N): N
DCA/REF : ISS. START (Y/N): N
SET DAY : 31.10.2014 EX-TRD : BATM/ADEA (Y/N): N
ST. EXCH.: OPT-OUT: RTS-DVP (Y/N): N
MATCHING : 1 UNMATCHED - NO CP-INSTRUCTION AVAILABLE
SET STAGE : 1 BLOCKED DELIVERER
PROCESS. STAGE: 1 UNSETTLED
TRADE DAY : 29.10.2014 REF. NO. :
PRICE / CUR: INSTR. REF.:
COUNTER-INS:
SETTL PARTY - DELIVERER
P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:
SETTL PARTY - RECEIVER
P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:
```

14.2.6 List of historical instructions

This list holds all the pending instructions being marked for modification or deletion and subsequently processed as unverified instructions.

Clearstream Banking Instruction Status: Instructions deleted by Instructor

```
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG          ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61          TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                FAX      +49-69-211-611177
TEST BANK

TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1

BANK NO. : 7 513

INSTR. STAGE   INSTRS. DELETED BY INSTRUCTOR   PAGE : 1

VERIFY : 7513000002 15.12.2007 14:34
DELETION : 7513000009 20.12.2007 13:43   HIST. INSTRUCTION

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG, FRANKFURT INST. SETTLEMENT   SEC. TRANSFER   PENDING INSTR.

FILE NO.:      ISTR.N: 238978   D/T: CSC GIR PR: 0

DEBIT : 7513 000   TESTBANK           / TESTDEFFXXX
CREDIT : 7301 000   A-BANK             / BANKDEFFXXX
SEC : W 999100   TEST-AG-2

NOMINAL :      400   UNIT : ST   PRIORITY: 4 NOR
CASH :      CURR. :   PARTY-HOLD (Y/N): N
DCA/REF :      ISS. START (Y/N): N

SET DAY : 21.11.2014   EX-TRD :   BATM/ADEA (Y/N): N
ST. EXCH.:   OPT-OUT:   RTS-DVP (Y/N): N

SET STAGE : 0 RELEASED

PROCESS. STAGE : 5 POSITIONS INSUFFICIENT

TRADE DAY : 29.10.2014   REF. NO. :
PRICE / CUR:   INSTR. REF.:
                COUNTER-INS:

SETTL PARTY - DELIVERER
P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:

SETTL PARTY - RECEIVER
P1:
P2:
P3:
P4:
P5:
```

Modification history: pending instructions

```
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG          ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61          TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                FAX      +49-69-211-611177
TEST BANK
TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 6666 TESTSTADT 1
BANK NO. : 7 513
MODIFICATION HISTORY PENDING INSTRUCTIONS      27.12.2007  PAGE : 1
INSTR. TYPE 1 SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.
D/BK ISTR.N A/DEBIT A/CREDIT C/S  NOMINAL      CASH  SET.DTE
ACTION  USER ID  TIME  COD
102 558383 7513 000 7301 000 999000  45.000      46.560,63 17.12.07
BLOCK  7513000000 14:23 SET STAGE  1 INSTRUCTION BLOCKED BY INSTRUCTOR
102 558384 7513 000 2009 000 999000  60.000      100.560,63 17.12.07
BLOCK  7513000000 14:23 SET STAGE  1 BLOCKED DELIVERER
RELEASE 7513000000 15:30 SET STAGE  0 RELEASED
```

14.2.6.1 Matching error list

This list holds all instructions for which the counterpart has marked a delivery or receipt as invalid and has added a corresponding error code. The instructions are listed in this list until the error is cleared or the instruction is deleted by the system.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
 MERGENTHALERALLEE 61
 FAX +49-69-211-611177

ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007
 TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177

TEST BANK

TESTSTRASSE 10
 POSTFACH 111111
 D 6666 TESTSTADT 1

BANK NO. : 7 513 BIC: TESTBANKXXX

UNMATCHED INSTRUCTIONS 13.12.2007 PAGE : 1

INSTR. TYPE 1 SEC. TRANS. / REPURCHASE DELY.

FILE ITR.N.	A/C DEB.	A/C CR.	SEC	NOMINAL	CASH	SET DAY
MATCHING ST.					ID/IN	
136 7513 000 7301 000 999900			820	97.605,26	17.01.08	
011 NO INSTRUCTION OF BENEFICIARY					W	
6250 7513 000 7301 000 999901			2.000.000	1.994.400,00	13.01.08	
051 INVALID TRADE DAY					W	

TOTALS SEC. TRANS / REPURCHASE DELY.

QTTY	NOMINAL	CASH
2	2.000.820	2.092.005,26

TOTALS ALL INSTR. TYPES

QTTY	NOMINAL	CASH
2	2.000.820	2.092.005,26

14.2.7 Further evaluations

14.2.7.1 Advices

An advice is raised for each booked security credit generated by a delivery. All fields that have been set (that is also the data from any subsequent screen) are printed out on the advice. Advices are provided to the participant in a print file.

```
CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG          VALUE : 29.09.2016
ADV.FOR SECS. RECEIPTS        INSTR. NO. 6146161

YOUR ACCOUNT WILL BE CREDITED WITH THE FOLLOWING SECURITIES
FOR CREDIT      :

CR. ACC: 1234          TESTBANK AG          / TESTBANKXXX

SEC:  I DE0005190003  BAY.MOTOREN WERKE AG ST
UNIT : ST            NOMINAL :      5.200
CCY  : EUR           CASH   :    353.600,00

TRADE DAY : 27.09.2016          MI.NO: 16052

SETTL PARTY DELIVERER
P1:BANKDEFFXXX DAKV5678000
P2:
P3:

SETTL PARTY RECEIVER
P1:TESTDEFFXXX DAKV1234000
P2:

DEB. ACC: 5678          BANK AG          / BANKBICCXXX
```

14.2.7.2 Processing lists

14.2.7.2.1 Cash clearing list/data carrier

All clearings and bookings occurring on an accounting day (from stock exchange trades, OTC transactions and simple CBF physical securities accounting) are classified in a list sorted by securities codes. These data are delivered on paper (= cash clearing list) and, upon request, as a data carrier (= cash clearing data carrier)

14.2.7.2.2 Daily statement of positions

A daily positions statement for each value date is drawn up for each account and securities code. It is printed at the end of day. Hence, this statement contains processed transfer instructions.

This statement can be obtained in the CBF-Fileservice.

14.2.7.3 TEFRA D reporting

Credit advice of a TEFRA-D Bond within the 40 days period for the receiver

This credit advice will be created at the end of a settlement day if there was a credit booking for the CBF client account (Job JQ262000).

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61
FAX +49-69-211-611177
ESCHBORN, xx.xx.xxxx
TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177

TEST-BANK AG
HAUPTVERWALTUNG FRANKFURT/MAIN
TESTSTRASSE 10
D 76666 TESTSTADT
ACCOUNT NUMBER: x xxxx

POSITION RELATED INFORMATION ABOUT TEFRA-D SECURITIES

DEAR SIR OR MADAM,

ON xx.xx.xxxx A CREDIT OF SECURITIES TOOK PLACE ON YOUR BLOCKING ACCOUNT xxxx/671. THIS SECURITY HAS BEEN ISSUED AS "TEFRA-D SECURITY".

ACCORDING TO TEFRA-D RULES (RELATING TO US SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE ACT FROM 1933 CONCERNING FOREIGN SALES OF US-SECURITIES) A TEFRA-D SECURITY MAY NOT BE BOUGHT DURING THE FIRST 40 DAYS EX ISSUE-DATE BY AN US-CITIZEN OR A CITIZEN, WHO LIVES LONGER THAN 183 DAYS IN THE USA. PLEASE SCRUTINISE YOUR CUSTOMER HOLDINGS AND INFORM CBF ABOUT POTENTIAL HOLDINGS IN FAVOUR OF A CITIZEN, MENTIONED ABOVE, INCLUSIVE INDICATION OF THE NOMINAL AMOUNT.

TO RELEASE HOLDINGS THE CASCADE TRANSACTION "KVEE" and FUNCTION CODE "TD" WITH THE RELATED NOMINAL AMOUNT HAS TO BE USED. WITH THIS RELEASE A BOOKING FROM YOUR BLOCKING ACCOUNT IN FAVOUR OF YOUR SELECTED ACCOUNT WILL BE INITIATED. FURTHERMORE THIS RELEASE-INSTRUCTION CONFIRMS THAT NO PERSON, MENTIONED ABOVE, HAS A HOLDING WITHIN YOUR ACCOUNT WITH CBF. OTHERWISE THE POSITION HAS TO REMAIN ON THE BLOCKING ACCOUNT.

WE ARE OBLIGATED TO REPORT HOLDINGS ON ANY BLOCKING ACCOUNT TO THE LEADMANAGER. A RELEASE OF HOLDINGS AFTER THE 40 DAYS PERIOD IS ONLY POSSIBLE VIA A CONFIRMATION AND TRANSACTION OF THE RELATED LEADMANAGER INITIATED BY THE ACCOUNT OWNER.

SECURITY CODE	SECURITY DESCRIPTION	TEFRA-D END-DATE
DE0001142008	BUNDANL.V.94/24NK OZSSSTV 1.000,000 EUR	30.07.2006
DE0001123456	BUNDANL.V.08/15NK OZSSSTV 1.1111,000 ST.	30.07.2006

123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
THIS REPORT IS PRODUCED ELECTRONICALLY AND IS NOT SIGNED

Advice at the end of the 40 days period

If there will be positions on the blocking account xxxx/671 at the end of the 40 days blocking period a reminder will be sent (Job JQ234000).

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
60487 FRANKFURT AM MAIN

MUSTERBANK AG

POSTFACH 00 00 01
D 60000 FRANKFURT AM MAIN ESCHBORN, 30.07.2006
TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
FAX +49-69-211-611177

PROGRAMM-NAME: KD129

ACCOUNT NUMBER: x xxxx

POSITION RELATED INFORMATION ABOUT TEFRA-D SECURITIES / REMINDER

DEAR SIR OR MADAM,

ON xx.xx.xxxx THERE ARE THE BELOW MENTIONED HOLDINGS ON YOUR BLOCKING ACCOUNT xxxx/671. THE SECURITIES WERE ISSUED AS TEFRA-D SECURITY FOLLOWING THE TERMS & CONDITIONS.

ACCORDING TO TEFRA-D RULES (RELATING TO US SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE ACT FROM 1933 CONCERNING FOREIGN SALES OF US-SECURITIES) A TEFRA-D SECURITY MAY NOT BE BOUGHT DURING THE FIRST 40 DAYS EX ISSUE-DATE BY AN US-CITIZEN OR A CITIZEN, WHO LIVES LONGER THAN 183 DAYS IN THE USA.
PLEASE SCRUTINISE YOUR CUSTOMER HOLDINGS AND INFORM CBF ABOUT POTENTIAL HOLDINGS IN FAVOUR OF A CITIZEN, MENTIONED ABOVE, INCLUSIVE INDICATION OF THE NOMINAL AMOUNT.

THE 40 DAYS PERIOD HAS BEEN EXPIRED.

HOLDINGS ON THE BLOCKING ACCOUNT CAN ONLY BE RELEASED BY THE LEADMANAGER. NOW WITH CASCADE TRANSACTION "KVEE" AND FUNCTION CODE "TD" HOLDINGS CAN BE TRANSFERRED TO THE LEADMANAGER.

IT IS NECESSARY TO CONTACT THE LEADMANAGER AND TO REACH A COMMON AGREEMENT FOR A RELEASE OF THE HOLDING. THE LEADMANAGER WILL THEN TRANSFER THE HOLDING BACK TO THE CBF CUSTOMER ACCOUNT.

SECURITY CODE	SECURITY DESCRIPTION	TEFRA-D END-DATE
DE0001142008	BUNDANL.V.94/24NK OZSSSTV 1.000,000 EUR	30.07.2006
DE0001123456	BUNDANL.V.08/15NK OZSSSTV 1.1111,000 ST.	30.07.2006

123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
THIS REPORT IS PRODUCED ELECTRONICALLY AND IS NOT SIGNED

Advice at the end of 40 days period for lead-manager and CBF dep. New Issues

The lead manager receives an overview about the released and blocked positions in TEFRA-D securities. The blocked positions will be displayed with the related client accounts.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
60487 FRANKFURT AM MAIN

MUSTERBANK AG (LEAD MANAGER)

POSTFACH 00 00 01
D 60000 FRANKFURT AM MAIN ESCHBORN, 30.07.2006
TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
FAX +49-69-211-611177

PROGRAMM-NAME: KD129

ACCOUNT NUMBER: 2222

HOLDING RELATED INFORMATION ABOUT TEFRA-D SECURITIES
-END OF PERIOD PER xx.xx.xxxx-

RELEASED HOLDINGS:

ISIN	SECURITY DESCRIPTION	TOTAL
AMOUNT		
DE0001142008	BUNDESANL.V.94/24NK OZSSSTV	2.000,000 ST
DE0001152008	BUNDESANL.V.99/24NK OZSSSTV	9.000,000 DM
.		
.		
DE0001234567	BUNDESANL.V.96/24NK OZSSSTV	1.111,999 DM

BLOCKED HOLDINGS:

ACCOUNT	ISIN	Unit	HOLDING	LAST MOVEMENT
7001 671	DE0001142008	ST	1.000,000	30.10.2006
7002 671	DE0001142008	ST	1.100,000	20.10.2006
7001 671	DE0001152008	EUR	9.999,010	03.11.2006
7002 671	DE0001152008	EUR	10,099	31.12.2006
7003 671	DE0001234567	ST	710,000	11.08.2006

12345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789012345678901234567890123456789

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
THIS REPORT IS PRODUCED ELECTRONICALLY AND IS NOT SIGNED

14.3 Stock exchange trades

The day-to-day processing generates the following lists on the clearing and settlement of stock exchange transactions for CBF participants:

1. List of pending stock exchange transactions (sales and purchases);
2. List of instructions (sales and purchases);
3. List of cancellations (sales and purchases)

The lists below follow the daily printout of CASCADE:

4. List of valid modifications/reversed deletions (sales and purchases)
5. List of instructions marked for deletion (sales and purchases)
 - Marked for deletion by counterpart
 - Marked for deletion by instructor
 - Marked for deletion by both counterparts
 - Marked for deletion by CBF
 - Marked for deletion by T2S
6. List of instructions rejected before CBF AKV reservation
7. List of valid modifications/reversed deletions included for processing (see 4)

All lists mentioned are generated at the end of day.

14.3.1 Lists of pending stock exchange transactions

This list comprises all pending stock exchange transactions listed according to seller and buyer as well as custody type. Included are all day orders and possible unsettled instructions. Hence, all delivery positions are shown. The subtotals as per securities code are stated as well.

```

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG                ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61                 TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
                                      FAX       +49-69-211-611177

TEST BANK

TESTSTRASSE 10
POSTFACH 111111
D 66666 TESTSTADT

BANK NO. : 7 513   BIC: BANKDEFFXX   CURRENT DATE : 16.12.2007

LIST OF PENDING STOCK EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS          PAGE : 1
CURRENCY : EUR
CTDY TYPE : CSC   PURCHASE
  SEC.CD TR.NO TRADE DAY  NOMINAL    PRICE    ACTUAL AMOUNT CP-ACC
    BRKR  FIXED VAL.      PRICE DIFF. INFORMATION
501220 56123 28.11.07      200     23,1     4.620,00 7302
    1234                      OD
501220 53681 28.11.07      400     23,1     6.930,00 7302
    1234                      OD
  QUANTITY      NOMINAL    PRICE DIFF.  ACTUAL AMOUNT
TOTAL      2          600      0,00      11.550,00
515109 73117 28.11.07*      100     83,6     8.360,00 7301
    1223

          QUANTITY  NOMINAL    ACTUAL AMOUNT  PRICE DIFF.
TOTAL      3          700     19.910,00

BANK NO. : 7 513
  
```

Totals unsettled stock exchange transactions (purchases)

LIST OF UNSETTLED STOCK EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS					PAGE : 1
CURRENCY : EUR					
CTDY TYPE : CSC PURCHASE					
	QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT	PRICE DIFF.	
UNSETTLED INSTRUCTIONS					
AGAINST PAYMENT	2	600	11.550,00	0,00	
FREE DELIVERY					
TOTAL	2	600	4.620,00	0,00	
DAY ORDERS					
AGAINST PAYMENT	1	100	8.360,00	0,00	
FREE DELIVERY					
TOTAL	1	100	8.360,00	0,00	
TOTAL					
AGAINST PAYMENT	3	700	19.910,00	0,00	
FREE DELIVERY					
TOTAL	3	700	19.910,00	0,00	
BANK NO. : 7 513					

Reconciliation totals of all unsettled stock exchange transactions (purchases/sales)

LIST OF UNSETTLED STOCK EXCHANGE TRANSACTIONS					PAGE : 1
CURRENCY : EUR					
RECONCILIATION TOTALS OF ALL UNSETTLED S.E.TRANSACTIONS					
PURCHASES	QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT	PRICE DIFF.	
UNSETTLED INSTRUCTIONS					
AGAINST PAYMENT	1	200	4.620,00		
FREE DELIVERY					
TOTAL	1	200	4.620,00		
DAY ORDERS					
AGAINST PAYMENT	2	111	15.279,00		
FREE DELIVERY					
TOTAL	2	111	15.279,00		
TOTAL					
AGAINST PAYMENT	3	311	19.899,00		
FREE DELIVERY					
TOTAL	3	711	19.899,00		
OF WHICH DAY ORDERS					
ORDERS	1	200	43.900,00		
ORDER CONCLN	1	555	123.990,00		
DIFF.TR.DAY	1	400	44.345,56		

14.3.2 List of orders

Here all orders captured are shown according to sales and purchases. Orders are displayed for one day only.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG		ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007					
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61		TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177					
	FAX	+49-69-211-611177					
TEST BANK							
TESTSTRASSE 10							
POSTFACH 111111							
D 66666 TESTSTADT							
BANK NO. : 7 513	BIC: BANKDEFFXX	CURR. DATE : 16.12.2007					
LIST OF ORDERS		PAGE : 1					
CURRENCY : EUR							
PURCHASE							
SEC.CD	TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	S.E	BKR	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT
DESIGNATION	SEC.CODE					DELAY	
882885	13008	28.11.07	500	EDF	802	53	26.500,00
APPLE COMPUTER		SVG					
608370	21220	28.11.07*	200	EDF	807	203,25	40.650,00
HORTEN AG							
406350	24238	26.04.07	10.000	EDF	811	104,8	10.480,00
8,25 % DT.FINANCE (NETH) 92/96 12.03.G							*****
407600	26778	28.02.07*	5.000	EDF	811	108	5.400,00
8,5 % DT.FINANCE (NETH) 92/97 27.08.G							
486777	34458	26.04.07	1.000	EDF	811	77	770,00
7 % BK.F.AUSSENW.USSR 89/96 29.03.G							*****
403650	52342	26.04.07	20.000	EDF	884	105	21.000,00
8,5 % EUROP.HYPO.BK. 91(95) 3 01.06.G							*****
	QUANTITY		NOMINAL				ACTUAL AMOUNT
TOTAL	6		36.700				104.800,00
INCL.				OLD-			
ORDERS							
DELAY	3		31.000				32.250,00
TOTAL				OLD-			
ORDERS							
	3		31.000				32.250,00
CURRENT				ORDERS			
	3		5.700				72.550,00

14.3.3 List of cancellations

This list includes all cancellations of contract notes. They are displayed for one day only. In addition, they are shown on the list of unsettled stock exchange transactions with the note (delivery position cancelled).

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG		ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007			
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61		TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177			
	FAX	+49-69-211-611177			
TEST BANK					
HAUPTVERWALTUNG FRANKFURT/MAIN					
TESTSTRASSE 10					
POSTFACH 111111					
D 76666 TESTSTADT					
BANK NO. : 7 513		BIC: BANKDEFFXX			
		CURR.DATE : 16.12.2007			
LIST OF CANCELLATIONS		PAGE : 1			
CURRENCY : EUR					
CTDY TYPE : AKV PURCHASE					
SEC TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT	CP-ACC
BRKR	FIXED VAL.		PRICE DIFF.	INFORMATION	
103000	47113 27.01.97*	100.000	100	101.211,45	7301
	1234				
111434	87773 27.01.97*	50.000	100	50.636,33	7302
	1234				
QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT	PRICE DIFF.		
TOTAL	2	150.000	151.847,88	0,00	

14.3.4 Valid modifications/reversed deletions

The form of the list of valid modifications/reversed deletions included in the morning processing corresponds to the list shown below.

This list comprises the stock exchange transactions where the following jobs were carried out the day before:

- Partial deliveries; and/or
- Cancellation of a deletion marking of a stock exchange transaction.

Partial deliveries are listed only on the seller's part. The reversed deletions of stock exchange transactions are displayed separately for purchases and sales.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG		ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007			
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61		TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177			
	FAX	+49-69-211-611177			
TEST BANK					
HAUPTVERWALTUNG FRANKFURT/MAIN					
TESTSTRASSE 10					
POSTFACH 111111					
D 6000 FRANKFURT AM MAIN 90					
BANK NO. : 7 513		BIC: BANKDEFFXXX	CURR.DATE : 16-12-2007		
LIST OF VALID MODIFICATIONS/REVERSED DELETIONS		PAGE : 1			
CURRENCY : EUR					
CTDY TYPE : CSC SALE					
SEC TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT	CP-ACC
BRKR	FIXED VAL.	PART.NOM.	INFORMATION	USERID	TIME
103000	47113	28.02.97*	100.000	100	101.211,45 7301
	1234	20.000	TB	7513000004	08:08:08
105124	74113	28.02.97*	40.000	100	40.456,54 7304
	1234	12.000	TB	7513000004	08:18:08
111434	87773	28.02.97*	50.000	100	50.636,33 7302
	1234			7513000004	08:18:12
QUANTITY		NOMINAL		ACTUAL AMOUNT	
TOTAL	3	82.000		192.304,32	

14.3.5 List of instructions marked for deletion

14.3.5.1 Marked for deletion by counterpart

The sales list shows are instructions that the counterpart (purchaser here) has marked for deletion. Vice versa applies to the purchase list and the instructions marked on the day before for deletion.

14.3.5.2 Marked for deletion by instructor

Classified into sales and purchases, the own stock exchange transactions marked for deletion are displayed.

14.3.5.3 Marked for deletion by both counterparts

Classified into sales and purchases, the delivery positions marked for deletion by the two counterparts are listed.

Note: A transaction with a time indication next to it has been marked for deletion the day before. The asterisk refers to a day order.

14.3.5.4 Marked for deletion by CBF

Classified into sales and purchases, the stock exchange transactions marked for deletion by CBF are displayed.

14.3.5.5 Marked for deletion by T2S

Classified into sales and purchases, the stock exchange transactions marked for deletion by T2S are displayed.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG
 MERGENTHALERALLEE 61
 ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007
 TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177
 FAX +49-69-211-611177

TEST BANK

HAUPTVERWALTUNG FRANKFURT/MAIN
 TESTSTRASSE 10
 POSTFACH 111111
 D 76666 TESTSTADT

BANK NO. : 7 513 BIC: BANKDEFFXX CURR.DATE : 16-12-2007

LIST OF TRANSACTIONS MARKED FOR DELETION PAGE : 1

MARKED FOR DELETION

CURRENCY : EUR
 CTDY TYPE : CSC SALE

SEC TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT	CP-ACC
BRKR	FIXED VAL.	PART.NOM	INFORMATION	USERID	TIME
103000	47113	28.02.97*	100.000	100	101.211,45 7301
	1234			7513000004	08:08:08

QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT
TOTAL 1	100.000	101.211,45

MARKING FOR DELETION BY INSTRUCTOR

CURRENCY : EUR
 CTDY TYPE : CSC SALE

SEC TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT	CP-ACC
BRKR	FIXED VAL.	PART.NOM	INFORMATION	USERID	TIME
105124	74113	28.02.97*	40.000	100	40.456,54 7304
	1234	AS		7513000004	08:18:08

QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT
TOTAL 1	40.000	40.456,54

MARKED FOR DELETION BY BOTH COUNTERPARTS

CURRENCY : EUR
 CTDY TYPE : CSC SALE

SEC TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT	CP-ACC
BRKR	FIXED VAL.	PART.NOM	INFORMATION	USERID	TIME
111434	87773	28.02.97*	50.000	100	50.636,33 7302
	1234			7513000004	08:18:12

QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT
TOTAL 1	50.000	50.636,33

14.3.6 List of instructions rejected before settlement processing

On the seller's part, all stock exchange transactions that have been rejected before the reservation, for example due to class blocking (except for "no cover"), are shown.

CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG		ESCHBORN, 16.12.2007			
MERGENTHALERALLEE 61		TELEPHONE +49-69-211-11177			
	FAX	+49-69-211-611177			
TEST BANK					
HAUPTVERWALTUNG FRANKFURT/MAIN					
TESTSTRASSE 10					
POSTFACH 111111					
D 6666 TESTSTADT !					
BANK NO. : 7 513		BIC: BANKDEFFXX	CURR.DATE : 16.12.2007		
LIST OF INSTRUCTIONS REJECTED BEFORE AKV RESERVATION		PAGE : 1			
CURRENCY : EUR					
CTDY TYPE : CSC SALE					
SEC TR.NO	TRADE DAY	NOMINAL	PRICE	ACTUAL AMOUNT	CP-ACC
BRKR	FIXED VAL.	PART.NOM	PRICE DIFF.	INFORMATION	
REASON FOR REJECTION					
852654	22326	28.02.97	25	77,2	1.930,00 7301
	2341				
KV4020F SEC. CLASS BLOCKING				SP	
857469	24439	28.02.97	20	19,8	396,00 7301
	7935			SP	
KV4020F SEC. CLASS BLOCKING					
868055	25718	28.02.97	41	10,2	418,20 2322
	3444			SP	
KV4020F SEC. CLASS BLOCKING					
QUANTITY	NOMINAL	ACTUAL AMOUNT	PRICE DIFF.		
TOTAL	3	86	2.744,20	0,00	

14.4 Cash instructions

14.4.1 Lists of valid/generated cash instructions for cash clearing

CBF provides a Daily Listing for each cash clearing account. These documents all manually and automatically generated cash instructions per cash clearing day.

The report is divided into two parts.

In the upper half, all the accrued cash instructions for the one business day are displayed:

- Instructions for payments from corporate events;
- Collections or payments.

The lower half of the report displays the change history of the reservations with the corresponding instructions and user data.

14.4.2 Daily cash statement (“Geldtagesauszug”)

Per bank and main account, a daily cash statement is generated each value day with the results out of the cash processing and made available at around 18:00.

The daily cash statement shows:

- The balance out of credits from capital events;
- The balance out of debits from capital events;
- The balance out of credits from capital events, resulting from cancellations or re-runs;
- The balance out of debits from capital events, resulting from cancellations or re-runs;
- The balance out of payments generated manually by CBF.

The booked amounts are sorted by booking text keys. These and their meaning can be found in the CASCADE Online manual Part II, section 8.3.1.2, table “Geld Euro”.

The daily cash statement in total (in landscape format) shows all balances mentioned earlier and is sorted by:

1. CBF account master;
2. Source (manual or automated);
3. Booking text key;
4. Debits first, then credits.

This way, the accumulated amounts on the daily cash statement can be reconciled easier supported by the online display. Bookings that were created manually by CBF are not accumulated but displayed individually. The daily cash statement is dispatched with the other statements in parallel.

1CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG MERGENTHALERALLEE 61 ESCHBORN	GELDTAGESAUSZUG REPORT	VERARB. DAT: 2020-01-31 DATUM: 2020-01-31 ZEIT: 18:00 REPORT-ID: 7CL00000001731 SEITE: 1	7CL00000001731123401000001
1CLEARSTREAM BANKING AG 1234/001 CBF TEST ACCOUNT GELDTAGESAUSZUG (EOD)	NR. 022 VOM 31.01.2020 PER KTO TXT REFERENZ		
ALTER SALDO		SOLL	SEITE : 1 HABEN 0,00
DIVIDENDEN	1234 400	111.111,11	
AUSGL. DD2 1-8	1234 091		111.111,11
BEZ. R. AUSUEB.	1234 701 REPAYMENT EXERCISE XYZ		2.222,22
UEBER. ZEICH.	1234 702 REPAYMENT OVER ABC		33.333,33
AUSGL. DD3 1-8	1234 093	35.555,55	
SUMME UMSAETZE		146.666,66	146.666,66
NEUER SALDO			0,00

15 Online print

The online printing functionality in the CASCADE-PC client can be used in the same way as in CASCADE-Host for the following transactions:

- Cash: display: in overviews and most of the detailed views
- Cash: information cash monitoring RTS: central bank money (EUR): buyer (KVGK IK), seller (KVGK IV): list views
- Cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for buyer (KVGC IK), information for buyer and seller (KVGC IG), information for seller (KVGC IV): list views
- Movements/positions: movements: booked movements (KVDU ID): list views (all at once) and turnovers in the depot, movements statistics (KVDU IS): list views (all at once)
- Movements/positions: positions: final positions (KVBA BB): list view (all at once)
- OTC: pending instructions: information: instruction type (KVAI AA), list view
- OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: display (KVEI NR): detailed view
- OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: all instructions (KVEC VA): detailed view
- OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: all instructions (KVEK VA): detailed view
- instruction history (KVAI HA):
 - List view, single or more transactions can be selected by typing „D“
 - Not for the detailed view
- Security: user date: user login violations (SECU IF): Printing all violations at once
- Security: user date: user member directory (SECU IU): Printing all users at once
- Vaults: display: instruction history: deposits (KPHI HE), withdrawals (KPHI HA): list and detailed view

As in CASCADE-Host, the online print will be directed to the standard printer set up in the environment used.

CASCADE-PC User Manual

Example for booked movements:

The screenshot shows the 'CASCADE - PC domestic movements: overview' window. It features a menu bar with 'window', 'full display', and 'help'. Below the menu bar is a toolbar with options: 'print view contents', 'print online', 'print online movements', and 'close all'. There are also input fields for a date (16-04-2013), 'up to:', 'page:' (1), and 'items:' (11). A dropdown menu is set to 'debit entry'. The main area contains a table with the following data:

counterparty	inst	transaction no.	ISIN	nominal	cash equivalent	currency	Set./Trade Date
01 c			DE000A0NKUD2	29,000.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000A1R1JG0	2,636,635.000			16-04-13
01 c			DE000DHY1552	1,500,000.000			16-04-13
01 c			DE000DHY1552	17,700,000.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000DX2XXE9	1,000.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000DX2XXP5	1,500.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000DX2XXR1	4,700.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000DX2XX86	9,210.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000DX2Y104	950.000			16-04-13

At the bottom of the window, there are buttons for 'page back', 'next page', 'movements...', and 'cancel'. The footer displays 'Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006)', '7907260001', 'A KVDU ID', and '17-04-13 11:42:48 am'.

CASCADE - PC domestic movements: overview

window full display help

accounting date: 16-04-2013 up to: page: 1

transactions type: debit entry items: 11

bank:

counterparty	inst	transaction no.	ISIN	nominal	cash equivalent	currency	Set./Trade Date
01 c			DE000A0NKUD2	29,000.000			16-04-13
13 c				2,636,635.000			16-04-13
01 c				1,500,000.000			16-04-13
01 c				17,700,000.000			16-04-13
13 c				1,000.000			16-04-13
13 c				1,500.000			16-04-13
13 c				4,700.000			16-04-13
13 c				9,210.000			16-04-13
13 c			DE000DX2Y104	950.000			16-04-13

movements...
instructions...
instructions and movements...
print online...
print online movements...

page back next page

movements... cancel

Version 7.8 Beta (Build 006) 7907260001 A KVDU ID 17-04-13 11:45:38 am

16 Appendix

16.1 General field descriptions and formal verifications

Screen field	Formally correct	Explanation
ACCOUNT (DEBIT, CREDIT, ACC.)	7-digit numeric	See: DEBIT/CREDIT
ACCOUNT/BENEFICIARY (A/C BENEFY)	5-digit numeric	Receiver's participant number
ACCOUNT/INSTRUCTOR (A/C INSTR.)	5-digit numeric	Instructor's participant number
ACTUAL AMOUNT	13.2-digit numeric	The actual amount does not take into consideration price differences
ADDRESS	Text field	Internal bank address for receiver/instructor
Beneficial Owner Indicator	Drop-down list	To allow portfolio transfer of French Registered Shares (registered VONs) by indicating no beneficial owner change. Possible values are: yes, no and space (empty)
BALANCE BROUGHT FORWARD	14.2-digit numeric	In this field, the balance from the Bundesbank clearing of the previous day is shown.
BANK (BANK NO.)		See CREDIT BANK, DEBIT BANK.
BEARER SHARES POSITION	Numeric field	At subscription for registered shares with restricted transferability based on a rights issue resulting from bearer shares of respective issuer, the positions in bearer shares can be entered in this field.
BLOCK/UNBLOCK	Output field	Information identifier of blocking/unblocking
PARTY HOLD (SETTLEMENT)	Marking field	Code which shows whether an instruction is to be furnished with a settlement blocking
BLOCKING DATE	DD-MM-YYYY	This field is to be filled in when staff shares are transferred.
BLOCKING FOR STAFF	Marking field	Code for transfer of staff shares
CASH CLEARING	Text field	This contains an advice as to whether automatic account reconciliation was executed.
CASH CLEARING ACCOUNT 1	14.2-digit numeric	Clearing from the STD processing. Display of the Bundesbank clearing balance from the evening processing of the previous day
CASH CLEARING ACCOUNT 2	Cash clearing account 2	Settlement from the SDS processing.

Screen field	Formally correct	Explanation
		Display of the Bundesbank clearing balance from the SDS processing
CASH CLEARING DATE	DD-MM-YYYY	Selection criterion for the cash pre-advice display
CASH EQUIVALENT (CASH)	17.3-digit numeric	The EO equivalent which is cleared between counterparts for instructions with cash clearing.
CATEGORY OF THIRD PARTY HOLDING	Drop-down list	Category of third-party holding. Selection via drop-down list.
CORPORATE ACTION DATE	DD.MM.YYYY	This date indicates when a conditional increase of capital shall be performed.
COUNTERPART (CP)	4-digit numeric	The account number of the counterpart can be given in this field.
COUNTRY	Drop-down list	Nationality of the party for which the positions are held on a trust basis.
CP ACCOUNT	7-digits numeric	Counterpart account.
CREDIT	7-digit numeric	Local code, main account and sub-account of beneficiary.
CREDIT BANK	4-digit numeric	Local code and main account of beneficiary (= credit account)
CREDIT RESERVATION	5.3-digit numeric	Positions reserved for RTS or cross-border transactions (will be implemented only in a subsequent release)
CURRENCY/ CASH CURRENCY (EQUIVALENT) (CURR.)	3-place alphanumeric	The currency is pre-set with EUR.
CURRENT SECURITIES PRICE	13.2-digit numeric	Current securities price of securities held in a securities account
CUSTODY TYPE	Drop-down list	The field is pre-set with "collective safe custody" and cannot be overwritten
CUSTODY TYPE (stock exchange transactions settlement)	Drop-down list	Pre-set field which specifies the custody type of a stock exchange transaction
D/C	d/c	Advice of a debit or credit instruction
DEBIT	7-digit numeric	Local code, main account and sub-account of instructor After processing/verification, the system adds the account description
DEBIT BANK	4-digit numeric	Local code and main account of instructor (= debit account)
DELIVERY FROM	Text field	Banks which are not participants of CBF can be entered here.

Screen field	Formally correct	Explanation
DELIVERY VIA	Text field	Banks that are not participants of CBF can be entered here.
EX-DATE	DD.MM.YYYY	Ex Date of the capital increase
EXTERNAL SETTLEMENT DATE	DD.MM.YYYY	The accounting value dates valid for external participants (= third parties)
FILE NO. (D/BK)	1-3-digit numeric	The CBF participant can administer a classification number which he himself has allocated (batch processing). The CBF participant is himself responsible for the correctness of this number as there is no verification by the system.
GROUP NOMINAL	10, 3-digit numeric	Shows the delivery's total nominal value = sum of series nominal values
IDENTIFIER	7-digits numeric	Local code, main account and sub-account of beneficiary. At processing/verification, the system automatically adds the account designation.
INSTRUCTION NUMBER (ISTR.N)	1-7-digit numeric	No ambiguity permissible. INSTRUCTION NO. ← 8000000.
INSTRUCTION REFERENCE	16-place alphanumeric	This field contains the instruction number of a clearing house/CSD participant in the clearing house/CSD system.
INSTRUCTION TYPE (INTR.TYPE, ITR.N)	2-digit numeric Drop-down list	Numeric code for an instruction type Following options are possible: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 = delivery • 02 = receipt
ISSUE START (ISS.START)	Checkbox	primary market processing identifier, only advice for the beneficiary
LAND CENTRAL BANK (LCB) TOTAL BALANCE	14, 2-digit numeric	The final balance for the next Land Central Bank clearing is displayed here.
MATCHING STATUS	2-digit numeric	Information identifier for the matching status of an instruction.
MOVEMENTS RESERVATION	15.3-place alphanumeric	Positions reserved for RTS or cross-border transactions (will be implemented only in a subsequent release)
MOVEMENTS TYPE	drop-down list	Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Delivery • Receipt
NAME	Text field	Name of beneficiary or instructor

Screen field	Formally correct	Explanation
NEW SHAREHOLDER	Checkbox	The field is activated if registration/re-registration are made in favour of a new shareholder.
NOMINAL	10, 6-digit numeric	The securities nominal amount to be reserved between the counterparts
ORIGINAL NOMINAL	10, 6-digits numeric	Originally concluded nominal before the delivery of a partial nominal
PARTIAL NOMINAL	10, 6-digits numeric	Switching of partial rights accounts in full rights accounts or full rights accounts in partial rights accounts is available
PARTIAL RIGHTS	Drop-down list	The following options can be entered when converting partial rights accounts into full rights accounts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Partial rights in full rights; • Full rights in partial rights.
POSITIONS	14.6-digit numeric	Positions by SECURITIES CODE and ACCOUNT
BEARER SHARES POSITION	Numeric	At subscription for registered shares with restricted transferability based on rights resulting from bearer shares of the respective issuer, the position in bearer shares can be entered. As a rule, the issuer does not object to the registration.
PRICE (PR.)	5, 4-digit numeric	The price at which the final participants traded.
PRICE	7-digits numeric	The price concluded between the seller and buyer.
PROCESSING PRIORITY	Drop-down list	By using this code, the priority of an instruction in process can be managed.
PROCESSING STATUS	Output field	The processing status gives information on the current status of an instruction. For example, it shows whether an instruction has already completed Clearstream Banking processing and if so what the outcome was.
PROCESSING STATUS (AT CASH BALANCES)	Text field	Display of the SDS processing status in the cash balances display
PROCESSING STATUS	Text field	Display of the processing status of income payments in the cash pre-advice Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pre-advice data • Income data
RE-REGISTRATION DATE	DD.MM.YYYY	Date when the re-registration shall be initiated.
RE-REGISTRATION TYPE	Drop-down list	Reason for re-registration

Screen field	Formally correct	Explanation
REFERENCE NUMBER (REF.NO.)	16-place alphanumeric	The reference number agreed between the counterparts can be entered here.
REGISTRATION DATE	DD.MM.YYYY	Date on which transaction shall be reported to the issuer.
RETURN TRANSFER	Checkbox	If an already-booked entry (free of payment) is to be returned
RTS POSITIONS	Output field	This field shows the positions available of the settlement type RTS
SECURITIES (SEC., C/S)	See Explanation	Depending on the entry for the securities code, the following conditions apply to sec. code: German code: 6-digit numeric and greater than 100,000 ISO: 12-place alphanumeric Stock exchange code: 3/4 digit Common code: 7-digit numeric CLEARSTREAM BANKING, LUXEMBOURG: 6-place alphanumeric Euroclear: 4-digit alpha-numeric
SECURITIES CODE	6-digit numeric	The securities code number is displayed as a 6-digit numeric German securities code.
SECURITIES CODE FROM	6-digits numeric	For stock exchange transactions starting with this number
SECURITIES GROUP CODE	6-digit numeric	German securities codes which have to be delivered in series
SECURITIES SERIAL CODE (SEC.SER. CD.)	6-digit numeric	German securities code, derived in series from the breakdown of the securities group code
SETTLEMENT BLOCKING (stock exchange transactions settlement)	Drop-down list	Identifier indicating the selected release procedure (negative/positive) and/or the processing status of a stock exchange transaction
SETTLEMENT DATE (SET.DTE)	DD-MM-YYYY	Booking day on which the securities and cash regulation is to occur. (if the instructor has not completed this field, an automatic pre-setting of the next-possible accounting value date occurs) Condition: settlement day must be less than or equal to the day's date plus 40 business days.
SHAREHOLDER NUMBER	numeric field	The shareholders number clearly identifies the shareholder of registered shares with restricted transferability.
STD/SDS PROCESSING	Output field	This field shows the available positions for the STD/SDS settlement type

Screen field	Formally correct	Explanation
TEXT	Text field	Additional information for the beneficiary can be entered here.
THIRD-PARTY HOLDINGS	Checkbox	The field is activated, if the securities are held by a third-party, acting as trustee.
TOTAL	10, 6-digit numeric	The sum of the entered series "total nominal"
TOTAL CURRENT MOVEMENTS	14, 6-digit numeric	The total current movements are the outcome of the processing. It describes the transfers in process, the co-ownership of which has not yet been assigned at law.
TRADE DAY	DD-MM-YYYY	The day on which the final participant has concluded the securities transaction/stock exchange transaction
TRANSACTION NO.	6-digits numeric max.	Number of a stock exchange transaction
TRANSFER REASON	Drop-down list	The user gets the choice of various key words.
UNIT	2-digit	Positions account currency ("ST", "EO", alphanumeric etc.)
VALUE, VALUE PERIOD	DD-MM-YYYY	Entry possible as individual entry or as a time interval

16.2 General field entry rules

- If an entry does not have the maximum number of digits allowed, the entry will be left-justified, right-justified or centered depending on the type.
- The entry of zeros in the places before the decimal point and zeros after the decimal point is possible but not compulsory.
- Entering a decimal point is only necessary if places after the decimal point are entered.

When entering places after the decimal point the entry of at least one place before the decimal point is necessary, "0" where appropriate.

For example:

0.11 correct

.11 incorrect

- Date entry:

The following date entries are accepted:

DDMM: 2008

DD.MM: 20.08

DDMMYY: 200807

DD.MM.YY: 20.08.07

DDMMYYYY: 20082007

DD.MM.YYYY: 20.08.2007

The program generates the date entered in the form "DD.MM.YYYY".

- Alteration of field content:

The modification of a field content as displayed is possible by overwriting.

- Deletion of a field content:

To delete a displayed field content the following options are possible:

- Position the cursor at the first place in the field and activate the key: DEL (deletion character for character).
- Mark the field contents with the mouse and delete the whole content with the DEL key.
- If the field is already filled, the field content is marked with the positioning of the cursor. The user can delete the content with the DEL key or overwrite the content with a new entry.

16.3 Generally Applicable Field Descriptions and Formal Checks

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
AA ORDER TYPE	Order type	2-character numerical		Numerical mark for an order type The following indicators are available for the area of physical securities: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 16 = Deposit • 18 = Withdrawal
ACCOUNT	Account (action from)	7-character numerical	required	See DEBIT/CREDIT
ACCOUNT LEDGER POSITIONS	Account ledger positions	15.3-character numerical	none	Account balance for each ISIN and ACCOUNT (with transfer of co-ownership)
ADDRESS	Address	70-character alphanumerical	optional	For deposit orders, the address of a third party (for example, third-party bank) can be entered here on behalf of whom the client is making a deposit at CBF.
ANZ-STKE (NUMBER OF SHARES)	Number of shares	9-character numerical	none	Number of certificates per denomination
BANK	See debit/credit bank			
BANK NUMBER	Bank number	4-character numerical	required	Location flag and main account number
BASIC UNIT	Basic unit of the ISIN	9.7-character numerical	none	Automatically controlled by the system via the "Nominal value of the certificate"
BEGIN-DATUM-KE (START DATE MARK) DATE MARK	Ex date or execution date	DD.MM.YYYY	Required for RS	In the event of a warrant mark up: BEGIN-DATUM-KE (START DATE MARK) = Start Option period and DATE MARK = actual execution date

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
BESONDERHEIT (Characteristic)	Characteristic	3-character numerical		<p>This entry is required in the event of a divergent internal custody option for the ISIN.</p> <p>The following indicators are currently possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 = no coupon sheet • 3 = Certificate only, no coupon sheet printout • 4 = Individual certificate/global coupon sheet • 5 = Certificate, coupon sheet, assignment (for registered shares RS) • 6 = Certificate, talon, assignment (for registered shares RS) • 20 = Technical global certificate with coupon sheet (created manually) • 21 = Technical global certificate without coupon sheet (created manually) • 22 = Technical global certificate with coupon sheet (deliverable) • 23 = Technical global certificate without coupon sheet (deliverable) • 24 = Global certificate with coupon sheet • 25 = Global certificate without coupon sheet
BIC CODE	BIC code	11-character alphanumeric	optional	Entry of BIC code enables automatic identification of the address information. (not yet active)
BOOKING NOMINAL	Booking nominal	10.3-character numerical	optional, additional selection	Nominal amount from the order
CERTIFICATE NUMBERS	see certificate numbers section in this chapter as well as the individual order types			Certificate numbers on the certificates

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
CERTIFICATE TYPE	Certificate type	20-character alphanumeric	none	Indicates the type of certificate printout.
COLLECTIVE NUMBER	Number of the global certificate	6-character numerical	optional	The unique identification assigned by CBF for each global certificate in an ISIN.
CONTROL MARK	Control mark	1-character alphanumeric	required	This field must be completed in the "Control" function. Clients will find the different marks available for entry in chapter Verification (EC) on page 19-1.
COUNTRY/POST CODE/CITY	Country	3-character alphanumeric	none	Internal CBF field. Address of the recipient from the CBF address database (KUSTA) for securities withdrawal.
	Post code	5-character alphanumeric		
	City	30-character alphanumeric		
COUNTRY/POST CODE/CITY	Country	3-character alphanumeric	optional	Address of the recipient (manual entry)
	Post code	5-character alphanumeric	optional	
	City	30-character alphanumeric	optional	
COUNTRY/POST CODE/CITY PO BOX STREET ADDRESS (Withdrawal)	Street address PO BOX Country code Post code City	alphanumeric	optional	Information on the third-party beneficiary bank for the recipient of the shares
CREDIT ACCOUNT Deposit	Credit account	7-character numerical	required	For deposits this field contains the account number of the bank to which the revenues are to be credited. The content is preset with the user ID and the main account number
CREDIT ACCOUNT Withdrawal	Credit account	7-character numerical		CBF internal account number for vault holdings management. Preset during entry, cannot be edited by client
CREDIT BANK Deposit	Credit bank	4-character numerical	required	Bank number of the client at CBF (= Credit account)
CUSTODY OPTION	Custody option	3-character numerical		Describes the custody of the respective ISIN at CBF according to WM. This corresponds with the certificate type table.

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
CUSTOMER REFERENCE	Client reference	3-character alphanumeric, 11-character alphanumeric, 3-character alphanumeric, 13-character alphanumeric, 2-character numerical,		Information on the instructing party can be specified in this field. In the event of the deposit of RS, the customer reference identifies the bank and account number for inclusion in the registered positions.
DEBIT ACCOUNT Deposit	Debit account	7-character numerical		Internal CBF field. The content is preset and can only be changed by CBF.
DEBIT ACCOUNT Withdrawal	Debit account	7-character numerical	required	Client account –Preset with user ID of the person making the entry.
DEBIT BANK	Debit bank	4-character numerical	a	Bank number of the instructing party at CBF (= Debit account)
DEBIT BANK	Debit bank	4-character numerical	required	This field contains the account number of the bank to which certain actions are allocated.
DENOMINATION	Denomination	15-character (2-character for litera, 13-character for denomination) alphanumeric	required	Division of an issue into multiple nominal amounts. A certificate number must be unique within a unit (denomination/increment).
DENOMINATION WISH	Denomination wish for withdrawal	1-character Y = YES N = NO	optional	A notice can be entered here if the withdrawal is to be made in certain denominations. For this, the corresponding (n) number of certificates for the respective denomination(s) must be entered in the subsequent screen. Preset: "N"
DEP NO	Deposit number	7-character numerical	none	Internal serial number for the deposit ledger of CBF (annual perforation number beginning with one). The number is automatically assigned by the system for each deposit item if the deposit is accepted.

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
DEPOSIT REASON	Deposit reason	3-character numerical	required	<p>Indicates the relevant deposit reason for new admission and mark up. The following are currently available:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 001 = from issue • 002 = Cash contribution – mandatory capital increase (KE) • 003 = Optional capital increase -warrant rights exercised- • 004 = Global certificate initial deposit RS • 005 = Exchange of certificates • 007 = Bonus shares • 008 = Block, revaluation possible
DEPOSIT TYPE	CBF deposit type	2-character numerical	required	<p>Possible deposit types:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 = Collective safe custody • 02 = Restricted collective safe custody • 03 = CSC buffer storage bank • 05 = STR with certificate • 20 = Depository • 21 = Internal collective safe custody • 99 = CSC designated (for RS before the CSC effective date) <p>Preset: 01 = Collective safe custody</p>

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
DEPOSIT TYPE	Deposit type	1-character numerical	Required (File Transfer)	Specifies the respective current deposit. The following are currently available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1 = Deposit • 2 = New admission global certificate • 3 = New admission global certificate • 4 = New admission validated global certificate • 5 = Mark up
DEPOSIT BY NAME	Deposit by name	35-character alphanumerical	optional	Contains the name of third parties (banks, branches, etc.) which are not account holders at CBF and are therefore making a deposit at CBF via another client. For example, a Sparkasse bank which is allowed to work with the USER ID of a regional bank. If this is an international clearing partner, the corresponding short designation is automatically added.
DIVERGENT DESIGNATION	Divergent designation	3-character numerical	required	If identical certificate numbers exist for one denomination, e.g. due to a merger, then this specification must be entered for further identification. Entry is made using a code. The field is always preset to 0 (no divergent class designation). CBF can be queried for other indicators.
DIVERGENT MAILING ADDRESS	Divergent mailing address	1-character alphanumerical	required	Subsequent screen appears for mail to third parties. Preset; "N" = no
DOMICILE	Domicile	35-character alphanumerical	none	The domicile of the shareholder according to the share register of the issuer is displayed here
E E/O	Replacement certificate	1-character alphanumerical	optional	Marks a certificate number as a replacement certificate (E)

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
ENTRY VALUE ENTRY VALUE	Entry value	10-character alphanumeric	optional, additional selection	Date on which the order was booked.
EVIDENCE TYPE	Evidence type	2-character numerical	required	<p>Mark as to how the certificates belonging to the deposit order were deposited at CBF. The following indicators are possible:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 01 = Deposit of physical certificates • 02 = Certificates already in existence • 03 = Certificates from printing press • 04 = Deposit without certificates (with outline agreement) (only for registered shares RS) • 05 = Deposit with certificates (only for RS)
EX DATE/BEGINNING	Ex date beginning exercise of option(s)		required for RS	New admission/mark up for registered shares from capital measures
FC	Function code	2-character	required	Selection of a function
GLOBAL CERTIFICATE	Global certificate	1-character alphanumeric	Y/N	Mark to differentiate between individual and global certificates (in the event of a continuous deposit)
ID CHANGE ID DELETION	Identification mark for change and/or deletion	10-character numerical	none	User ID of the user who has marked an order for change and/or deletion.
INCREMENT	Increment	11-character numerical	none/ required	The number of shares is specified in this field which are contained in the composite number (global number) (from no. / to no.). This field must be edited when entering certificate numbers with the same denomination but a different increment. The entry of the increment is only necessary for the entry and change functions. This entry is not shown on the information displays as it follows from the certificate number display.

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
				<p>The following conditions apply to the ISIN depending on the entry for the ISIN (see also securities ID):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • W = 6-character numerical • I = 12-character alphanumerical • B = 3 and/or 4-character alphanumerical.
ISIN	ISIN	1-character alphanumerical	required	<p>Entry options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • W = German ISIN • I = ISIN • B = Stock exchange code • Preset: "I"
ISIN common stock purchase privilege	ISIN of the common stock purchase privilege for the deposit of subscription rights	see ISIN	required	The ISIN is entered in this field which is allocated to the deposited subscription as the original ISIN.
ISIN information	International Security Identification Number	Text field	none	<p>First line:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Interest rate • Short form • Interest date for the class <p>Second line:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Class block with the validity period • Draw, repayment and/or cancellation information for the deposit of RS: CSC effective date for RS
ISIN OF THE common stock purchase privilege	ISIN of the common stock purchase privilege	1-character alphanumerical	required	See securities ID
ISIN OF THE RIGHT	ISIN of the right	see ISIN	Required for RS	Entry for new admission, mark up in registered shares for exact allocation of the capital measures.
ISIN OF THE RIGHT	ISIN of the right	1-character alphanumerical	required	See securities ID

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
KE-TYP (CAPITAL INCREASE TYPE)	Capital increase type			Collective term for the input fields ISIN OF THE RIGHT and EXDATE/BEGINNING for new admissions/increase of the issue volume and also DATE KE (capital increase) in the event of the mark up of capital increase measures in registered shares (RS)
KZ (Code)	Code column	1-character alphanumerical	optional	See the actions in the individual chapters with respect to the different marks available for entry.
L/G	Debit/credit	L/G	none	Debit or credit order display
LACK LACK M	Lack	3-character numerical 1st position vault M/B ^U 2nd position Lack indicator A	optional	Specifies the lack of a security and identifies the stop order reasons. For initial deposits for registered shares, variances in the data shareholder ID/ certificate number in the share register of the issuer are also displayed here. Code tables for the different lacks (codes from 50) and stop order reasons (keys 0 to 49) see annex Lack on page A2-11.
LAST CHANGED	Last changed by	10-character numerical	none	USER-ID of the user who last changed the order.
LAST CHANGED ON	Last changed on	10-character alphanumerical	none	Date of the last change
LAST VOUCHER/ WARRANTS	Last voucher/ warrants	2-character alphanumerical	none	Collective term for the last distribution, dividend or interest coupon and/or talon belonging to a security.
NAME (deposit)	Name	70-character alphanumerical	a	The name and domicile of the shareholder according to the share register of the issuer are displayed here.
NAME (withdrawal)	Name	70-character alphanumerical	a	Name of the recipient (manual entry)
NAME (withdrawal) NAME ADDITIONAL INFORMATION	Name Additional name information	70-character alphanumerical 35-character alphanumerical	optional optional	The name of the third-party beneficiary bank can be entered here for direct mailing of the certificates (contract with CBF required).

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
NEXT COUPON	Next coupon	10 or 3-character numerical	a	Collective term for the next distribution, dividend or interest coupon and/or talon belonging to a security (not bonds only securitised in the certificate).
NEXT VOUCHER	Next voucher	2-character alphanumerical	a	The mark for the next voucher (for warrants)
NOM CERTIFICATE	Certificates nominal/nominal value	10.3-character numerical	required ^b	This field contains the entire nominal amount of the deposit/withdrawal calculated from the number per denomination. Required entry if the certificates of the ISIN have not yet been converted to Euros. See section booking information chapter "EURO".
NOMINAL	Nominals	10.3-character numerical	required ^b	This field contains the total nominal amount of the order to be booked
NOTES	Notes	420-character alphanumerical	none	Internal CBF field. View from CBF address database (KUSTA) for securities withdrawal.
NOTES (Withdrawal)	Notes	5 x 35-character alphanumerical	optional	The instructing party can enter general notes on this withdrawal here.
NUMBER OF CERTIFICATES	Number of certificates	9-character numerical	none	Number of certificates per denomination
OPP (STOP ORDER REASON) 0	Stop order reason	3-character	none	Three-character code for the relevant stop order reason (see Verification (EC) on page 19-1).
ORDER NO. ORDER NUMBER ORDER NUMBER ORDER NUMBER	Order number	1-7 character numerical	required	Each depositor must be uniquely identified by the system. System users may freely assign a 7-digit number between 1 and 6999999. Transfers of securities which are automatically generated in CASCADE are assigned a unique number between 9500000 and 9999999 by the system. Automatically generated orders from reallocations and cancellations are assigned order numbers between 8000000 and 9499999.

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
ORDER NUMBER	Order number	11-character numerical (in part)	a	Activity display: Positions 1-4 Deposit or Positions 5-11 Order number
ORG NUMBER	Organisation number	6-character numerical	Required for new Admission without mark up and with mark up	Serves to uniquely identify global certificates at CBF.
PERSON MAKING THE ENTRY	Person making the entry	4-character numerical	required	The field stipulates who is processing the list request. The field is preset with the first four digits of the ID mark
PO BOX STREET ADDRESS COUNTRY/POST CODE/CITY (Withdrawal)	PO BOX Street address Country code Post code City	Alphanumerical	optional	Information on the third-party beneficiary bank for the recipient of the shares
Position	Position specifying the character of the link	4 character alphabetical code	Required for linkage only	AFT E The instruction is to be executed after the linked instruction. BEF O The instruction is to be executed before the linked instruction. WIT H The instruction is to be executed with the linked instruction. INFO The instruction is linked for information purpose only. (INFO cannot be entered in a modification request as not supported by T2S)

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
POSITION MARK	Position mark	2-character alphanumeric	a	The position type to which deposits are to be booked is specified in this field for the deposit of registered shares (RS). FM Unregistered positions HB Registered positions Preset: "HB" Registered positions'
PRIMANOTE PRIM	Primanote	4-character numerical	none	The CBF client is able to manage multiple orders here under one organisation number which he has personally assigned (batch input). The client is responsible for the correctness of this number as no check is performed by the system.
PROCESSING STATUS	Processing status Deposit	3-character numerical	none	The current processing status for deposit at CBF is displayed here with a mark.
PROCESSING STATUS	Processing status Withdrawal	3-character numerical	none	The current entry status of the bank is displayed here with a mark and the processing status of the withdrawal at CBF following verification by the bank.
REALLOCATION	Reallocation	1-character numerical, text view 10-character alphanumeric	optional	Certificates can be reallocated from one vault type to another by means of reallocation.
SB (Search term)	Search term	55-character alphanumeric	optional	Specification of parameters (e.g. ISIN) to simplify entry
SERIES DESIGNATION	Series designation on the security	2-character alphanumeric	required	Additional information on the certificate number. Presentation of the certificates specific to the issue.
SERIES ISIN	Series security identification number/ISIN	12-character alphanumeric	required for account number entry	Serial ISIN which results from the division of the original ISIN. A screen must be maintained within the deposit for each series and denomination. The order is always issued under the ISIN of the original class.

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
SET STATUS/ S (compact view)	Settlement status	1-character numerical	none	Information mark for the settlement status of an order (see corresponding table in the annex).
SET-DAY	Settlement day	8-character DD.MM.YYYY	required	Desired booking data preset to today's date
SHAREHOLDER ID	Shareholder ID	10-character alphanumeric	required	In this case, the shareholder ID is entered for registered shares which are being assigned physically. If the shareholder ID is missing, the depositor must request the information via the issuer outside of the system.
STREET ADDRESS	Street address	30-character alphanumeric	optional	Address of the recipient (manual entry)
STREET ADDRESS PO BOX COUNTRY/POST CODE/CITY (Withdrawal)	Street address PO BOX Country code Post code City	Alphanumeric	optional	Information on the third-party beneficiary bank for the recipient of the shares
SUM NOM	Sum nominal	10.3-character numerical	none	The nominal value of the individual certificates entered is cumulated. The sum nom must correspond to the nominal to be deposited when checked by the client and/or when the order is approved by CBF. If this is not the case, the sum nom is displayed highlighted in colour.
TEXT	Text	70-character alphanumeric	optional	The client can enter additional information here.
TO ADDRESS NUMBER	Internal number for CBF mailing address	numerical	optional	The certificates are mailed to a third-party bank (agreement with CBF required)
TOT NOM	Total nominal	10.3-character numerical	none	Comes from the sum of the denomination multiplied by the number of certificates per denomination and corresponds to the nominal to be deposited
TRAN	Transaction code	4-character alphanumeric	required	Selection of the desired transaction (for example, KVEW - securities withdrawal)
TRANSACTION TYPE	Transaction type	1-character alphanumeric	a	Possible indicators for the account activity query: L Debit G Credit

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
UEBERFAELIGER LEG.SCHEIN (OVERDUE VOUCHER) FROM ... TO ...	overdue voucher from ... to ...	10 or 3-character numerical	optional	The coupons not yet redeemed (number or date) are entered here (CBF only).
UEBERFAELLIGER KUPON VON ... (OVERDUE COUPON FROM ...) TO	overdue coupon from ... to ...	10 or 3-character numerical	optional	The coupons not yet redeemed (number or date) are entered here (CBF only).
UNIT UNIT	Unit	2-character	none	Account currency (for example "ST", "DEM", "EUR" alphanumeric.)
UP-TO NOM	Up-To nominal	12-character numerical	optional/ required	The nominal amount of a global certificate. Required entry in the event of new admission of a global certificate. See Euro Conversion on page 26-1.
USER ID	User identifier	10-character numerical	none	Contains the user ID of the user.
USER ID - PERSON MAKING THE ENTRY	User identifier of the person making the entry	10-character numerical	none	User identification is saved together with the date and time for the order during all processing steps
USER ID VERIFIER	User identifier of the verifier	10-character numerical	none	User identification is saved together with the date and time for the order during all processing steps
VALUTA LTE.BEW. (VALUE DATE LAST ACTIVITY MOVEMENT)	Value date last movement	DD.MM.YYYY	none	The last movement on this account is shown in this field in the account balance view.
WITHDRAWAL ACTION	Withdrawal action	1-character numerical	required	Possible entries: 1 Withdrawal 2 Revaluation 3 Partial reduction 5 Mark down 6 Reduction of Rahmennominale Preset: 1 Withdrawal
WITHDRAWAL LEDGER NUMBER	Withdrawal ledger number	6-character numerical	none	Internal CBF serial number. Is assigned technically the first time a withdrawal order is transferred for processing/entry.

Screen field	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
WITHDRAWAL METHOD	Withdrawal method	1-character numerical text view 15-character alphanumeric	required	<p>Clients can arrange the following withdrawal methods with CBF:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1 via bank messenger 2 via container 3 via consignment of valuables 4 DHL 5 Brinks Werttransport (Brinks transport of valuables) 6 Withdrawal with KADI 7 Destruction
WITHDRAWAL RU (global certificate)	Withdrawal of a global certificate	1-character alpha Y or N	required	<p>Withdrawal of a global certificate</p> <p>Possible entries:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "Y" = Yes • "N" = No <p>Preset: "N"</p>

35. a. Required or optional field depending on the respective action.

16.4 Specific Field Descriptions and Formal Checks

16.4.1 The Certificate Numbers

The certificate numbers on the certificates which are to be physically moved via CBF are a component of the respective underlying orders. The entry of the certificate numbers is widely based on the ISO standard in terms of format and content. During entry of each individual certificate number a check against all certificate numbers present in the CBF applications (CARAD or orders in order status) is made. This therefore prevents duplicate entry and/or deposit of numbers at CBF.

Furthermore, CASCADE-PC immediately makes a check against existing stop order information from the current data of WM for the securities.

For deposits of physical registered shares (with restricted transferability), the certificate numbers are also checked against the certificate numbers of the shareholder (assignment) from the share register of the issuer. If the certificate numbers cannot be assigned to the shareholder ID entered, then the entry is rejected.

16.4.1.1 Entry of the certificate numbers -terms and character set

Individual certificate numbers (individual certificate)

An individual (certificate) number with the digits 0 to 9 corresponding to the data on the certificate expressly identifies an individual security. Individual certificate numbers and/or individual certificate numbers that follow one another without any gaps are separated with a comma or a blank.

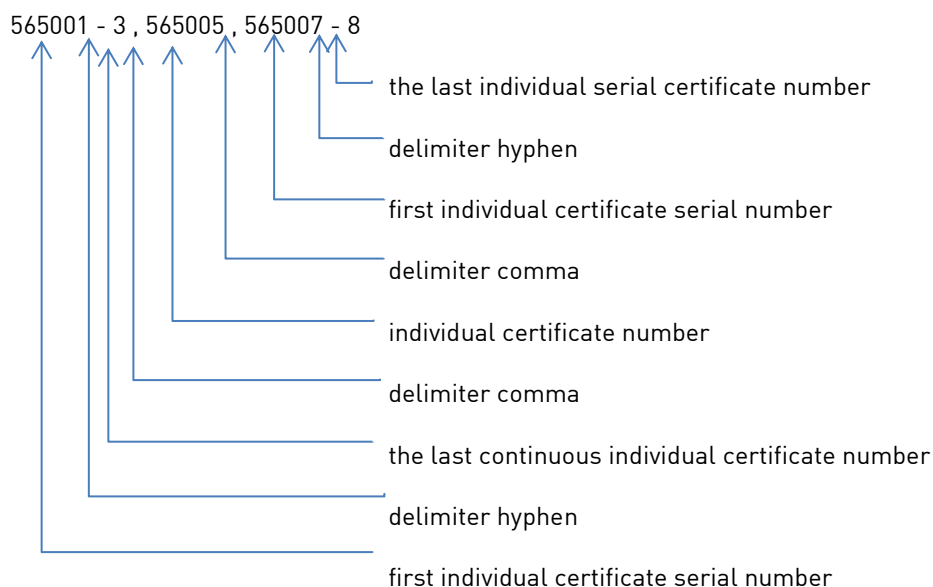
Example:

Entry of *individual certificate numbers* and *individual certificate serial numbers* for each denomination in CASCADE:

ISIN DE0007614401

Denomination 100

Certificate numbers on the certificates to be deposited: 565001 565002 565003 565005 565007 565008



Note: The increment for the entry of individual certificate numbers always amounts to 1 as the certificate contains a number. When entering certificate numbers with an increment greater than 1 (composite numbers), the continuous text may go over two lines; for this, the character '-' must be entered at the end of the line.

Composite (global) numbers

Composite numbers characterise seamlessly assigned securities numbers that identify a security without its own number. The smallest number (from no.) and the largest number (to no.) are connected with a hyphen.

Example:

Entry of *composite numbers* for each denomination in CASCADE:

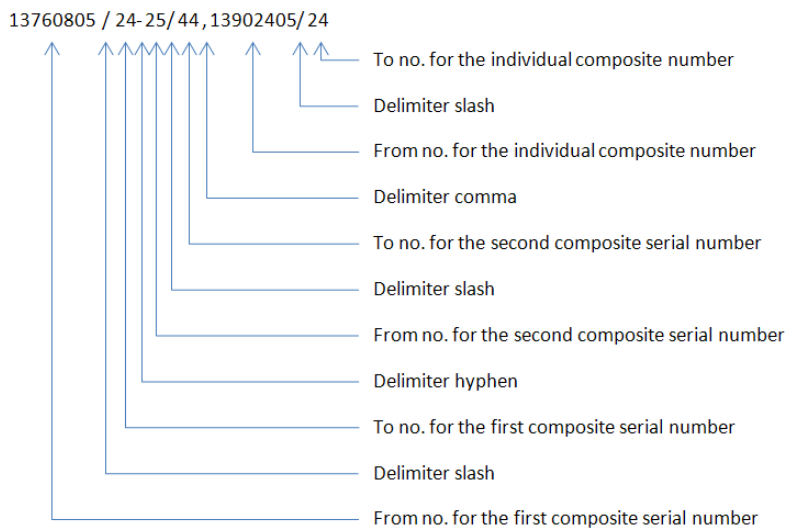
ISIN DE0007614401

Denomination 200

Increment 20

Certificate numbers on the certificates to be deposited:

13760805/24 13760825/44 13902405/24



Note: The number of composite numbers on the certificate is specified in the Increment field. The increment amounts to 20 in the above example as the three certificates each comprise 20 shares.

16.4.1.2 Input of numbers, letters and characters for certificate number entry

The following numbers, letters and characters are available for certificate number entry:

Certificate number input component on the screen	Meaning correct	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
0-9	Certificate number	12-character (max.) 17-character with litera numerical	required	Numbers corresponding to the digits on the certificate
1-10 A-K two digit Roman numerals	Litera/DENOMINATION	2-character alphanumerical	Required or optional – depends on the action	Litera for the denomination (entry only; if different litera exist for the certificate numbers within a denomination).
,	Comma	1-character alphanumerical	Required or optional – depends on the action	Comma and/or blank are used as delimiters behind each number and/or number series
-	Hyphen	1-character alphanumerical	Required or optional – depends on the action	A hyphen connects the first with the last certificate number for number ranges; at least two physical securities
/	Slash	1-character alphanumerical	Required or optional – depends on the action	Slash connection from and to (global numbers); a single physical security and/or number securitised in a global certificate.

16.4.1.3 Display of the certificate numbers in the application

The CASCADE application automatically sets the characters listed below in the display of the certificate numbers.

Certificate number input component on the screen	Meaning correct	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
*	Asterisk	1-character alphanumerical	none	In combination with "*" serves to indicate exactly 100 certificate numbers on the line.
<	Small character	1-character alphanumerical	none	Serves to indicate 99 or fewer certificate numbers on one line.

16.4.1.4 Processing the certificate numbers entered

Certificate numbers and/or number series entered or supplemented can also be processed in the input lines in CASCADE entry and/or change/deletion. The last certificate number entered is shown on a separate line. Various marks are available for editing the certificate numbers in CASCADE entry and in the change service, which are used in combination or based on one another. A certificate number entered and saved on the 1st line could therefore be marked for deletion on the second line.

Mark for editing certificate numbers	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
A and N	Changing previously saved certificate numbers	1-character alphanumerical	A	The marks A and N can only be used in combination. The certificate number to be changed is entered on the 1st line with A. The new certificate number is entered on the next line with N. As a result, a previously saved certificate number is changed and the new certificate number maintains the position of the old certificate number in the order. The number of new certificate numbers may be equal to or less than the number of old certificate numbers. If the certificate numbers for global certificates change, the denomination must be kept on one line. Only for individual certificates: Entries for lack marks and/or marking as replacement certificates for the "old" certificate numbers are not applied. This information can only be entered with new certificate numbers.
E	Changing certificate numbers/number series	1-character alphanumerical	E	Entering the mark "E" (replacement certificate), completely overwrites other marks. The editing keys PF3 and PF6 save the new entry.
M	Changes of the lack	1-character alphanumerical	M	Changes to one of the previously entered lacks for exactly one

Mark for editing certificate numbers	Meaning	Formal correct	Input	Explanation
	reasons for certificate numbers/number series			certificate number/number series. In entering new lacks, all previously entered lacks (except for stop order lacks) are completely overwritten. The editing keys PF3 and PF6 save the new entry. Pressing enter ignores the new entry and displays the "old" lacks.
L	Deletion of a certificate number/number series	1-character alphanumerical	L	Deletion of certificate numbers/number series in the order whereby all certificate numbers to be deleted must be present in the order. Deletion is denied, however, if no single certificate number has been saved in the order. The entry of lacks for the certificate numbers and/or marking as replacement certificates is not possible.

Note: When editing previously entered certificate numbers and/or lack reasons the certificate numbers must be entered exactly as they were saved in the order.

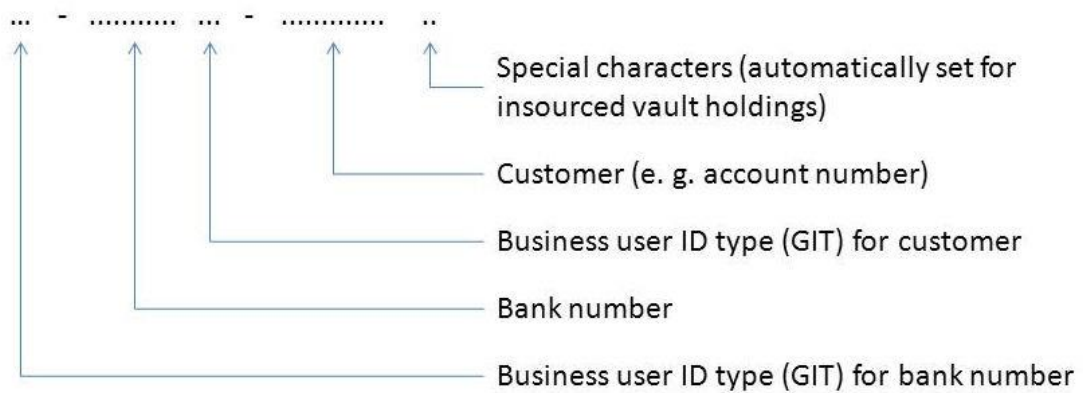
16.4.2 The Customer Reference

The customer reference allows the person entering the order to specify order information on the instructing party and/or final beneficiary depending on the order type selected. As long as no other client of CBF is involved in the order, the customer reference always contains the business user data of the person entering the order. In the event of registered shares (RS - with restricted transferability) and insourced vault management (FTB), the customer reference also serves as a characteristic for extended securities holdings management in these classes.

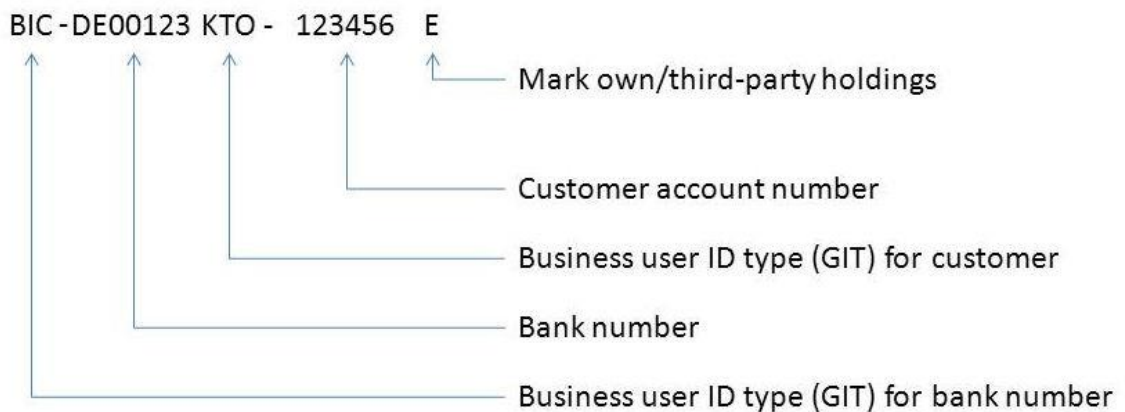
The format and content of the customer reference have been standardised accordingly and are described in the following sections to the extent that they are generally applicable. Order-specific aspects are documented in the corresponding chapters.

16.4.2.1 Format of the customer reference

Format and content of the field customer reference are structured as follows:



Example:



Specific field descriptions and formal checks

Customer reference component	Meaning correct	Formal	Input	Explanation
Business user identification type (GIT)	Business user identification type (GIT)	3-character alphanumerical	a	<p>This field can be edited with a three-character code which supplements the entry of the certificate reference of the third-party bank and/or the client with respect to further system processing. Entry of the following content is recommended (depending on the order type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • BIC for bank identification code • BLZ for bank routing number • AC for account <p>If the customer reference GIT third-party bank is edited with one of the codes listed, an entry must be made for the third-party bank customer reference.</p>
Third-party bank	Third-party bank	max. 11-character alphanumerical	a	<p>Account/branch/bank number of a bank for which a client of CBF enters the CASCADE order. The formal entry of the third-party bank is oriented towards the third-party bank GIT selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Third-party bank GIT • BIC continuous: 8 or 11-character • Bank routing number 8-character • AC → 0 <p>The third-party bank customer reference can also be entered without specifying a third-party bank.</p>
Customer	Client	max. 13-character alphanumerical	a	<p>Account/branch number of the client office and/or account number of the client, which is behind the CBF and/or third-party bank client (instructing party, principal beneficiary).</p>

Customer reference component	Meaning correct	Formal	Input	Explanation
				<p>The formal entry of the client is oriented towards the client GIT selected:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Third-party bank GIT • BIC continuous: 8 or 11-character • Bank routing number 8-character • AC → 0 <p>The customer reference can also be entered without specifying a GIT for the client.</p>
Special characters	Special characters	2-character numerical		<p>The mark own/third-party positions is automatically set depending on the account allocation in the event of insourced vault custody:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • E – Own holdings • F – Third-party holdings <p>KZ (mark) is a constituent of the SIM (jacket characteristic).</p>

a. Required or optional field depending on the respective action.

16.5 Tables (index of codes)

ORDER TYPE

Field name: ORDER TYPE/ORIGINAL ORDER TYPE

Description

Order type is a fixed form of instruction to the central securities depository, for example, a withdrawal.

Field content	Text	Meaning
01	WP-UEBERTRAG (SECURITESTRANSFER)	Securities transfer against and free of payment
02	MATCH-INSTR	Match instruction
03	SV-UEBERTRAG (SV TRANSFER)	BSV/LSV transfer
04	VERPFAENDUNG (PLEDGE)	Pledge
05	APPROVAL	Approval of pledges/collateral
07	UMTAUSCH (EXCHANGE)	GBC exchange
09	RUECKTAUSCH (RE-EXCHANGE)	GBC re-exchange
10	LIEFERBESTAND (DELIVERY BALANCE)	Delivery balance (stock exchange transactions)
11	WP-LEIHE (Securities assignment)	Securities assignment order
12	WPL-RUECKFUEH (Securities assignment repayment)	Securities assignment repayment
13	KADI-SONDPRO (Corporate actions special commission)	Proceeds from corporate actions special commission
14	STRIP-AUFTEILUNG (STRIP SPLIT)	Splitting of a bond with warrant (cum) into a certificate and individual interest coupons
15	STRIP-ZUSAMMENFUHERUNG (Strip merger)	Merger of a certificate and individual interest coupons into a bond with warrant (cum)
16	EINLIEFERUNG (Deposit)	Deposit
17	OPTIONSSCHEIN- TRENNUNG (Warrant split)	Splitting of bands with warrants (cum) into a bond without warrant (ex) ex bond and a simple warrant
18	AUSLIEFERUNG (Withdrawal)	Withdrawal
19	OPTIONSSCHEIN-ZUSAMMENFUEHRUNG (Warrant merger)	Merger of bond without warrant (ex) and warrant into a bond with warrant (cum)
99	STORNO-NACHB (Subsequent cancellation order)	Cancellation/follow-up entry securities account (only CBF allowed)

BESONDERHEIT (Special characteristic)

Field name: Special characteristic

Description

This code indicates a divergent certificate configuration for the ISIN.

Field content	Meaning
1	NORMALER BLOCK (Normal block package)
2	BOGENLOS (No coupon sheet)
3	NUR MANTEL, KEIN BOGENAUSDRUCK (Certificate only, no coupon sheet printout)
4	EINZELURKUNDE, MANTEL/GLOBALBOGEN (Individual certificate, certificate/global coupon sheet)
5	MANTEL, BOGEN, ZESSION (Certificate, coupon sheet, assignment)
6	MANTEL, TALON, ZESSION (Certificate, talon, assignment)
7	BLOCK MANUELL ERFASST (Bloc package entered manually)
8	BLOCK AUS HANDBESTAND (Bloc package from working stock)
14	M + B GETRENNT (M + B separated)
15	NUR MANTEL (Certificate only)
16	UNIKAT (Single sheet)
17	UNITS
18	CF- UND K-STUKKEN (CF AND K CERTIFICATES)
19	CF-STUKKEN (CF certificates)
20	TECHN.GLOBALURK. M.BOG. (MAN.ERST.) (Technical global certificate with coupon sheet (manual initial entry))
21	TECHN.GLOBALURK. O.BOG. (MAN.ERST.) (Technical global certificate without coupon sheet (manual initial entry))
22	TECHN.GLOBALURK. M.BOG. (MAN.ERST.) (Technical global certificate with coupon sheet (available))
23	TECHN.GLOBALURK. O.BOG. (LIEFERBAR) (Technical global certificate without coupon sheet (available))
24	MIT BOGEN (With coupon sheet)
25	OHNE BOGEN (Without coupon sheet)
26	JGS OHNE BOGEN (Scrip without coupon sheet)
27	FESTSCHREIBUNG (Locking up)
28	NUR BOGEN (Coupon sheet only)
29	MANTEL,ZESSION (Certificate, assignment)
30	BOGEN, ZESSION (Coupon sheet, assignment)
31	MANTEL,BOGEN,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(en) (Certificate, sheet coupon, assignment, assignment(s))
32	MANTEL,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(EN) (Certificate, assignment, assignment(s))
33	BOGEN,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(EN) (Coupon sheet, assignment, assignment(s))
34	MANTEL,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(EN) (Certificate, assignment, assignment(s))
35	ZESSION (Assignment)
36	ABTRETUNG(EN) (Assignment(s))
37	MIT GEWINNANTEILSSCHEIN (With coupon)
38	MÖGLICHER BEZUG VON URKUNDEN (Possible subscription to certificates)
50	NICHT VALUTIERT (Not validated)
97	UMDEUTUNG GU/RU (Reinterpretation global certificates)
98	REINTERPRETATION DUE TO 670

EINLIEFERUNGS-ART (Deposit type)

Field name: EINLIEF-ART (Deposit type)

Description

Information on the order type

Field content	Text	Meaning
1	LFD. EINLIEFERUNG (Current deposit)	Current deposit
2	NEUZULASSUNG GLOBAL (New admission global)	Neuzulassung Globalurkunde (New admission global certificate)
3	NEUZULASSUNG RU (New admission global certificate)	New admission of up-to nominal
4	NEUZULASSUNG VAL. (New admission validated) RU (up-to nominal)	New admission validated up-to nominal
5	VALUTIERUNG (Settlement)	Settlement

EINLIEFERUNGS-GRUND (Deposit reason)

Field name: DEPOSIT REASON

Description

Reason for deposit

Field content	Description
001	From debt
002	Increase in share capital in exchange for cash contributions
003	Increase in share capital conditional – exercising of warrant rights
004	Up-to nominal initial deposit RS
005	Exchange of certificates
007	Bonus shares
008	Blocking, revalidation possible

NACHWEISART (Evidence type)

Field name: Evidence type

Code indicating the form, in which the certificates were deposited at CBF.

Field content	Text	Meaning
01	EINLIEFERUNG EFFEKTIVER (Deposit of physical certificates) URKUNDEN	Deposit of physical certificates
02	URKUNDEN LIEGEN BEREITS (Certificates are already in place)	Certificates are already in place
03	URK. VON DRUCK./EM. (Certificate from printing press or issuer)	Certificate from printing press or issuer
04	EINLIEFERUNG MIT RAHMENVERTRAG (Deposit including outline agreement)	Deposit without certificates
05	EINLIEFERUNG EFFEKTIVER (Deposit of physical certificates planned and assignment)	Deposit of physical certificates planned and assignment
06	UM-/FESTSCHREIBUNG (Re-registration/locking up)	Assignment is not yet present as re-registration/locking up not yet in place
07	ZESSION FEHLT (assignment missing)	Assignment is not present
08	EINLIEF EDT (Deposit according to EDT method)	Deposit according to EDT method
09	EDELMETALL (precious metal)	Deposit of precious metal
10	EINLIEF. LEAN (Deposit according to EDT LEAN method)	Deposit according to EDT LEAN method

SETTLEMENT-ART (Settlement type)

Field name: SET-ART/SET

Description

This code indicates the different types of order settlement.

Field content	Text	Meaning
2	SDS/MAS	SDS batch processing
3	STD/MAS	STD batch processing
4	SDS/SOF	SDS continuous settlement (immediate processing)
5	RTS/SOF	RTS continuous settlement

16.6 Transactions/functions

TRAN	Code	Function
INFORMATION-URKUNDENBESTAND (INFORMATION CERTIFICATE POSITIONS)		
KCKI	IH	Information certificate positions
KCKI	IS	Certificate number search
AUFTRAGS-HISTORIE (ORDER HISTORY)		
KPHI	HE	Deposit history
KPHI	HA	Withdrawal history
REPORTING		
KCSL	AG	List request for all positions
KCSL	AH	List request for working stock
KCSL	AK	List request for client account

16.7 Certificate positions field description

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
BESONDERHEIT-STK or BES-STK	Certificate-specific characteristic <ul style="list-style-type: none"> for individual certificates for global certificates 	3-digit numerical	- optional
Value range	The characteristic attributed to the deposit of individual or global certificates, which differs from securitisation of the entire security. A 35-character explanatory text is also displayed on the screen "Stückenummernsuche" (Certificate number search). See Table of certificate-specific characteristics ((CKC9T03) on page A -9		
EINLIEF-GRUND (DEPOSIT REASON)	Deposit reason	1-character numerical	EINLIEF-GRUND (DEPOSIT REASON)
	Deposit reason from the deposit order		
ERSATZSTUECK (REPLACEMENT CERTIFICATE) or E	Replacement certificate	1-character alphanumerical	-
Value range	This field provides information as to whether the certificate is a replacement or reprint certificate. Corresponding certification is enclosed with reprint certificates. If no mark is present, then the original certificate is concerned. "E" = Replacement certificate "Blank" = Not a replacement certificate - original certificate		
FC	Function code	2-character alphanumerical	required
	The function code for the desired activity must be entered here. The user can make a selection in the displayed menu or enter a known function code (expert access), see Transactions/functions on page A -1.		
GES-RAHMEN-NOM (TOTAL UP-TO NOMINAL)	Total up-to nominals	12-digit numerical	-
	The sum of the up-to nominals of all existing global certificates (up-to) of a security for the CARAD custody type in the existing CARAD positions is determined and displayed.		
GES-NOM-OFFENE (TOTAL PENDING NOMINAL)	Total pending nominal	12-digit numerical	-
	The difference between the up-to nominal and validated nominal (collective nominal) is shown on the tabular overview KCKI/IH and the detailed display. For the readout on the tabular overview, the difference is calculated from the sum of the Up-To nominal less the sum of the nominal for all global certificates less the sum of the dispositive nominal less the assigned nominals. On the screen of the individual certificates, the difference is nominals calculated from the up-to nominals minus nominals of the certificates minus dispositive.		

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
HINTERLEG.ART (deposit type) or HINTERLEGUNGS-ART	Deposit type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Vault type Custody type CARAD Text 	1-character alphanumeric 2-digit numerical 35-character alphanumeric	Required Required -
Value range	<p>The first 1-character field contains the vault type. This defines whether it concerns a Mantel (corpus) vault, Bogen (coupon sheet) vault or Unikatetresor (single sheet vault).</p> <p>The CARAD custody type is in the second field. This provides information on how the certificates are deposited with CBF. An explanatory text is displayed for the CARAD custody type. For reasons of space, there is only a 16-character display of this on some screens. See Table for deposit type/custody type (CKC9T05) on page A -10</p>		
ID-KZ (ID)	Identification indicator When logging on in the dialogue, this field must be entered with the personal identification indicator.	10-digit numerical	required
MERKMAL (CHARACTERISTIC) MERKMAL SAMMELURKUNDE (CHARACTERISITC GLOBAL CERTIFICATE)	Characteristic mark Corpus/single sheet Coupon sheet	1-character alphanumeric 1-character alphanumeric	- -
	<p>The KZ-MERKMAL (CHARACTERISTIC MARK) specifies whether certificates with characteristics exists for a processing unit or whether a global certificate has characteristics. The content of the 1st field concerns the corpus/single sheet vault (M/U).</p> <p>The content of the second field refers to the coupon-sheet vault (B). Characteristics, which apply to both vaults (replacement certificate, certificate-specific characteristic, divergent security designation and stop order) are displayed in both fields. The readout occurs based on a defined priority (see value range, "O" has the highest priority). This also means that certificate-specific characteristics may be contained which have a higher priority. If certificate numbers are only maintained in one of the vaults (M/U or B), then the field for the other vault is displayed as "blank".</p> <p>With the information: Both of these fields provide information on the characteristics of the certificates (individual or collective certificates).</p>		
individual certificates	leer (blank) - 0 Lack certificate(s) (may also be E or N, B, G and K) E Replacement certificate(s) (may also be B, G and K)	No certificates present No characteristics Blocked certificate(s) (may also be M, E or N, B, G and K) Lack certificate(s) (may also be E or N, B, G and K) Replacement certificate(s) (may also be B, G and K)	

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
	B	Certificate-specific characteristic(s) (may also be G, K and N)	
	G	Divergent security designation (may also be K and N)	
	K	Coupon with divergent certificate number (may also be N). This indicator is only relevant for the coupon sheet vault.	
	N	Reprint certificate	
	Examples:		
	M/U B		
	O O	Stop order in place. Applies for corpus/single sheets and coupon sheet.	
	M -	Lack certificate(s) present in the corpus/single sheet vault (may also be E, B, G and K). No characteristics in the coupon sheet vault	
	E M	Replacement certificate(s) present in the corpus/single sheet vault (may also be B, G and K). Lack certificate(s) present in the coupon sheet vault. (may also be E, B, G and K).	
VALUE RANGE FOR GLOBAL CERTIFICATES	leer blank	No certificates present	
	-	No characteristics	
	O	Blocked certificate(s) (may also be B and G)	
	B	Certificate-specific characteristic(s) (may also be G)	
	G	Divergent security designation	
	Examples:		
	M/U B		
	B	Certificate-specific Characteristic present	
	O	stop order. (may also be B and G)	
	LIT	literal for the denomination	2-character alphanumerical
	The literal for the denomination is entered and/or displayed in this field. (also see field characteristics)		
MANGEL (LACK) or Mangel	Lack	3-digit numerical	-
VALUE RANGE	<p>If a lack is entered or a stop order exists for a certificate number, the corresponding key is displayed here. An additional 35-character explanatory text is displayed during the certificate number search. See annex: Table for lack reason (stop order and lack) (CKC9T08).</p> <p>For all other global certificates: The nominal value of the global certificate is displayed in this field.</p>		

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
NOMINALE-DISPOSITIV (NOMINAL ANTICIPATED)	Dispositive nominal	12-digit numerical	
	Contains the order nominal for valuation as long as the order has not yet been transferred to CARAD.		
NOMINALE-OFFEN (PENDING NOMINAL)	pending nominal yet to be valuated	12-digit numerical	
	The difference between the up-to nominal and validated nominal (collective nominal) is shown on the tabular overview KCKI/IH and the detailed display. For the readout on the tabular overview, the difference is calculated from the sum of the Up-To nominal less the sum of the nominal for all global certificates less the sum of the dispositive nominal less the assigned nominals. On the screen of the individual certificates, the difference is calculated from the up-to nominals minus nominals of the certificates minus dispositive nominal.		
NOM-SAMMEL (NOMINAL GLOBAL CERTIFICATE)	Global certificate nominal	12-digit numerical	
	The GLOBAL CERTIFICATE NOMINAL indicates the nominals securitised by a global certificate. This is displayed without decimal places if the content is "zero". For global certificates the valuated part of the Up-To nominal is entered in this field. For all other global certificates: The nominal value recorded on the global certificate is entered in this field.		
OPPO GRUND (STOP ORDER REASON)	Stop-order reason	3-digit numerical	-
VALUE RANGE	If the certificate entered has a stop order, the corresponding key is displayed in this field. See Table for lack reason (stop order and lack) [CKC9T08] on page A -11.		
ORD-NR (ORG NUMBER) (see ORD-/SAMMEL-NR)	Organisation number	6-digit numerical	optional
ORD-/SAMMEL-NR (ORG/COLLECTIVE NUMBER)	Organisation number	6-digit numerical	optional
	Global certificate number	6-digit numerical	-
	Organisation number: The internal number of the issuer that is contained in the collective certificate (technical collective certificate, scrip, interim global certificate or permanent global certificate) is to be entered in this field. Collective number: All collective certificates are provided by the system with a consecutive number, which is unique within a WKN. Collective numbers that become free as a result of the removal are initially not reassigned.		
PW	Password	8-digit numerical	required
	The personal password must be entered in this field.		
RAHMEN-NOMINALE (UP-TO NOMINAL)	Up-To nominal	12-digit numerical	-
	The Up-To nominal is the nominal of a global certificate (up-to) that represents the limit for the mark up of a global certificate (up-to). There may be multiple global certificates (up-to) within a security. The total for the Up-To nominals in a security for one location mark and CARAD custody type is displayed in the field GES-RAHMEN-NOM.		

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
SAMMEL-NR (COLLECTIVE NUMBER)	Collective certificate number (see ORD-/SAMMEL-NR)	6-digit numerical	-
SAMMELURKUNDE (J/N) (GLOBAL CERTIFICATE)	Global certificate (yes/no)	1-character alphanumeric	required
VALUE RANGE	The entry in this field is not taken into account for further processing for securities, which are only deposited at CBF as individual or only as global certificates. For securities, where individual and global certificates are possible, the entry in this field is decisive (global certificate group "Technical global certificates" and for a transitional period, also "scrips" and "IGL"). For entry: This field indicates whether the certificate is a global certificate. On the selection screens: The entry in this field determines whether only the global certificates are considered in the analysis ("Y") or whether the global certificates are excluded ("N"), meaning that only individual certificates are considered.		
PRESET	No preset		
SB	Search term	56-character alphanumeric	
	The entries from the selection screen are displayed in this field, whereupon "#" is a delimiter for the individual fields. The content can be overwritten. The entries (for the selection) may be directly entered in this field (expert access).		
SEITE (PAGE)	Page	3-digit numerical	-
ST	Global certificate status	1-character alphanumeric	
	The status provides information on the current status of the global certificate		
	T K Z	Partially entered Verified Assigned	
STATUS	Status indicator		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Code ● Text 	3-digit numerical 15-character alphanumeric	optional -
VALUE RANGE	The status provides information on the current status of the certificate number in the positions. It is updated by the computer. Currently all certificate numbers are entered as KONTROLLIERT (VERIFIED). Global certificates are marked as TEILERFASST (PARTIALLY ENTERED) until all certificate numbers have been entered. The certificates themselves are entered with the status KONTROLLIERT (VERIFIED). If the nominal of the entered securities corresponds to the entered nominal, the status of the global certificate is set to KONTROLLIERT (VERIFIED). Global certificates, for which certificate numbers are not mandatory, are first saved under the status KONTROLLIERT (VERIFIED). If certificate numbers are entered subsequently, the procedure is the same as above. The status can be entered in the selection screens in order to select the certificate numbers for a certain status. An explanatory text is displayed for the key in the information.		

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
	200	TEILERFASST (PARTIALLY ENTERED) Not all certificate numbers for the global certificate have been entered. (Only possible for global certificates)	
	500	KONTROLLIERT (VERIFIED)	
	562	KONTR. W/MAN ZUWEISUNG GESP (VERIFIED WITH MAN ASSIGNMENT BLOCKED)	
	563	KONTR W/MASCH ZUWEISUNG GESP. (VERIFIED W/AUTOMATIC ASSIGNMENT BLOCKED) Verified, blocked certificate number due to automatic assignment	
	Only possible as entry in the selection screen:		
	leer (blank)	ALL All certificate numbers	
STUECKEART (SECURITIES TYPE)	Securities type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Code • Text 	3-digit numerical 20-character alphanumerical	- -
VALUE RANGE	The type of certificate printout is indicated by this key. The key and text are determined from WSS (TAB-G20) and displayed. See WSS Table: Sonderheiten-Stückart (characteristics certificate type) (TAB G20) on page A -23.		
STUECKELUNG (DENOMINATION)	Denomination <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Literal • Denomination 	2-character alphanumerical 12-digit numerical	optional required for entry
	The first two offset positions are for entering the literal (also see Feldbesonderheiten Stücknummern). The denomination must be entered in the second field (share of nominal amount of the issue). The nominal is entered in this field for certificates without certificate numbers.		
STUECKE- NUMMERN (CERTIFICATE NUMBERS) (VERBRIEFTE URKUNDEN) (SECURITISED CERTIFICATES)	Certificate numbers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Individual certificates • Global certificates 	79-character alphanum. or 58-character alphanum. 52-character alphanum.	Required required
STUECKENUMMER (CERTIFICATE NUMBER)	Certificate number	30-character alphanum.	

Screen field	Meaning/explanation	Format	Input
	<p>For the information:</p> <p>Display of the certificate numbers in the continuous text including delimiters (n times 72 positions); in the certificate characteristic screen (n times 58 positions) and for global certificates (n times 52 positions).</p> <p>In the selection screen:</p> <p>Information online: (30-character) The certificate number in the search is entered in this field (also global numbers, for example 1/20).</p>		
VERWAHRMOEGL/ ART oder VERWAHR- MOEGL: (CUSTODY OPTION/ TYPE or CUSTODY OPTION)	<p>Custody option/custody type</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Key • Text 	<p>3-digit numerical</p> <p>20-character alphanum.</p>	<p>-</p> <p>-</p>
	<p>This field describes the certificate type deposited at CBF for the respective ISIN. There is a 3-character keyword and a 20-character explanatory text. Both values are obtained from WSS (table G16). The field is related to the field SECURITIES TYPE. In some screens, the explanatory text is shortened to 16 characters. See WSS Custody Option [TAB G16] on page A -20</p>		
	<p>Securities identification number</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WP-Kennung (securities identification) • WKN • WKN-Bezeichnung (securities description) 	<p>1-character alphanum.</p> <p>12-character alphanum.</p> <p>35-character alphanum.</p>	<p>Required</p> <p>Required</p> <p>-</p>
	<p>The WKN is specified in the first 1-character field. This is always an "I" (ISIN) with CARAD. The mark for the securities security is entered in the 2nd field. The field in the screens comprises 12 characters in order to allow entry of the ISIN. The WKN-Bezeichnung (Securities description) is automatically obtained from WSS and displayed. This may not be displayed in some screens for space reasons.</p>		

16.8 Code table specifications

16.8.1 CARAD code tables

16.8.1.1 Table of certificate-specific characteristics (CKC9T03)

Code	Explanation
1	NORMALER BLOCK (Normal block package)
2	BOGENLOS (No coupon sheet)
3	NUR MANTEL, KEIN BOGENAUSDRUCK (Corpus only, no coupon sheet printout)
4	EINZELURKUNDE, MANTEL/GLOBALBOGEN (Individual certificate, corpus/global coupon sheet)
5	MANTEL, BOGEN, ZESSION (Corpus, coupon sheet, assignment)
6	MANTEL, TALON, ZESSION (Corpus, talon, assignment)
7	BLOCK MANUELL ERFASST (Block package entered manually)
8	BLOCK AUS HANDBESTAND (Block package from working stock)
14	M + B GETRENNT (Corpus + coupon sheet separated)
15	NUR MANTEL (Corpus only)
16	UNIKAT (Single sheet)
17	UNITS
18	CF- UND K-STUKKEN (CF AND K CERTIFICATES)
19	CF-STUKKEN (CF certificates)
20	TECHN.GLOBALURK. M.BOG. (MAN.ERST.) (Technical global certificate with coupon sheet (manual initial entry))
21	TECHN.GLOBALURK. O.BOG. (MAN.ERST.) (Technical global certificate without coupon sheet (manual initial entry))
22	TECHN.GLOBALURK. M.BOG. (MAN.ERST.) (Technical global certificate with coupon sheet (manual initial entry))
23	TECHN.GLOBALURK. O.BOG. (LIEFERBAR) (Technical global certificate without coupon sheet (available))
24	MIT BOGEN (With coupon sheet)
25	OHNE BOGEN (Without coupon sheet)
26	JGS OHNE BOGEN (Scrip without coupon sheet)
27	FESTSCHREIBUNG (Locking up)
28	NUR BOGEN (Coupon sheet only)
29	MANTEL,ZESSION (Corpus, assignment)
30	BOGEN, ZESSION (Coupon sheet, assignment)
31	MANTEL,BOGEN,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(en) (Corpus, sheet coupon, assignment, assignment(s))

Code	Explanation
32	MANTEL,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(EN) (Corpus, assignment, assignment(s))
33	BOGEN,ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(EN) (Coupon sheet, assignment, assignment(s))
34	ZESSION,ABTRETUNG(EN) (Assignment, assignment(s))
35	ZESSION (Assignment)
36	ABTRETUNG(EN) (Assignment(s))
37	MIT GEWINNANTEILSSCHEIN (With coupon)
38	MÖGLICHER BEZUG VON URKUNDEN (Possible subscription to certificates)
50	NICHT VALUTIERT (Not validated)
97	UMDEUTUNG GU/RU (Reinterpretation of GC)
98	REINTERPRETATION DUE TO 670

16.8.1.2 Table for deposit type/custody type (CKC9T05)

*WORKING STOCK: VERWAHRART-CARAD (CARAD custody type)

Cod	Explanation
1	GS (Collective safe custody)
3	GS VORRATSL. BANK (Collective safe custody specialised deposit bank)
10	HAUSSAMMELVERWAHRUNG (In-house collective custody)
20	LAGERSTELLE (Depository)
22	TREUHAND CBF (Trustee CBF)
30	FREMDTRESOR (Third party vault)
40	EDELMETALL (Precious metal)
92	DOKUMENTENVERWAHRUNG (Document safe custody)

16.8.1.3 Table for lack reason (stop order and lack) (CKC9T08)

WSS code	WM code	Lack reason
0		Not specified
1	A	Public notice
2	B	Public notice, payment block
3	C	Cancellation public notice
4	D	Theft/burglary
5	F	From a foreign stopping list
6		From the international list of blocked securities
7	K	Cancellation Aktiengesellschaft (joint stock corporation)
8	L	Cancellation of notice of loss
9	M	Cancellation of a public notice
10	N	Cancellation of a payment block
11	O	Cancellation of a notice and a payment block
12	T	Complete forgery possible
13	V	Loss, no information provided
14	X	Loss in the mail
15	Z	Payment block
16	W	Loss
17	U	Complete forgery possible
18	P	Public notice
19	Y	Payment block
20	Q	Public notice/payment block – exchange
21	R	Cancellation, public notice
22	S	Cancellation of a public notice and a payment block
23		From the international list of blocked securities
24	G	From a foreign stopping list
25	E	See text information
26	H	Cancellation according to foreign law
27	J	Cancellation according to foreign law (replacement certificates have been issued, certificate numbers remain blocked) (Ersatzurkunden sind ausgestellt, Stücknummern bleiben gesperrt)
28	I	Notice period expired, no exclusory judgement (certificate numbers remain blocked)
29	1	Inclusion in the new ISIN/WKN
51		Old certificates with literal

WSS code	WM code	Lack reason
52		Corruption of custody data
53		Damage to control or trustee signatures
54		Coupon damaged
55		Certificates, which cannot be delivered, with deposit benefiting foreign central depositories
56		Roll over with stamp
57		Sealed
58		Stapled
61		Coupon-sized punch outs
62		Tears such that the guilloches are damaged
63		Rips and cuts beyond the middle of the certificate
64		Registered certificates
70		Deposit not reasonable
71		Certificate number deviating from the certificate
72		Certificate number deviating from the coupon sheet
81		Physical corpus/global coupon sheet
82		Global corpus/physical coupon sheet
83		Liability statement of depositor
91		Liability statement of CBF

16.8.2 D/W code tables

16.8.2.1 Table: AUFTRAGSART (order type)

Order type is a fixed form of instruction to the securities depository, for example, a withdrawal.

Screen	Text	Meaning
01	WP-UEBERTRAG/REPO-AUFTRAG (securities transfer/repo-order)	Securities transfer carried out free of and against payment / Repo-order against payment
02	MATCH-INSTR /REPO-INSTRUKTION (matching-instruction /repo-instruction)	Matching-instruction /Repo-instruction
03	SV-UEBERTRAG (SV TRANSFER)	BSV/LSV transfer
04	VERPFAENDUNG (PLEDGE)	Pledge
05	APPROVAL	Approval of pledges/collateral
07	UMTAUSCH (EXCHANGE)	GBC exchange
09	RUECKTAUSCH (RE-EXCHANGE)	GBC re-exchange
10	LIEFERBESTAND (DELIVERY BALANCE)	Delivery balance (stock exchange transactions)
11	WP-LEIHE (Securities assignment)	Securities assignment order
12	WPL-RUECKFUEH (Securities assignment repayment)	Securities assignment repayment
13	KADI-SONDPRO (Corporate actions special commission)	Proceeds from corporate actions special commission
14	STRIP-AUFTEILUNG (STRIP SPLIT)	Splitting of a bond with warrant (cum) into a corpus and individual interest
15	STRIP-ZUSAMMENFUHERUNG (Strip merger)	Merger of a corpus and individual interest coupons into a bond with warrant (cum)
16	EINLIEFERUNG (Deposit)	Deposit
17	OPTIONSSCHEIN- TRENNUNG (Warrant split)	Splitting of bonds with warrants (cum) into a bond without warrant ex bond and a simple warrant
18	AUSLIEFERUNG (Withdrawal)	Withdrawal
19	OPTIONSSCHEIN- ZUSAMMENFUEHRUNG (Warrant merger)	Merger of bond without warrant (ex) and warrant into a bond with warrant (cum)
20	RUECK-AUFTRAG (return order)	REPO-return order
21	RUECK-INSTRUKTION (return instruction)	REPO-return instruction
99	STORNO-NACHB (Subsequent cancellation order)	Cancellation/follow-up booking securities account (only CBF allowed)

16.8.2.2 Table: Bearbeitungsstatus Auslieferung (processing status of withdrawal) (CEA9T07)

Code	Explanation
10	AUSLIEFERUNG NICHT VOLLSTAENDIG ERFASST (Withdrawal record incomplete)
100	AUSLIEFERUNG VOLLSTAENDIG ERFASST (Withdrawal record complete)
150	AUSLIEFERUNGSaufTRAG KONTROLLIERT (Withdrawal order verified)
200	AUSLIEFERUNG IN KPZS VOLLSTAENDIG GEAENDERT (Withdrawal in KPZS changed completely)
210	AUSLIEFERUNG IN KPZS ZUR RUECKGABE GENERIERT (Withdrawal generated in KPZS for return)
220	BUCHUNGSFREIGABE IN KPZS ZURUECKGENOMMEN (Booking release in KPZS withdrawn)
300	AUSLIEFERUNG IN KPZS VOLLSTAENDIG GEAENDERT (Withdrawal in KPZS changed completely)
310	AUSLIEFERUNG IN KPZS ZUR RUECKGABE GENERIERT (Withdrawal generated in KPZS for return)
320	BUCHUNGSFREIGABE IN KPZS ZURUECKGENOMMEN (Booking release in KPZS withdrawn)
400	AUSLIEFERUNG ZUR BUCHUNG FREIGEgeben (Withdrawal for booking released)
410	ABGELEHNT IN DISPOSITION/ZURUECK IN KPZS (Rejected in disposal /back to KPZS)
500	AUSLIEFERUNG ZUR BUCHUNG FREIGEgeben (Withdrawal for booking released)
510	ABGELEHNT IN DISPOSITION/ZURUECK IN KPZS (Rejected in disposal/back to KPZS)
590	AUFTRAG ERFOLGREICH GEBUCHT (Order successfully posted)
610	AUSLIEFERUNG GELOESCHT (Withdrawal deleted)
620	MANUELLE ZUWEISUNG UNVOLLSTAENDIG (Manual allocation incomplete)
630	MANUELLE ZUWEISUNG VOLLSTAENDIG (Manual allocation complete)
640	ABGELEHNT IN MASCHINELLER ZUWEISUNG (Rejected in automatic allocation)
650	AUSLIEFERUNG STORNIERT (Withdrawal cancelled)
700	ALLE SENDUNGEN DURCH EFFEKTEN-AUSGANG AUSGELIEFERT (All deliveries sent by means of a securities withdrawal)
701	NOCH TEILSENDUNGEN OFFEN (Partial deliveries still pending)
702	ALLE SENDUNGEN AUSGELIEFERT, AUFTRAG IST ZU LOESCHEN (All deliveries sent, order must be deleted)
703	ZUWEISUNG ABGESCHLOSSEN (Allocation complete)
720	VOM E-AUSGANG ZURUECKGEN. (Retrieved from securities withdrawal) - MASCH. ZUWEISUNG ZURUECKGENOM. (Automatic allocation recalled)
730	VOM E-AUSGANG ZURUECKGEN. (Retrieved from securities withdrawal) - MAN. ZUWEISUNG NOCH VORHANDEN (Manual allocation still in place)
750	KEINE AUSLIEFERUNG DURCH EFFEKTEN-AUSGANG ERFORDERLICH (No delivery by securities withdrawal necessary)
790	AUSLIEFERUNG DURCH EFFEKTEN-AUSGANG GEAENDERT (Delivery by securities withdrawal changed)
791	ENDBEARBEITETE AUSLIEFERUNG DURCH EFFEKTEN-AUSGANG GEAENDERT (completely processed delivery by securities withdrawal changed)
792	HISTORISCHE AUSLIEFERUNG IN KPHI GEAENDERT (Historical withdrawal in KPHI changed)
993	UMLEGUNG AUTOMATISCH ENDBEARBEITET (Reallocation automatically processed)
999	LOESCHUNG WG. REDENOMINATION (Deletion due to redenomination)

16.8.2.3 Table: Bearbeitungsstatus Einlieferung (processing status of deposit) (CEA9T04)

Code	Explanation
10	EINLIEFERUNG TEILERFASST - ZU WENIG STUECKE (Deposit entered in part – insufficient certificates)
30	EINL. Z. RUECKGABE GENERIERT, ZU WENIG STUECKE (Deposit for return generated, insufficient certificates)
50	EINLIEFERUNG TEILERFASST - ZU VIELE STUECKE (Deposit entered in part – too many certificates)
70	EINL. Z. RUECKGABE GENERIERT, ZU VIELE STUECKE (Deposit for return generated, too many certificates)
100	EINLIEFERUNG VOLLSTAENDIG ERFASST (Deposit entry complete)
150	EINLIEFERUNG ZUR RUECKGABE GENERIERT (Deposit for return generated)
200	EINLIEFERUNG ANGENOMMEN (Deposit accepted)
410	EINLIEFERUNG GEAEENDERT - ZU WENIG STUECKE (Deposit changed - insufficient certificates)
450	EINLIEFERUNG GEAEENDERT - ZU VIELE STUECKE (Deposit changed - too many certificates)
500	EINLIEFERUNG VOLLSTAENDIG GEAEENDERT (Deposit changed completely)
522	BUCHUNGSFREIGABE ONLINE ZURUECKGENOMMEN (Booking release recalled online)
523	BUCHUNGSFREIGABE ZURUECKGENOMMEN, INKONSISTENZEN MIT CARAD (Booking release recalled, inconsistencies with CARAD)
550	TEXTINFORMATION ZUM AUFTRAG BEARBEITET (Text information of order processed)
700	EINLIEFERUNG ZUR BUCHUNG FREIGEgeben (Deposit released for booking)
701	ZUSTIMMUNG ZUR EINLIEFERUNG ERTEILT (Consent granted for deposit)
800	AUFTRAG ERFOLGREICH GEBUCHT – UM-/FESTSCHREIBUNG AUSSTEHEND (Order successfully booked – re-registration/ locking up pending)
801	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT NICHT VEREINNAHMT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Not received by corpus/single sheet vault, no counter vault)
802	BOGENTRESOR HAT NICHT VEREINNAHMT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Not received by coupon sheet vault, no counter vault)
803	MANTEL-/UNIKATE- UND BOGENTRESOR HABEN NICHT VEREINNAHMT (Not received by corpus/sheet and coupon sheet vault)
811	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT VEREINNAHMT, BOGENTRESOR NICHT (Received by corpus/single sheet vault, not received by coupon sheet vault)
812	BOGENTRESOR HAT VEREINNAHMT, MANTEL/UNIKATETRESOR NICHT (Received by coupon sheet vault, not received by corpus/ single sheet vault)
821	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT VEREINNAHMT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Received by corpus/single sheet vault, no counter vault)
822	BOGENTRESOR HAT VEREINNAHMT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Received by coupon sheet vault, no counter vault)
823	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR UND BOGENTRESOR HABEN VEREINNAHMT (Received by corpus/single sheet and coupon sheet vault)
911	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT VEREINNAHMT, BOGENTRESOR NICHT (Received by corpus/single sheet vault, not received by coupon sheet vault)

Code	Explanation
912	BOGENTRESOR HAT GELOESCHT, MANTEL/UNIKATETRESOR NICHT (Deleted by coupon sheet vault, not deleted by corpus/ single sheet vault)
921	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT GELOESCHT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Deleted by corpus/single sheet vault, no counter vault)
922	BOGENTRESOR HAT GELOESCHT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Deleted by coupon sheet vault, no counter vault)
923	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR UND BOGENTRESOR HABEN GELOESCHT (Deleted by corpus/single sheet vault and coupon sheet vault)
931	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT STORNIERT, BOGENTRESOR NICHT (Cancelled by corpus/single sheet vault, not cancelled by coupon sheet vault)
932	BOGENTRESOR HAT STORNIERT, MANTEL/UNIKATETRESOR NICHT (Cancelled by coupon sheet vault, not cancelled by corpus/ single sheet vault)
941	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR HAT STORNIERT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Cancelled by corpus/single sheet vault, no counter vault)
942	BOGENTRESOR HAT STORNIERT, KEIN GEGENTRESOR (Cancelled by sheet vault, no counter vault)
943	MANTEL-/UNIKATETRESOR UND BOGENTRESOR HABEN STORNIERT (Cancelled by corpus/single sheet vault and coupon sheet vault)
990	UEBERLEITUNG NACH CARAD (Transfer to CARAD)
991	LOESCHUNG WG. KADI AUF CARAD (Deletion on CARAD due to KADI)
999	GELÖSCHT DURCH SYSTEM ODER MANUELL (Deleted by system or manually)

16.8.2.4 Table: EINLIEF-ART (delivery type) (CEA9T01)

Code	Explanation
1	LFD. EINLIEFERUNG (Current deposit)
2	NEUZULASSUNG GLOBAL (New admission global)
3	NEUZULASSUNG RU (New admission global certificate (up-to))
4	NEUZULASSUNG VAL. (New admission validated) RU (Global certificate)
5	VALUTIERUNG (Mark up)

16.8.2.5 Table: KZ-NACHWEISART (indicator evidence type) (CEA9T05)

Code	Explanation
001	EINLIEF. EFF. URK. (Deposit of security certificates)
002	URK. LIEGEN VOR (Present)
003	URK. VON DRUCK./EM. (Certificate from printing press or issuer)
004	OHNE URKUNDEN (Without certificates)
005	EFF. URK. U. ZESSION (Security certificates and assignment)
006	UM-/FESTSCHREIBUNG (Re-registration/locking up)
007	ZESSION FEHLT (Assignment missing)
008	EINLIEF EDT (Deposit EDT)
009	EDELMETALL (Precious metal)
012	PUBLIC ISSUANCE
013	SCHALTERHALLE (Service Counter)
014	SONSTIGES (Other)

16.8.2.6 Table: EINLIEF-GRUND (deposit reason) (CEA9T02)

Code	Explanation
1	AUS EMISSION (From issue)
2	KE gegen Einlage (Increase in share capital in exchange for cash contributions)
3	KE-BEDINGT (Depending on capital increase)
4	RU ERSTEINLIEF. VNA (GC (up-to) initial deposit)
5	URKUNDENUMTAUSCH (Certificate exchange)
7	GRATISAKTIEN KE-UNBE (Bonus shares capital increase - unknown)
11	SPERRE, TEMP URK TD
12	SPERRE FINAL URK TD

16.8.2.7 Table: AUSLIEFERUNGSVERFAHREN (withdrawal procedure) (CEA9T08)

Code	Explanation
1	PER BANKBOTE (Via bank messenger)
2	PER CONTAINER (Via container)
3	PER WERTPOST (Via valuable-goods post)
4	DHL WERTTRANS (DHL transport of valuables)
5	BRINKS WERTTRANS (Brinks transport of valuables)
6	AUSL.WG. KADI (Foreign currency KADI)
7	VERNICHTUNG (Destruction)
8	STORNO (Cancellation)
9	KEINE AUSLIEF. (No withdrawal)

16.8.2.8 Table: KZ-Umlegung (KZ transfer) (CEA9T09)

Code	Explanation
1	VL IN GS
2	GS IN VL
3	GS IN FTB
4	FTB IN GS
5	FTB IN FTB

16.8.2.9 Table: KZ-AUSLIEF-VORG (WITHDRAWAL PROCESS ID) (CEA9T10)

Code	Explanation
001	AUSLIEFERUNG (Withdrawal)
002	REVALUTIERUNG (mark down)
003	TEILREDUZIER. (partial reduction)
004	REVAL. M. REDUZ. (mark down with reduction)
005	REDUZ. RAHMEN (Reduction of Rahmennominale)
007	AUSLIEFERUNG EDT (withdrawal EDT)
008	REVALUTIERUNG EDT (mark down EDT)

16.8.2.10 Table: Interne Auftragsart Einlieferung (internal order type deposit) (CEA9T03)

Code	Internal order type (IAA)
1	LFD. EINLIEFERUNG (Current deposit)
2	NEUZULASSUNG GLOBALURKUNDE (Securities admission global certificate)
3	NEUZULASSUNG RAHMENURKUNDE (New admission global certificate (up-to))
4	NEUZULASSUNG VALUTIERTE RAHMENURKUNDE (New admission valuated global certificate (up-to))
5	VALUTIERUNG MIT AUTOM. BUCHUNGSFREIGABE (Validation with automatic book entry approval)
6	VALUTIERUNG (Mark up)

16.8.2.11 Table: Interne Auftragsart Auslieferung (internal order type withdrawal) (CEA9T06)

KZ	Internal order type (IAA)
1	AUSLIEFERUNG EINZELURKUNDE (Withdrawal of individual certificate)
2	REVALUTIERUNG (Revaluation)
3	AUSLIEFERUNG RAHMENURKUNDE (Withdrawal of global certificate (up-to))
4	REVALUTIERUNG MIT AUSLIEFERUNG RAHMENURKUNDE (Markdown with withdrawal of global certificate (up-to))
5	AUSLIEFERUNG STUECKELOSE GLOBALURKUNDE (Withdrawal of global certificate without certificate numbers)
6	AUSLIEFERUNG TECHNISCHE GLOBALURKUNDE (Withdrawal of technical global certificate)
7	TEILREDUZIERUNG (Partial reduction)
8	VALUTIERUNG MIT AUTOM. BUCHUNGSFREIGABE (Markup with automatic booking authorisation)
9	TEILRUECKZAHLUNG RU (Partial reduction)

16.8.3 WSS code tables

16.8.3.1 WSS Custody Option (TAB G16)

Codes 91 - 99 reserved for internal bank use; there is no assignment of WM implementation of custody possibility in custody type.

WSS/ WM	Custody type	Custody type number	Display	Explanation
0				No field entry
1	GS (collective safe custody)	001	JGS BIS ERSCH. (scrip until appearance)	Scrip account until the appearance of the shares
2	GS	001	JGS BIS EINLIEF. (scrip until deposit)	Scrip account, without certificate numbers after deposit of the global certificate(s)
3	GS	001	SVG GS	A global certificate for the entire term
4	GS	001	SMG	SMG
5	GS	001	IGL GS	Interim global certificate until the appearance of the shares
6	GS	001	STV	CSC debt ledger – collection of debt ledger outstanding amounts possible
7	GS	001	STV	CSC debt ledger – individual debt ledger debt not possible
8	GS	001	SVG INH.SAMMELZ.DBC (SVG BEARER GLOBAL CERTIFICATE.DBC)	Co-ownership share of bearer global certificate from Deutsche Börse Clearing AG
9	GS	001	GIROSAMMELVERW. (Collective safe custody)	
10	GS	001	NGS (Non collective safe custody)	
11	GS	001	GS, STUECKELOS (CSC, without certificates)	Collective safe custody, only available in the form of CF certificates
12	GS	001	TGL TECHN.GLOBALURK (technical global certificate)	CSC custody technical global certificate (individual certificates not eligible for CSC could be in circulation).
13	GS	001	GS-Verwahrung/direct (Collective safe custody/ direct)	CSC, Central deposit, Direct deposit
14	GS	001	GS, RAHMENURK.BIS- ZU (Collective safe custody, global certificate (up-to))	Collective safe custody, global certificate (up- to) for the entire term
15	GS	001	GS,INT.RA.URK.BIS-ZU (Collective Safe Custody, International global certificate (up-to))	Collective safe custody, interim global certificate (up-to), until the issue of the certificates

WSS/ WM	Custody type	Custody type number	Display	Explanation
16	GS	001	GS, TECHN.GLOBALURK. (collective safe custody, technical global certificate)	Collective safe custody, technical global certificate (up-to)
19	GS	001	MITEIGENTUM SH.CERT (co-ownership share cert)	
20	STR	002	STREIFBANDVERWAHR UNG (jacket custody)	
21	STR	002	STR PER ERSCHEINEN (jacket custody via appearance)	Jacket custody via appearance
22	STR	002	STR, NUR GLOBALURK. (jacket custody, only global certificates)	In-house collective safe custody
23	STR	002	SCHULDBUCHEINTRAG UNG (debt register entry)	Debt register entry, no CSC custody
24	STR	002	NUR DEPOTM.EINBUCHG. (only deposit-related entry)	Only entry related to security account (no physical certificates, no global certificates)
40	WPR	003	WPR (LIEFERBAR) (trustee business (deliverable))	Trustee business (shares physically deliverable)
41	AKV	004	DBC-AUSLAND, LIEFERB. (DBC foreign, deliverable)	Security accepted by Deutsche Boerse Clearing AG (physically deliverable)
42	AKV	004	CBL (LIEFERBAR) (CBL (deliverable))	CBL has exchanged global certificate (physically deliverable)
43	AKV	004	CBL INT.GLOBALURK. (CBL interim global certificates)	CBL in interim global certificates
44	AKV	004	DBC- AUSL,N.LIEFERB.(DBC foreign, not deliverable)	Title accepted in the foreign settlement of Deutsche Boerse Clearing AG (not physically deliverable)
45	AKV	004	CBL PERM.GLOBALURK. (CBL permanent global certificates)	CBL in permanent global certificates (certificates not physically deliverable)
46	AKV	004	DBC-AUSLAND, IGL (DBC foreign IGL)	Foreign settlement of the Deutsche Boerse Clearing AG in interim global certificates
47	AKV	004	DBC-AUSLAND, PGL (DBC foreign PGL)	Foreign settlement of Deutsche Boerse Clearing AG in permanent global certificates

WSS/ WM	Custody type	Custody type number	Display	Explanation
48	AKV	004	DBC- AUSLAND,AUST.GLU (DBC foreign global certificates)	Foreign settlement of Deutsche Boerse Clearing AG, global certificates were exchanged
49	WPR	003	WPR (NICHT LIEFERBAR) (trustee business (not deliverable))	Wertpapierrechnung (Stücke n. effekt. lieferb.) Trustee business (shares not physically deliverable)
50	AKV	004	NEW LOOK GLOBAL NOTE	New look global note (NGN)
51	GS	001	Tech. coll. cust. (dom.)	Technical collective custody (domestic) only
52	GS	001	3rd reg. entry var. nom.	Third register entry with variable nominal amount
60	AKV	004	NCSC-T	Non-Collective-Safe-Custody-T (NCSC-T) foreign settlement by CBF, Settlement on T2S
88	STR	002	SONSTIGE (miscellaneous)	(Indices, derivatives etc.)
91	STR	002	HAUS- SAMMELVERWAHR. (internal collective safe custody)	For interim WKN
92	STR	002	STREIFBAND (jacket custody)	For interim WKN
93	WPR	003	WERTPAPIER- RECHNUNG (trustee business)	For interim WKN
96	GS	001	DBC-EING. GS-IGL- (DBC deposit collective safe custody IGL)	For interim WKN
97	GS	001	DBC-EING. GS (DBC deposit collective safe custody)	For interim WKN
98	GS	001	DBC-EING. GS-SVG (DBC deposit collective safe custody SVG)	For interim WKN
99	AKV	004	INTERNE WKN- AUSLAND (internal WKN foreign)	For interim WKN

16.8.3.2 WSS Table: Sonderheiten-Stückart (characteristics certificate type) (TAB G20)

Value	Display	Explanation
0		No field entry
1	M + B GETRENNT (M + B separated)	Certificate and coupon-sheet separate
2	NUR MANTEL (Certificate only)	Securities without coupon sheet (only certificate)
3	UNIKAT (Single sheet)	Certificate and coupon-sheet = 1 share
4	NUR ERTRAGSSCHEIN (only dividend coupon)	Only dividends or interest coupon
5	NUR BOGEN (Coupon sheet only)	Only coupon sheet
6	NUR TALON (only talon)	Only talon/renewal coupons
7	ZWISCHENSCHNEINE (temporary certificates)	Temporary certificates (authorisation coupons, scrips)
8	UNITS	Units
9	SONSTIGES (miscellaneous)	Miscellaneous
11	REG-KUP-0-REG-BUCH (Registered coupon or register)	Registered or coupon (bearer) shares, respectively, or registered or book-entry shares, respectively (positions-related = code) 1,2,3)
12	BEARER/REGISTERED	Bearer/Registered as to Principal
13	BEARER/RECORDED	Bearer or recorded share
15	CF- UND K-STUKKEN (CF AND K CERTIFICATES)	CF and K certificates
16	CF-STUKKEN (CF certificates)	CF certificates (certificate deliverable, coupon-sheet in central custody)
17	REGISTERED/BEARER	Registered/Bearer

16.9 CASCADE backend transaction security codes

16.9.1 CASCADE-PC → CASCADE backend transaction security codes

CASCADE-PC Logon (KVAV PC)	* mandatory for CASCADE-PC *
CASCADE-PC Logon (MENU)	* mandatory for CASCADE-PC *
CASCADE-PC Change password (PWAD)	* mandatory for CASCADE-PC *

bank info: bank search: alpha search (KVAV IA)

bank info: processing/accounting information (KVAV ID)

bank info: system information (KVAV IS)

bank info: user information: English (DIIN IG)

bank info: user information: German (DIIN IK)

cash: information cash monitoring RTS: central bank money (Euro): buyer (KVGK IK)

cash: information cash monitoring RTS: central bank money (Euro): seller (KVGK IV)

cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for buyer (KVGC IK)

cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for buyer and seller (KVGC IG)

cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for seller (KVGC IV)

custody: display: all compensations per transaction type (KVGI KG)

custody: display: all mandatory non income corporate actions (KVGI AK)

custody: display: amount to be paid (KVGI AB)

custody: display: compensations (KVGI KO)

custody: display: income / redemptions (KVGI KE)

custody: display: non income corporate actions credit (KVGI EI)

custody: display: non income corporate actions debit (KVGI AU)

custody: display: non income corporate actions exchange (KVGI UM)

custody: display: non income corporate actions other (KVGI SO)

custody: display: provisions (KVGI PR)

custody: display: tax credit (KVGI SG)

custody: display: total income (KVGI UE)

custody: display: voluntary offers (KVGI GE)

messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - operational overview (MAMJ FU)

messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - rejected messages (MAMJ AB)

messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - technical overview (MAMJ TU)

messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Luxembourg (CBL) - file transfer (MAMJ FL)

movements/positions: movements: internal cash movements (KVDU IC)

movements/positions: movements: booked movements (KVDU ID)

movements/positions: movements: booked movements custody (KVDU IN)

movements/positions: movements: movements statistics (KVDU IS)

movements/positions: positions: final positions (KVBA BB)

movements/positions: positions: positions registered owners (KVBA BW)

OTC: enter: conversion (KVEE UT)

OTC: enter: delivery (KVEE WE)

OTC: enter: merger of warrants (KVEE OZ)

OTC: enter: re-conversion (KVEE RT)

OTC: enter: receipt (KVEE MI)

OTC: enter: RS account transfer: enter (KVEE DV)

OTC: enter: RS position transfer: enter (KVEE BV)

OTC: enter: split of warrants (KVEE OT)

OTC: enter: TEFRA-D release (KVEE TD)

OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: block deliveries (KVAS SA)

OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: block receipts (KVAS SI)

OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: unblock deliveries (KVAS FA)

OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: unblock receipts (KVAS FI)

OTC: pending instructions: information: all orders to isin (KVAI CI)

OTC: pending instructions: information: custody PFoD (KVAI AK)

CASCADE-PC User Manual

OTC: pending instructions: information: delivery instructions (KVAI MA)

OTC: pending instructions: information: instruction no. (KVAI AN)

OTC: pending instructions: information: all instructions by type (KVAI AA)

OTC: pending instructions: information: instructions rejected in process (KVAI AD)

OTC: pending instructions: information: receipt instructions (KVAI MI)

OTC: pending instructions: information: reference (KVAI AR)

OTC: pending instructions: instruction history (KVAI HA)

OTC: pending instructions: link-service: link service CASCADE (KVAL LC)

OTC: pending instructions: match service: delivery instructions (KVAM MA)

OTC: pending instructions: match service: receipt instructions (KVAM MI)

OTC: pending instructions: modify/delete: deletion (KVAA ML)

OTC: pending instructions: modify/delete: modification (KVAA MA)

OTC: pending instructions: modify/delete: modification for Partial Settlement Indicator and Priority (KVAA AA)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display (KVEB AN)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: delete (KVEA LN)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: delete (KVEB LN)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: all instructions (KVEI AA)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: all invalid instructions (KVEI AF)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: credit bank (KVEI GK)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: debit bank (KVEI LK)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: file no. (KVEI PN)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: instruction no. (KVEI NR)

OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: modification (KVEA AN)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify (KVEK VN)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: display (KVEI NR)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: all instructions (KVEK VA)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: all instructions (vaults) (KVEC VA)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: credit bank (KVEK VG)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: credit bank (vaults) (KVEC VG)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: debit bank (KVEK VL)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: debit bank (vaults) (KVEC VL)

OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: file no. (KVEK VP)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: file no. (KVEC (vaults) VP)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: instruction no. (KVEK VN)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: instruction no. (vaults) (KVEC VN)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: all instructions (KVEK TA)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: all instructions (vaults) (KVEC TA)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: credit bank (KVEK TG)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: credit bank (vaults) (KVEC TG)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: debit bank (KVEK TL)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: debit bank (vaults) (KVEC TL)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: file no. (KVEK TP)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: file no. (vaults) (KVEC TP)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: instruction no. (KVEK TN)
OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: instruction no. (vaults) (KVEC TN)

RS: positions instructions: deletion (KVCB BL)
RS: positions instructions: display (KVCB BI)
RS: positions instructions: enter (KVCB BE)
RS: positions instructions: modification (KVCB BA)
RS: positions instructions: verify (KVCB BK)
RS: re-registration: deletion (KVCU UL)
RS: re-registration: display (KVCU UI)
RS: re-registration: enter (KVCU UE)
RS: re-registration: modification (KVCU UA)
RS: re-registration: verify (KVCU UK)
RS: registration: deletion (KVCE EL)
RS: registration: display (KVCE EI)
RS: registration: enter (KVCE EE)
RS: registration: modify (KVCE EA)
RS: registration: verification (KVCE EK)
RS: shareholder data: deletion (KVCA AL)

CASCADE-PC User Manual

RS: shareholder data: display (KVCA AI)

RS: shareholder data: enter (KVCA AE)

RS: shareholder data: modification (KVCA AA)

RS: shareholder data: verify (KVCA AK)

security: authorisations: copy administrator entitlements (SECU CS)

security: authorisations: copy user authorisations (SECU CO)

security: authorisations: delete all authorisations (SECU LT)

security: authorisations: modify/delete/display authorisations -detail- (SECU IT)

security: authorisations: modify/delete/display authorisations -overview- (SECU ET)

security: authorisations: verify authorisations -detail- (SECU FR)

security: authorisations: verify authorisations -overview- (SECU FR)

security: newsletter... (SECU IR)

security: user data: create new user (SECU EB)

security: user data: delete user (SECU LB)

security: user data: modify user (SECU AB)

security: user data: user information (SECU IB)

security: user data: user logon violations (SECU IF)

security: user data: user member directory (SECU IU)

vaults: display: instruction history: deposits (KPHI HE)

vaults: display: instruction history: withdrawals (KPHI HA)

vaults: display: instruction history: new admission without certificate (KPHI HO)

vaults: display: positions of certificates: certificates (KCKI IH)

vaults: display: positions of certificates: search of certificate numbers (KCKI IS)

vaults: enter (CBF Vaults): new admission/ mark up (KVEW NV)

vaults: enter (CBF Vaults): withdrawal (KVEW AL)

16.9.2 CASCADE backend transaction security codes → CASCADE-PC

MENU		CASCADE-PC Logon	* mandatory for CASCADE-PC *
KVAV	PC	CASCADE-PC Logon	* mandatory for CASCADE-PC *
PWAD		CASCADE-PC Change password	* mandatory for CASCADE-PC *
DIIN	IG	bank info: user information: English	
DIIN	IK	bank info: user information: German	
KCKI	IH	vaults: display: positions of certificates: certificates	
KCKI	IS	vaults: display: positions of certificates: search of certificate numbers	
KPHI	HA	vaults: display: instruction history: withdrawals	
KPHI	HE	vaults: display: instruction history: deposits	
KPHI	HO	vaults: display: instruction history: new admission without certificate	
KVAA	AA	OTC: pending instructions: modify/delete: modification Partial Settlement Indicator and Priority	
KVAA	MA	OTC: pending instructions: modify/delete: modification	
KVAA	ML	OTC: pending instructions: modify/delete: deletion	
KVAI	AA	OTC: pending instructions: information: all instructions by type	
KVAI	AD	OTC: pending instructions: information: instructions rejected in process	
KVAI	AK	OTC: pending instructions: information: custody PFoD	
KVAI	AN	OTC: pending instructions: information: instruction no.	
KVAI	AR	OTC: pending instructions: information: reference	
KVAI	CI	OTC: pending instructions: information: all orders to isin	
KVAI	HA	OTC: pending instructions: instruction history	
KVAI	MA	OTC: pending instructions: information: delivery instructions	
KVAI	MI	OTC: pending instructions: information: receipt instructions	
KVAL	LC	OTC: pending instructions: link-service: link service CASCADE	
KVAM	MA	OTC: pending instructions: match service: delivery instructions	
KVAM	MI	OTC: pending instructions: match service: receipt instructions	
KVAS	FA	OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: unblock deliveries	

CASCADE-PC User Manual

KVAS	FI	OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: unblock receipts
KVAS	SA	OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: block deliveries
KVAS	SI	OTC: pending instructions: block/unblock: block receipts
KVAV	IA	bank info: bank search: alpha search
KVAV	ID	bank info: processing/accounting information
KVAV	IS	bank info: system information
KVBA	BB	movements/positions: positions: final positions
KVBA	BW	movements/positions: positions: positions registered owners
KVCA	AA	RS: shareholder data: modification
KVCA	AE	RS: shareholder data: enter
KVCA	AI	RS: shareholder data: display
KVCA	AK	RS: shareholder data: verify
KVCA	AL	RS: shareholder data: deletion
KVCB	BA	RS: positions instructions: modification
KVCB	BE	RS: positions instructions: enter
KVCB	BI	RS: positions instructions: display
KVCB	BK	RS: positions instructions: verify
KVCB	BL	RS: positions instructions: deletion
KVCE	EA	RS: registration: modification
KVCE	EE	RS: registration: enter
KVCE	EI	RS: registration: display
KVCE	EK	RS: registration: verify
KVCE	EL	RS: registration: deletion
KVCU	UA	RS: re-registration: modification
KVCU	UE	RS: re-registration: enter
KVCU	UI	RS: re-registration: display
KVCU	UK	RS: re-registration: verify
KVCU	UL	RS: re-registration: deletion

KVDU	IC	movements/positions: movements: internal cash movements
KVDU	ID	movements/positions: movements: booked movements
KVDU	IN	movements/positions: movements: booked movements custody
KVDU	IS	movements/positions: movements: movements statistics
KVEA	AN	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: modification
KVEA	LN	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: delete
KVEB	AN	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display
KVEB	LN	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: delete
KVEC	TA	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: all instructions (vaults)
KVEC	TG	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: credit bank (vaults)
KVEC	TL	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: debit bank (vaults)
KVEC	TN	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: instruction no. (vaults)
KVEC	TP	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: file no. (vaults)
KVEC	VA	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: all instructions (vaults)
KVEC	VG	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: credit bank (vaults)
KVEC	VL	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: debit bank (vaults)
KVEC	VN	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: instruction no. (vaults)
KVEC	VP	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: file no. (vaults)
KVEE	BV	OTC: enter: RS position transfer: enter
KVEE	DV	OTC: enter: RS account transfer: enter
KVEE	MI	OTC: enter: receipt
KVEE	OT	OTC: enter: split of warrants
KVEE	OZ	OTC: enter: merger of warrants
KVEE	RT	OTC: enter: re-conversion
KVEE	TD	OTC: enter: TEFRA-D release
KVEE	UT	OTC: enter: conversion
KVEE	WE	OTC: enter: delivery
KVEI	AA	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: all instructions
KVEI	AF	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: all invalid instructions
KVEI	GK	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: credit bank

CASCADE-PC User Manual

KVEI	LK	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: debit bank
KVEI	NR	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: instruction no.
KVEI	PN	OTC: unverified instructions: modify/delete/display: list display: file no.
KVEK	TA	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: all instructions
KVEK	TG	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: credit bank
KVEK	TL	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: debit bank
KVEK	TN	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: instruction no.
KVEK	TP	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: list display: file no.
KVEK	VA	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: all instructions
KVEK	VG	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: credit bank
KVEK	VL	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: debit bank
KVEK	VN	OTC: unverified instructions: verify
KVEK	VP	OTC: unverified instructions: verify: full display: file no.
KVEW	AL	vaults: enter (CBF Vaults): withdrawal
KVEW	NV	vaults: enter (CBF Vaults): new admission/ mark up
KVGC	IG	cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for buyer and seller
KVGC	IK	cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for buyer
KVGC	IV	cash: information cash monitoring RTS: commercial bank money: information for seller
KVGI	AB	custody: display: amount to be paid
KVGI	AK	custody: display: all mandatory non income corporate actions
KVGI	AU	custody: display: non income corporate actions debit
KVGI	EI	custody: display: non income corporate actions credit
KVGI	GE	custody: display: voluntary offers
KVGI	KE	custody: display: income / redemptions
KVGI	KG	custody: display: all compensations per transaction type
KVGI	KO	custody: display: compensations
KVGI	PR	custody: display: provisions
KVGI	SG	custody: display: tax credit

KVGI	SO	custody: display: non income corporate actions other
KVGI	UE	custody: display: total income
KVGI	UM	custody: display: non income corporate actions exchange
KVGI		
KVVK	IK	cash: information cash monitoring RTS: central bank money (Euro): buyer
KVVK	IV	cash: information cash monitoring RTS: central bank money (Euro): seller
KVVK		
MAMJ	AB	messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - rejected messages
MAMJ	FL	messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Luxemburg (CBL) - file transfer
MAMJ	FU	messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - operational overview
MAMJ	TU	messages: message journal: Clearstream Banking Frankfurt (CBF) - technical overview
MAMJ		
SECU	AB	security: user data: modify user
SECU	CO	security: authorisations: copy user authorisations
SECU	CS	security: authorisations: copy administrator entitlements
SECU	EB	security: user data: create new user
SECU	ET	security: authorisations: modify/delete/display authorisations -overview-
SECU	FR	security: authorisations: verify authorisations -detail-
SECU	FR	security: authorisations: verify authorisations -overview-
SECU	IB	security: user data: user information
SECU	IF	security: user data: user logon violations
SECU	IR	security: newsletter...
SECU	IT	security: authorisations: modify/delete/display authorisations -detail-
SECU	IU	security: user data: user member directory
SECU	LB	security: user data: delete user
SECU	LT	security: authorisations: delete all authorisations

Contact

www.clearstream.com

Published by

Clearstream Banking AG, Frankfurt

Official address

Clearstream Banking AG
Mergenthaleralle 61
65766 Eschborn
Germany

Postal address

Clearstream Banking AG
60485 Frankfurt/Main
Germany

January 2024

Document number: F-CON08
